1895 John Browning [1883<=>1899] unveils the M1895 Colt-Browning machine gun [Wikipedia factsheet] and James Paris Lee [<=1888] does likewise with the M1895 Lee Navy Rifle [Wikipedia factsheet]. Both weapons take a relatively small 6mm [= .236"] high velocity jacketed round. Around the same time, with the latest upgrade to its M1892 rifle [=1892], the Winchester Repeating Arms Company [1883<=>1899] uses DuPont No2 smokeless propellant. Around the same time the Royal Small Arms Factory
Enfield, replaces the Lee-Metford Rifle with the Magazine Lee-Enfield (MLE) Rifle, a sturdy, accurate, and ergonomically easy to use weapon chambered for a .303” jacketed round, and with easy to clean square-cut rifling. [THREAD = WW1 SMALL ARMS]

1895 The German Egyptologist Ludwig Borchardt takes up a position in Cairo to help catalogue the Egyptian Museum collection. [THREAD = PRE-WWI INTELLECTUAL RIVALRY]

1895 Headed now by Arthur Chamberlain George Kynoch and Company starts to develop explosives factories at Arklow, Ireland, and Shell Haven Creek, Essex. Around the same time the directors of the Tredegar Ironworks starts to open up new colliery workings - the McLaren Colliery - at Abertysswg/Pontlottyn, at the head of the Rhymney Valley. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]

1895 This year's catalogue from Sears, Roebuck, and Company runs to 532 pages, allowing the company to turn over USD750,000. Around the same time the tobacco company W. D. and H. O. Wills starts including collectable "cigarette cards" in its products. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

**ASIDE - CIGARETTE CARDS IN WW1:** For an instant introduction to smoking in general in WW1 we recommend Langley (2013 online). For cigarette cards in particular see the online WW1 card museum. For the use of cigarette cards as propaganda see 1914 (2nd September [ASIDE]).

1895 [6th-9th January] The Hawaiian Annexation [XIII - The 1895 ("Second Wilcox") Rebellion]: With American Expansionist intentions now clearly exposed thanks to the Morgan Report, Native Hawaiians now resort to force of arms again. The attempt is short-lived and generally follows the model of the 1889 Wilcox Rebellion, only with some of the names changed. For a start, the Reform Party is now effectively the Hawaiian Republic's official government, and the old Honolulu Rifles is now the National Guard. The old Royal Guard was disbanded after Queen Lili‘uokalani's forced abdication, and their erstwhile commander, Samuel Nowlein, downgraded to little more than bodyguard to the royal personage. Most loyal Hawaiians, native or white, are therefore "Royalists" to the extent that they demand the Queen's reinstatement. Nowlein has available to him the aforementioned Robert Wilcox- now on his third rebellion, and together they have assembled about 160 Royalists - 40 white and 120 Native - in the Diamond Head area, an extinct volcanic park some four miles east of the Royal Palace. Here, on the night of 6th-7th January 1895 skirmishing breaks out between the rebels and the police/National Guard. President Sanford Dole duly declares Martial Law and calls up reinforcements. Heavily outnumbered, the rebels withdraw north into the mountains, where they are hunted down one by one over the ensuing week. Nowlein surrenders himself on 14th January, and Wilcox is captured. And the affair is brought to a close (and the executions of many of the rebels prevented, we suspect) by the Queen herself swearing allegiance to the republic and being put under house arrest. [sub-thread continues at 4th July 1898...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1895 [21st January] The Panic of 1893/Depression of 1894-1898 [XII - The Supreme Court Rules]: After nearly three years' deliberation, the Supreme Court hands down its full judgement in the case of The United States vs. E. C. Knight
and Company. It rules 8:1 in favour of the defendant, stating, in effect, that E. C. Knight's operations under the umbrella of the American Sugar Refining Company's overriding monopoly trust, did not breach any of the principles of the Constitution. The case will go on to become classic case lore in textbooks of U.S. constitutional law. Sadly, the decision did not teach ordinary investors how to tell the difference between a benign monopoly trust (like American Sugar) and the malign ones whose systemic corruption had first triggered the panic back in 1893 [sub-thread continues at 20th February 1895 ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]

1895 [31st January] The Norddeutscher-Lloyd Line's SS Elbe [1881 (2nd April) <= 1897 (4th May)] sinks this day in collision with a freighter in the North Sea and sinks in less than 20 minutes. Only one lifeboat gets away, carrying just five passengers and 15 crew. The remaining 349 passengers and (unknown) crew drown. The freighter is subsequently judged at fault for the accident for having nobody on watch at the time. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1895 [4th February] The Venezuelan Dispute [II - The British Proposal] [Continued from 3rd December 1894] Noting President Cleveland's arguments, the British resolve not to make too big an issue of the Venezuelan border issue. They decide to accept the aforementioned Schomburgk Line, and to submit any encroachments beyond that line to independent arbitration [sub-thread continues at 2nd July ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


1895 [20th February] The Panic of 1893/Depression of 1894-1898 [XIII - J. P. Morgan to the Rescue]: [Continued from 21st January 1895] President Grover Cleveland accepts a bail-out deal offered by J. P. Morgan and Company. The essence of the deal is that Morgans' will broker premium interest government bonds on the international market for purchase in gold [sub-thread continues at 16th August 1896 ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]

1895 [24th February] The Cuban War of Independence [VII - The Manifesto de Montecristi]: [Continued from 25th December 1894] After the disruption of their Fernandina operation, President Martí and G'mo Gómez regroup at Montecristi. In order to raise morale, they sign a joint statement on 25th March setting out the aims of the impending operation in what is now known as the "Manifesto de Montecristi" [Wikipedia briefing] [sub-thread continues at 1st April 1895 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1895 [March] Seeing is Believing [XXXV - Early Motion Pictures (Paul and Acres)]: [Continued from 1894 (21st November)] The British instrument maker Robert W. Paul [Wikipedia biography] collaborates with the photographer Birt Acres [Wikipedia biography] to produce the 35mm "Paul-Acres Camera". It will be a short-lived partnership, however, breaking up in the summer when Acres obtains patents in his sole name [sub-thread continues at 20th June ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1895 [1st April-30th November] The Cuban War of Independence [VIII - La Invasion!]: [Continued from 24th February 1895] With replacement vessels now found for Maceo's and Roloff's battlegroups, Martí and G'mo Gómez sail from Montecristi 1st April 1895 and land at Playitas de Cajobabo [Google maps], some 30 miles east of the modern Guantánamo detention facility. Madrid are alerted, and veteran of the Ten Years War
and Governor of the island between 1876 and 1878 General Campos sails from Cadiz with 7000 reinforcements. When he arrives he throws a cordon sanitaire - the Trocha - from north to south across the island to keep the separate rebel groups from joining forces. The rebels quickly learn to infiltrate these static defences, but suffer a serious setback as the Gomez-Martí brigade moves inland toward Dos Ríos [Google maps]. Here they are intercepted by a government column, and in the ensuing firefight President-at-Arms Martí is killed. Salvador Cisneros [Wikipedia biography] is elected to replace him, and a provisional regime is proclaimed at Jimaguayú. Meanwhile, Madrid soon loses faith in Campos' methods and replaces him with hard man General Valeriano Weyler [check him out]. By the end by the end of the year there will be 100,000 Spanish regulars on the island [sub-thread continues at 30th? November 1895 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

ASIDE: European Spanish draftees lost far more men to Yellow Fever than rebel action. Gómez used to quip that his three best generals were "June", "July", and "August", the fever months (Thomas, 2010).

******* THE UNCONSCIOUS MIND STARTS TO BE RECOGNISED ******

1895 [18th May] The Western Australian Gold Rush [II - The Reality]: [Continued from 17th September 1882] Thirteen years have gone by since the original Western Australian gold strike, and the whole region is now ant-hilled with mine-workings, some active, mostly not.

ASIDE - WHY IS THERE SO LITTLE GOLD IN A GOLD FIELD? The histories of the various 19th Century gemstone and precious metal "rushes" conceal multiple tragedies for every happy ending. This is because minerals are routinely both deep and very thinly diluted (even in "rich" ore). This puts them beyond the reach of the individual prospector or the small cooperative. Rock-borne gold, for example, is typically found as swirls of native metal - from "flakes" up to "nuggets" in size - in surface-breaking outcrops of quartz or granite called "reefs". And so to get the gold out you have to chase the reef underground, and the deeper that reef goes, the harder and more dangerous and more costly it gets to follow, and the taller become your spoil tips (if you get an ounce of gold per ton of ore you'll survive, more than four ounces is a rich seam). Alluvial gold, on the other hand, is the result of water erosion in the dim and distant past. It is what is left behind when nature has already reduced a reef to dust and washed all but its heaviest grains down to the sea. The residue - the gold flakes - gradually accumulated in nooks and crannies, to be covered over by detritus from upstream in the next floods. Prospectors can therefore do one of three things. They can
EITHER stumble across a surface reef, OR they can find a likely waterway and "pan" its sands and gravels, OR they can find what was once but not any more a waterway and rewash its sands and gravels. **ALL THREE PROCESSES ARE MORE EASILY ACHIEVED BY HEAVY MACHINERY AND HEAVY MACHINERY REQUIRES HEAVY INVESTMENT.**

The main towns in Western Australia are Kalgoorlie and Coolgardie, and the only city - 300 miles away - is Perth. Into this barren rarely forgiving world comes one **Arthur James Francis Plunkett, 11th Earl of Fingall, 4th Baron Fingall** [no convenient biography], and if one thing is certain it is that he has not travelled half way around the world just to wield a pick ... 

**ASIDE - THE ANATOMY OF A MINING SCAM:** That which follows is just one way (there are many more) for the unsophisticated to lose everything they have ever worked for to a breed of people who never have to lift anything heavier than a glass of champagne and who sit in comfort 12,000 miles away. The scam goes like this (you are a well-to-do London entrepreneur) ...

**(1)** Send an agent to the goldfield armed with letters of credit, and get them to be on the look-out for promising new claims. When they hear of one ...

**(2)** Have them buy out the original owners, and as many neighbouring claims as you can afford. You now own a potential gold mine.

**(3)** "Salting" your claim if necessary [Wikipedia briefing], get a good geologist to assess it as a sure-fire money-maker.

**(4)** Have your agent "talk up" the good news, softly at first, in order not to arouse suspicions, but then more loudly. Sell off the neighbouring claims at profit as demand rises.

**(5)** Pop round to your chums in the investment bank next door and have them set up a company to bring your claim into production, selling the shares in an IPO [=initial public offering]. Prepare the IPO Prospectus - the details of the offer - such that only a fool would pass up the investment opportunity of a lifetime. Buy some shares for yourself, and tip the wink to your closest cronies.

**(6)** Take the capital raised (less the investment bank's percentage), and get some heavy equipment onto the claim site. Dig for a while, producing regular promising technical reports, so that the market price for the shares goes up and up. Increase your own holding once a speculators' market has been established.

**(7)** When you judge that the buying market is coming to an end, sell off your personal shareholding as discretely as possible.

**(8)** Now have your mine managers produce a bad report warning of this or that impending disaster. [We like to think of this as playing a <NOT A CHANCE> card - check them out].

**(9)** EITHER 

**(9a)** If possible repeat (1 through 8) a few times, always selling high and buying low ...

**OR**

**(9b)** Simply put the company into liquidation.

**(10)** Find another likely claim, and repeat.

Now the Secretary of Kalgoorlie's **Western Australian Diggers' Association** at the turn of the 20th Century is a man named **John Marshall**, and in 1903 he wrote a memoir under the title "Battling for Gold" (Marshall, 1903 [Kindle]). One of his most painful jobs is to support prospectors who have been defrauded in some way. Here is one of his cautionary tales (remember the "salting" of claims) ...
They were a party of six, who set out on a prospecting tour from Coolgardie in the early months of ’94. [...] For some time they prospected [...] without success. [...] Then one of the party, a young Irishman named John Mills, a native of Londonderry [...] suddenly caught the glint of some shiny substance on the rock [...] and found to his intense astonishment and delight that it was a piece of stone full of gold” (op. cit., pp30-35).

The six-man cooperative then spends the next few weeks digging deeper and separating the gold from its quartz matrix, before packing up a 4280-ounce sack-full and returning to Coolgardie to lodge their claim at the Union Bank. Then one of their number gets drunk, and the secret is out. Now read on (note the aforementioned Lord Fingall and the involvement of anonymous high financiers in London and Paris) ...

"When the news was confirmed, the excitement in the town became perfectly frantic, and the whole population rushed to see the great 'Londonderry Golden Hole' [...] but were unable to see the slightest trace of gold. [...] However we were fortunate enough to make the acquaintance of John Mills himself [who] showed us some magnificent specimens [...] There was a good deal of competition to secure this rich prize, but negotiations were successfully conducted by Lord Fingall, who was resident on the field, and ultimately purchased the property for, I believe, £100,000. It was subsequently floated in London and Paris for £750,000" (Ibid.).

While all of this is going on, the reef itself is kept secure, until - funded by some of your £750,000 IPO capital - the heavy equipment and its operators finally arrive. Now for the moment of truth: Does your reef go to any depth?

"But after a few days' work in the Londonderry [...] it was found, to the utter amazement and dismay of all concerned, that the kernel had been taken and only the worthless shell left [...] and one of the biggest mining companies had been floated on what was little better than a burst bubble. [...] The effect of this blow upon the entire district was disastrous in the extreme. Hundreds of claims that had been taken up and worked on the strength of the great Londonderry finds, were abandoned, and that after hundreds - and in some instances thousands - of pounds had been spent upon them. [...] The original holders got out of the State with their gains" (Ibid.).

YOU MUST NOW DECIDE: Did this 120-year-old financial disaster occur spontaneously as "just one of those things", OR was it all a clever pre-planned heist? It is at this point that real detectives find it useful to ask themselves Cui Bono? - WHO BENEFITS? Here are just some of the questions you need to form an opinion about before deciding who was to blame ...

Q1. Was John Mills a genuine prospector or the front-man for a fraud?
Q2. Were his five companions in on the plot, or was Mills playing them?
Q3. Did Mills know Lord Fingall beforehand?
Q4. Was the claim "salted"? If so, where did the 4280 ounces of priming gold come from?
Q5. Are the mug investors on the London and Paris stock exchanges going to get their money back?

We shall be hearing a lot more about mining scams and insider trading when we come to the careers of Herbert Hoover [see 13th May 1897] and Joseph P. Kennedy [see 5th June 1933] [end of The Western Australian Gold Rush sub-thread]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = STOCK MARKET AND FINANCIAL PRACTICE AND SHARP PRACTICE]

1895 [27th May] The armoured cruiser HMS Terrible [Wikipedia shipography=>1899 (13th March)] is launched at J. and G. Thomson [1888 (20th October)<=>1897], Clydebank. She will be fitted
with 48 Belleville high pressure tubed boilers [Wikipedia factsheet] and it is hoped she will prove capable of 25 knots [continues at 1899 (13th March) ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1895 [20th June] Seeing is Believing [XXXVI - Early Motion Pictures ("Opening of the Kiel Canal")]: [Continued from 1894 (21st November)] The Kiel Canal (<=1887) is formally opened, saving a day’s steaming for vessels in transit from the North Sea to the Baltic. Acres films the proceedings, and duly incorporates the footage into an 18-second current affairs reel under the title "Opening of the Kiel Canal" [IMDB entry; see it at British Film Institute (registration required)] [sub-thread continues at 10th August ...], [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES][THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1895 [1st July] The British Liberal Unionist Member of Parliament Joseph Chamberlain [Wikipedia biography]=>29th December (Birmingham West) takes post as Colonial Secretary, and sets about strengthening the British Empire. His thinking in this is that "it is not enough to occupy great spaces of the world's surface unless you can make the best of them". [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1ASIDE: The Liberal Unionists were a short-lived centre-right break-away faction of the ancestral Liberal Party, who sided for conscientious reasons with the Conservative Party on the question of Irish Home Rule (1893 (4th September)<=1904 (2nd December)).

1895 [2nd July] The Venezuelan Dispute [III - The Olney Note] [Continued from 4th February] Still in his first month in post and known hitherto primarily for his 1894 strike-breaking skills as Attorney-General, Secretary of State Richard Olney [check him out] presents President Cleveland with a discussion draft of a possible hard-line diplomatic note for presentation to Britain. The wording makes much of the 1823 Monroe Doctrine [check it out] ...

ASIDE: Henry Cabot Lodge, Sr. had recently (June 1895) promoted the line that any encroachment by Britain against Venezuela was, by virtue of the Monroe Doctrine, "nothing less than an act of hostility against the United States" (Karp, 1979, p41). Indeed, at this time, both the Democrats and the Republicans were trying to out-Monroe each other. Walter Karp's (1979) book "The Politics of War" makes much of this stage of the negotiations. Karp accuses Olney of deliberately using his "shyster lawyer's mind" (p43) to put the British on the back foot.

Olney's document is "remarkable for its specious reasoning, its vulgar swagger, its insulting bellicosity, and most of all for its extraordinary escalation of America's alleged interest in the [...] dispute" (Karp, 1979, p43). In the event it is held back for five weeks for polishing, not being delivered until 7th August [sub-thread continues at 17th February 1896 ...], [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

CONSPIRACY TROPES: In the lexicon of Conspiracy Theory, there is every chance that the Venezuelans are using <covert lobbyists> to influence the government line, in an effort to obtain more concessions than even the Venezuelans think they are entitled to.

********** "AS OLD AS CINEMA ITSELF"**********

1895 [10th August] Seeing is Believing [XXXVII - Early Motion Pictures (Gaumont)]: [Continued from 20th June] The French inventor Léon E. Gaumont [Wikipedia biography]=>1901 (27th September) founded a company to produce and distribute films [sub-thread continues at 26th August ...], [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1ASIDE: Company slogan.
1895 [6th July] **Cardiff Docks [IX - Queen Alexandra Dock Authorised]**: [Continued from 1887 (24th August)] The Bute Docks Bill, 1894, is assented by Parliament and arrangements are put in hand to fund the construction of a large new dock at Cardiff [continues at 1907 (13th July) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1895 [13th July-7th August] In this year's General Election the **Independent Labour Party** fields 28 candidates but to no great effect. [THREAD = THE WW1 WORKING CLASS SOLDIER]

1895 [16th July] As authorised by the Telegraph Act 1892 [<=1892 (22nd March)] the British Post Office opens its new trunk telephone service. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1895 [17th July-uncertain] **The Empire of India Exhibition**: After 16 months in construction, London's 94-metre (=308 feet) **Great Wheel** [Wikipedia wheelography] opens for business as part of a larger celebration of all things Indian at Earl's Court. It will stay open until 1906, but will lose its height record when the Paris wheel opens in 1900. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

****** MORE ON THE FREUDIAN UNCONSCIOUS ******

1895 [24th July] **The Case of Irma's Injection**: Sigmund Freud [??th April<==>23rd September] wakens and remembers a curious dream he has had the night before. He writes it down quickly [Wikipedia full text online]. It apparently concerns the giving of an injection to a hysteria patient of his, one **Emma Eckstein [case "Irma"]** [Wikipedia biography], following a failed experimental surgical procedure by his friend **Wilhelm Fliess** [<=1887 (28th December)]. Freud's interpretation of the dream is that it represents a symbolic fulfilment of his own need to be free of feelings of guilt at having been peripherally associated with a case of medical malpractice. The event is noteworthy in the present context because it helps crystallise Freud's thoughts on the clinical and theoretical significance of dream content [=>1899 (4th November)]. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1895 [25th August] The new **Adams Hydroelectric Power Plant** [Wikipedia factsheet] at Niagara Falls is ceremonially switched on. As at Ames [<=1891 (21st June)] the plant uses water-driven turbines to spin ten **Westinghouse Electric Company** [<=1891 (21st June)] A.C. Alternators, each producing 3.7MW. Adams will remain in service until 1961 and is nowadays a U.S. National Historic Landmark. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1895 [26th August-September] Seeing is Believing [XXXVIII - Early Motion Pictures (Joly versus the Phantascope)]: [Continued from 10th August] On 26th August the French inventor **Henri Joly** [Wikipedia biography], funded by the phonograph manufacturer **Charles Pathé** [Wikipedia biography] 1896 (28th September), files for a patent on a movie camera. He then reportedly produces a demonstration reel entitled "Le Bain d'une Mondaine" [in English as 'Lady Takes a Bath'; we have been unable to confirm this work]. Meanwhile on the other side of the Atlantic the American film technicians **Thomas Armat** [Wikipedia biography] 1896 (23rd April) and **Charles Francis Jenkins** [Wikipedia biography] 1896 (23rd April) exhibit a projector named the "Phantascope" [Wikipedia factsheet] at a September industrial fair in Atlanta, GA [sub-thread continues at May ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

********** IMPORTANT WW1 TECHNOLOGY **********

============= WIRELESS TELEGRAPHY =============

============= WIRELESS TELEGRAPHY =============

============= WIRELESS TELEGRAPHY =============
1895 [23rd September] Locating Brain Function [IV - Freud (1895/1950)]: [Continued from 1891] Sigmund Freud [24th July<=1899 (4th November)] remarks to a colleague that he is accumulating papers on an important new theory. In the event however the manuscript is put in a drawer and forgotten about, not being discovered until 1950. It is then edited and published posthumously as "Entwurf einer wissenschaftlichen Psychologie" [in English (the same year) as "Project for a Scientific Psychology"]. The technical significance of "the Project" is that it grounds both conscious and unconscious mental processing in the same sorts of underlying nerve circuitry. In fact the book contains three simple hand-drawn nerve net sketches (respectively, Figures 13, 14, and 15) [see one now] which are not dissimilar to those subsequently popularised in the textbook memory theory of the 1950s¹,²,³. See the Companion Resource [scroll to <Freud's Project>] for further details. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

¹ASIDE: Readers are reminded that at this moment in time Freud is NOT YET FAMOUS and NOT YET A PSYCHOANALYST. He is a neurologist, and a good one at that, with no little skill in the neuropsychology of aphasia [=1891], psychiatry [=1885 (??th October)], and neuropsychology (the present work). The psychosexual side of his theories is still being developed in rather obscure publications and personal correspondence, and will not be formally published until 1900, and then only in German [=1899 (4th November)]. It is only when "Interpretation of Dreams" is translated into English in 1911 that the world pricks up its ears.

²ASIDE: The doyen of neuronally grounded memory theory in the 1950s was the Canadian neuropsychologist Donald O. Hebb [Wikipedia biography=>1949], so much so that to this day the generic name for artificial intelligence circuitry is the "Hebbian Net" [Wikipedia factsheet].

³ASIDE - THE SCIENTIFIC VALUE OF SCRIBBLES: Freud did not draw many diagrams but when he did they deserve close scrutiny - see the listing in the Companion Resource [scroll to <Freud's Diagrams and Illustrations>].

********** FIRST FREE CINEMA SHOW **********
********** PROJECTORS REPLACE PEEP SHOWS **********
********** PROJECTORS REPLACE PEEP SHOWS **********
********** PROJECTORS REPLACE PEEP SHOWS **********
1895 [1st November] **Seeing is Believing [XL - Early Moving Images (The Skladonowskis Branch Out)]:** [Continued from 28th September] No longer content to remain magic-lantern operators the Skladonowski Brothers (=1879) use a movie projector of their own invention - the “Bioscope” [Wikipedia generic factsheet] - to show films they have been producing themselves to a paying Berlin audience. Each reel last around six seconds and is projected with live mood-music onto the viewing screen from behind. As things will turn out, however, they will be unable to compete with the technology about to be revealed by the Lumiére Brothers [28th September<=>27th December] and their portfolio is soon relegated to second division venues such as fairgrounds and provincial village halls [sub-thread continues at 27th December ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1895 [30th? November] **The Cuban War of Independence [IX - Churchill Comes of Age]:** [Continued from 1st April 1895] Using a three-week furlough as a cover story, a young British cavalry lieutenant named Winston Churchill [=20th February 1895], having been embedded with a Spanish Army unit to assess performance of their new M1893 7mm German Mausers, comes under fire from the rebels in the Battle of Iguara. As near as he can subsequently recall it is on the occasion of his 21st birthday. The details are given in Hal Kelpak’s (2015 [Amazon]) book entitled “Churchill Comes of Age: Cuba 1895”, if interested [sub-thread continues at 16th February 1896 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1895 [??th December-1896 (28th January)] **The Fourth Anglo-Ashanti War:** This two-month raid by Gold Coast British forces into the neighbouring Ashanti Kingdom is an attempt to forestall French and German ambitions in the region. It is fought between a small British column under Sir Francis Scott [no convenient biography] and the Ashanti defenders of Kumasi, their capital. A young [Sir] Robert Baden-Powell [1st Baron Baden-Powell] gains rough country experience commanding a contingent of native scouts. The outcome is that Ashanti is formally declared a British protectorate on 16th August 1896. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1895 [24th December] Upon the death of Edward J. Harland [=1889 (19th January)] his fellow-shareholder William J. Pirrie [1st Viscount Pirrie] takes over as Chairman of Harland and Wolff [=1889 (19th January)<=>1899 (14th January)], Belfast. He will hold the post until 1924. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1895 [27th-28th December] **Seeing is Believing [XLI - Early Motion Pictures (The French Counterattack)]:** [Continued from 1st November] On 27th December the Lumiére Brothers [1st November<=>1896 (15th March)] stage a private demonstration of their Cinématographe system to an invited audience of leading Parisian impresarios including the Theatre Robert-Houdin’s Méliès [1888<=>1896 (May)] and the Musée Grévin’s Reynaud [=1892 (28th October)], raising intense commercial interest. The following day they repeat the demonstration for the public, to similar acclaim. The Lumières will now spend much of 1896 on a world demonstration tour [sub-thread continues at 1896 (20th February) ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

***** CLASSIC FALSE FLAG ATTACK (FAILED) *****
****** CLASSIC FALSE FLAG ATTACK (FAILED) ******
****** CLASSIC FALSE FLAG ATTACK (FAILED) ******

1895 [29th December-1896 (2nd January)] **The Jameson Raid:** This five-day raid by Cape Colony into neighbouring Transvaal is an attempt to destabilise Kruger’s [1880 (13th December)<=>1896 (3rd January)] government there by recruiting the Uitlander [=1899 (30th May)] population there against the establishment Afrikaners. It is fought between a small Cape Colonist column under Sir John C. Willoughby [no convenient biography] and Sir
Leander Starr Jameson [check him out] and a Transvaal militia force who have already learned that they were coming.

GEOPOLITICAL BACKGROUND: The British South Africa Company (BSAC) [Wikipedia factsheet] was established in 1889 to exploit mineral resources in Britain's possessions in southern Africa. Its CEO was the Kimberley-based diamond miner Cecil J. Rhodes [check him out]=>1899 (14th October). To protect its workings (and the Kimberley stretch of the Cape Town-Bulawayo railway) this company maintained a "private army" based in the Pitsani Strip [modern Lobatse [map, etc.]] in Bechuanaland [modern Botswana], a mere 130 miles west of Pretoria [maplink at 1899 (12th October)]. Rhodes is also Prime Minister of Cape Colony and has been liaising more or less closely with Britain's recently appointed Colonial Secretary Joseph Chamberlain [1st July=>1899 (7th August)]. The expedition was largely financed by diamond millionaire Abraham Bailey [check him out].

In the event the Cape Colonists are driven off in disarray and a number of the ringleaders jailed. The incident is noteworthy in the present context for the ensuing diplomatic backlash [=>1896 (3rd January)] and Boer preparations for a defensive war [=>1899 (12th October)]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

**********  THE PUTEAUX 75 FINALLY GETS ITS RECOIL SYSTEM  **********
**********  THE PUTEAUX 75 FINALLY GETS ITS RECOIL SYSTEM  **********
**********  THE PUTEAUX 75 FINALLY GETS ITS RECOIL SYSTEM  **********

1896 The "Puteaux 75" Project [V - The Deville-Rimailho Recoil System]: [Continued from 1894 (15th October)] The French artillery officers Charles Étienne Sainte-Claire-Deville [<=1891] and Émile Rimailho [Wikipedia biography] finally resolve the leaks in the Deport long-recoil system under development for the Puteaux 75 project. The resulting "Deville-Rimailho Long-Recoil System" progressively absorbs the backward reaction of the gun barrel during the acceleration of the projectile with minimal effect on the positioning of the gun carriage as a whole, thus not needing re-aiming after each shot, THUS ALLOWING CONTINUOUS ACCurate FIRE. [continues at 1897 ...]. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

1896 The Krupp Company [1894<=1904] buys up the shipbuilder Germaniawerft [no convenient factsheet=>1906 (4th August)], Kiel. [THREAD = THE WW1 SUBMARINE NAVIES]

1896 The Mauser Company [1871 (2nd December)<=1898 (5th April)] releases its C96 Pistol [Wikipedia factsheet], a semi-automatic pistol soon to be commonly known as the "Broomhandle Mauser". It will be produced mainly in 7.63mm and 9mm calibre. [THREAD = WW1 SMALL ARMS]

1896 [3rd January] The Kruger Telegram: Kaiser Wilhelm II [1888 (15th June)<=next entry] approves 1 a personal telegram [full text online] to the president of the Transvaal, Kruger [1895 (29th December)<=1899 (30th May)], congratulating him on defeating the Jameson Raid [<=1895 (29th December)]. Seeing this as flagrant interference, the British press responds with anger and incredulity. [THREAD = WW1 WAR FEVER]

1ASIDE: The Kaiser will later explain that he signed a prepared text with no few reservations, but that he had been advised to do so by his senior officials on the basis that the wording, on balance, was no more inflammatory than the Jameson incursion had been illegal. Readers may like to compare the diplomatic exchange which followed Britain's Prince Charles' remarks about Russia's President Putin in the 2014 Ukraine Crisis [hundreds of online reports to choose from]. Career diplomats will no doubt assure us that such interventions are a valuable, albeit heavy-handed, weapon in the diplomatic armoury.

1896 [3rd January] Kaiser Wilhelm II [preceeding entry<=1897 (6th June)] receives a technical appraisal from Alfred von Tirpitz [1889 (1st August)<=1897 (6th June)] concerning the potential
expansion of the German battlefleet. The Kaiser, however, noting the ongoing crisis in South Africa, continues to sympathise with Friedrich von Hollmann [1890 (22nd April)<=>1897 (6th June)] in the latter's liking for a cruiser fleet to fly the German flag worldwide. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1896 [?? January] The Rise of Herbert Hoover [I - Learning the Ropes]: [New sub-thread] Newly qualified geologist Herbert Hoover [check him out] is taken on by consulting mine surveyor Louis Janin, Snr. [check him out] to help him produce expert opinion in an ongoing court case (the ageing Janin is no longer agile enough to cope with the underground side of the work, and needs a younger, slimmer, more agile, assistant).

↓↓↓↓↓ PAY ATTENTION, THIS IS IMPORTANT ↓↓↓↓↓

ASIDE - "APEX RIGHTS": The General Mining Act of 1872 [Wikipedia briefing] gave the registered owners of a claim the "extra-lateral", or "apex", right to undermine neighbouring claims in hot pursuit of their seam. Needless to say, there were thousands of disputes where two separate claims met in the middle [like the spaghetti eating dogs in "Lady and the Tramp" - Ed.], or where it was not immediately obvious that a seam was continuous. In such cases as these the courts could only rely on expert testimony from mine surveyors. Louis Janin and Company provided that testimony on behalf of those willing to pay for it, and one of Hoover's first jobs was to conduct such a survey. The opportunities for professional malpractice are many and obvious. IN SHORT, YOU KNOW IN ADVANCE WHICH STOCKS ARE GOING TO GO UP AND WHICH ARE GOING TO GO DOWN. Louis Janin also surveyed the Great Anaconda Mine at Butte, Montana, on behalf of the Rothschilds.

Hoover's next job is to carry out a technical appraisal at the Steeple Rock Mining Company, Carlisle, NM, on behalf of its London owners, The Exploration Company [no quick reference source], part of the Rothschild business empire. It is his "first big independent job" (Liggett, 1932, p51). Then in October 1896 Janin receives a telegram from managing agents Berwick, Moreing and Company (BMC) [check them out], asking for American-trained goldmine men, and he recommends Hoover for one of the vacancies (Burner, 1979) [sub-thread continues at 13th May 1897 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = STOCK MARKET AND FINANCIAL SHARP PRACTICE]

********** ZIONISM TAKES OFF **********

1896 [1st February] Zionism Pre-WW1 [VIII - Der Judenstaat Published]: [Continued from 1894 (undated)] Having pondered the problem of European anti-Semitism Theodor Herzl [1894 (15th October)<=>1908 (5th October)] now publishes "Der Judenstaat" [in English (the same year) as "The Jewish State"], in which he argues for the creation of a Jewish state either in Argentina or (preferably) Palestine. Herzl will now spend the next five years unsuccessfully trying to buy the latter from the Ottomans. His efforts mark the beginning of modern "Zionism" [Wikipedia factsheet]. [sub-thread continues at 10th March ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

ASIDE: Zion was the name of the Palestinian mountain on which stood the Jebusite fortress captured by the Israelites under David I of Israel [Wikipedia biography] in around 1003BCE and then incorporated as Mount Zion [Wikipedia factsheet] into the developing city of Jerusalem. When the Israelites were subsequently sent into exile in Babylonia, Zion became a natural focus for Zionism, the struggle one day to return.

1896 [??th February] In an attempt to ingratiate his regime in the eyes of the Russians, Prince Ferdinand I of Bulgaria [1887 (7th July)<=>1908 (5th October)] redeicates his Roman Catholic two-year-old son Boris [III of Bulgaria]1918 [Wikipedia biography]=1918 (3rd October] into the Russian Orthodox faith. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1896 [16th February] The Cuban War of Independence [X - Weyler Takes Over]: [Continued from 30th? November 1895] Having tried unsuccessfully to contain the guerrillas behind
Campos' cordon sanitaire of forts, redoubts, and sentry posts, the newly arrived General Weyler orders Reconcentrado - the gathering together of the civil population into tightly controlled refugee camps. Their farms, now untended, duly become wastelands.

**ASIDE - CONCENTRATION CAMPS:** Britain will use the concentration camp strategy to good effect in the South African War four years later [see 1st September 1900]. Note that there are some critical differences between a concentration camp, a work camp, an extermination camp, a refugee camp, and a prison camp: we therefore use the terms very precisely. But note also that concentration camps or refugee camps, without appropriate facilities, soon tend to become extermination camps in fact if not in name. The United States military tried to achieve the same end effect - denial of rural sanctuary - in Vietnam by use of defoliating agents.

Maceo's brigade fights on in Pinar del Rio and La Habana provinces on the western tip of the island [sub-thread continues at 20th February 1896 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1896 [17th February] **The Venezuelan Dispute [IV - Bigger Fish to Fry]** [Continued from 14th December 1895] The Venezuela question comes up in the House of Commons, at which time it is openly observed that the confrontation is not just between Britain and Venezuela, but also between Britain and the United States (Hansard, 37:499). It is also observed that the tract of land in question was "possessing considerable mineral wealth" (Hansard, 37:502). But when all is said and done, and with pressing matters to attend to in South Africa, Britain is happy to let the matter go to arbitration. Which is exactly what happens next [sub-thread continued at 2nd February 1897 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1896 [20th February-6th April] **The Cuban War of Independence [XI - Weyler Must Go]:** [Continued from 16th February 1896] No sooner has Weyler got his sleeves rolled up than the Jingoes in the United States are howling (more or less literally) for his dismissal. For the American hawks of the time, he is - their word - "Butcher" Weyler. The shrill cries for his removal coincide, on 20th February, with a meeting of the Senate Foreign Relations Committee, chaired now by the Republican Party's John Sherman, but with Senator Morgan the senior firebrand Democrat aboard. This meeting commends a resolution to President Cleveland calling (a) for the recognition of the "belligerency rights" of the Cuban rebels, and (b) for the United States to petition Spain officially for Cuban independence. The committee has taken evidence only from Cuban rebels, not from the Spanish government (Karp, 1979)

**ASIDE - THE PERILS OF RECOGNISING BELLIGERENT STATUS:** Recognising the belligerent status of one of the parties in someone else's war was quite a serious step in 19th Century International Law. Its immediate effect is to make it legal to supply arms to that party. More ominously, however, it allows the other side to search your ships on suspicion of carrying contraband, which is in turn a certain route to an international incident. To recommend belligerency rights, in other words, is to go looking for a fight (which is why President Ulysses S. Grant refused outright to grant such rights to the Cuban rebels during the Ten Years War in 1870).

The Republican Party's "rising foreign affairs spokesman" Henry Cabot Lodge adds that intervention would be justified "on the broad ground of a common humanity" (op. cit., p52). The vote is taken 28th February in the Senate and both resolutions passed 64:6. The House of Representatives passes its own resolution, calling for "intervention if necessary", on 2nd March by 262:17. The 17 dissenters, says Senator Morgan, are "hired traitors". Historians eight decades later will assess the debate as follows ...
"By an overwhelming vote, Congress had endorsed the rebel cause, had virtually branded Spain the aggressor in Cuba, and had legitimated in principle America's right and duty to intervene in Cuban affairs" (op. cit., p55).

Madrid, not unreasonably, smells a big fat Yanqui rat (spot the allusion) [sub-thread continues at 24th March 1896 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1896 [20th February] Seeing is Believing [XLII - Early Motion Pictures (Paul's "Theatrograph")]: [Continued from 1895 (27th December)] Following the break-up of their partnership both Paul [1895 (March)=21st March] and Acres [<=1895 (20th June)] continue to manufacture cinematographic equipment and produce content to help keep them earning. Paul's projector becomes the "Theatrograph" [Wikipedia factsheet] and Acres' becomes the "Kineopticon" [no convenient factsheet]. The magician "David Devant" [Wikipedia biography] will obtain one of the first units and incorporate it into his act at Maskelyne's [<=1894 (1st April)] Egyptian Hall, Piccadilly. Méliès [1895 (27th December)=May] will do likewise at the Theatre Robert-Houdin in Paris [sub-thread continues at March ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1896 [20th February] Seeing is Believing [XLII - Early Motion Pictures (Hepworth Studios)]: [Continued from 20th February] The British film technician Cecil M. Hepworth [Wikipedia biography] and (his cousin) Monty Wicks [no convenient biography] set up a film processing laboratory in Walton-on-Thames, Surrey, and start producing films taken on location and on a stage built in his back garden. They take these to market under the banner Hepworth Studios [Wikipedia factsheet=1899 (November)] [sub-thread continues at 15th March ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1896 [March] Seeing is Believing [XLIII - Early Motion Pictures (Hepworth Studios)]: [Continued from 20th February] The British film technician Cecil M. Hepworth [Wikipedia biography] and (his cousin) Monty Wicks [no convenient biography] set up a film processing laboratory in Walton-on-Thames, Surrey, and start producing films taken on location and on a stage built in his back garden. They take these to market under the banner Hepworth Studios [Wikipedia factsheet=1899 (November)] [sub-thread continues at 15th March ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1896 [10th March] Zionism Pre-WW1 [IX - A Political Sponsor Sought]: [Continued from 1st February] Recognising that ideas as profound as his will need powerful backers Theodor Herzl [1st February=1898 (31st October)] has for a while been seeking political sponsorship. He is helped in this endeavour by a chance meeting with the aforementioned William Hechler [1894 (undated)=1898 (15th October)], who, having chanced upon a copy of Der Judenstaat [<=1st February], has sought him out with a view to cooperation. They spend time cultivating Hechler's contacts in diplomatic circles, and putting out feelers to the Ottoman government offering to buy Palestine from them [sub-thread continues at 1898 (15th October) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1896 [15th March or hereabouts] Seeing is Believing [XLIV - Early Motion Pictures (Smith)]: [Continued from March] George A. Smith [1894 (June)=November], the proprietor of the St. Ann's pleasure garden in Hove, travels to Leicester Square, London, to catch the Lumière Brothers [<=1895 (27th December)] demonstration show, and resolves to add films of his own production to his own magic lantern show [sub-thread continues at 25th March ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]


1896 [21st March] Seeing is Believing [XLV - Early Motion Pictures (Further Developments)]: [Continued from 15th March] To supplement the income from sales of his Theatrograph [<=20th February] Paul [20th February<=1899 (12th October)] now stages the equipment's first public performance at the Olympia Theatre, Shoreditch (Rossell, 1998), the first of a series of performances at London's music halls. Not long afterward (on 9th April) the Chicago showman William N. Selig [Wikipedia biography] founds the Selig
1896 [24th March] The Cuban War of Independence [XII - García Back in the Saddle]:
General García now makes his move, sailing with a small battlegroup of 78 men aboard the steamer Bermuda and landing at Moravi Beach, just northeast of Baracoa. While Maceo and Gómez campaign in the western provinces, he concentrates on the eastern tip of the island.

1896 [30th March] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XIII - Marconi Comes to Britain]:
The British engineer Alan A. Campbell-Swinton provides Guglielmo Marconi with a letter of introduction to William H. Preece. Preece is duly impressed with the young engineer's achievements to date and places the resources of the Post Office engineering department at his disposal to develop Hertzian wave technology further. Experiments take place during the summer on Salisbury Plain.

1896 [23rd April] Seeing is Believing [XLVI - Early Motion Pictures (The Phantascope)]:
Jenkins has sold the Phantoscope patent to the Kinetoscope Company, who now rebadge it as the "Vitascope" and set it to work in a New York City music hall.

1896 [May] Seeing is Believing [XLVII - Early Motion Pictures (Stop Motion)]:
At around this time Méliès turns to producing his own movies and showing them at his Théâtre Robert-Houdin in Paris. In all he will make 78 reels during 1896, including the occasional advertisements and erotica. The stop trick - whereby the camera is paused to allow one or more elements of the objective scene to be substituted - is now one of his favourite storyboarding special effects.

1896 [19th May] Upon the death of Archduke Karl Ludwig of Austria, his rights of succession to the Austro-Hungarian imperial throne pass automatically to his oldest son Archduke Franz Ferdinand of Austria.

1896 [20th May] The Perils of Coaling [III - The USS Indiana Fire]:
In the 15 years since the loss of HMS Doterel, the problem of coal bunker safety had simply been compounded by there being more and bigger ships. USS Indiana was luckier than Doterel. She was in the coal dock at the Brooklyn Naval Yard when an intense brown coal fire was discovered in one of her bunkers.
Fire control parties overcame the fire with steam and water hoses while gunpowder from an adjacent magazine was rapidly cleared hand over hand to a safer one further away.

**ASIDE:** At the time it was standard warship design practice to position coal bunkers so as to shield magazines from incoming shot and shell, giving warship fires just that added sense of urgency.

Samuels and Samuels (1995) record six such incidents in *Indiana* alone during the 1890s, along with similar events in USS *Cincinnati*, USS *New York*, USS *Wilmington* (four times), and the soon-to-be-famous USS *Olympia* (three times). Indeed the problem had grown so severe that the recently appointed head of the Office of Naval Intelligence, Richard Wainwright [check him out], conducts an early fact-finding study for Assistant Secretary of the Navy Theodore Roosevelt [check him out] [sub-thread continues at 26th November 1897 ...].  

1896 [30th May] The French priest René F. Renou [Wikipedia biography] is appointed Archbishop of Tours. Having previously served as regimental chaplain to the 88e Régiment d'Infanterie, he sets out to promote the new *Saint Martin Basilica* as the place where God and the French military can best share their thoughts. He will hold the post for 17 years before resigning.  

1896 [27th June] The Cuban War of Independence [XIII - Cheerleaders are Orchestrated]: (Continued from 24th March 1896) As for the press, "the great majority of American newspapers expressed their sympathy for the rebel cause" (Karp, 1979, p56), but as with the recent Congressional debates [see 20th February 1896] most of the "facts" presented came again from the Cuban Junta and followed the standard rules of newspaper propaganda, namely that objective truth has nothing to do with a good front page or a catchy slogan. At much the same time, the American trade union leader Samuel Gompers [check him out] is using the not inconsiderable resources of his American Federation of Labour [check them out] to conduct a programme of agitation in support of an independent Cuba. Their 1896 convention repeats the call for President Cleveland to "recognise the belligerent status" of the Cuban rebels [sub-thread continues at 7th December 1896 ...].  

1896 [1st July, say] The Switch from Coal to Oil [V - Early Recommendations (US)]: (Continued from 1st January 1890) Powers (1960 [full text online]) has studied George Melville's departmental papers and notes his suggestion this year that two otherwise identical coal-fired torpedo boats should be selected, one to be converted to oil and the other to be left using coal. The ships in question will be (oil) USS *Talbot* [Wikipedia shipography] and (coal) USS *Gwin* [Wikipedia shipography]. In the event it will take five years before the comparative sea trials take place. In the meantime, the older USS *Stiletto* [Wikipedia shipography] is retrofitted with an oil firing system for evaluation. Results from this and similar experiments will lead to a provisional recommendation that oil is too expensive to be adopted throughout the fleet, but that the higher speeds it allowed would be valuable for coastal defence assets and torpedo boats [sub-thread continues at 3rd March 1898 ...].  

1896 [29th July] The Berlin-Baghdad Railway [I - Eskişehir to Konya]: (Continued from 1896 (29th July)) This 445-kilometer (= 276 miles) spur off the Istanbul-Ankara main line extends the existing European railway network to the southeast, in the direction (although this is not yet universally apparent) of Baghdad [see explanatory map] [continues at 1903 (27th July) ...].
1896 [16th August] The Panic of 1893/Depression of 1894-1898 [XIV - The Klondike to the Rescue]: [Continued from 20th February 1896] A promising yield of alluvial gold is reported in Claim #37903, Bonanza Creek, in Canada's Yukon Territory [sub-thread continues at 3rd November 1896 ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]

1896 [28th September] Seeing is Believing [XLVIII - Early Motion Pictures (The Pathé Brothers)]: [Continued from 20th February 1895] Having already profited from their involvement in the phonograph industry, and having acquired the designs for a movie camera (<=1895 (26th August)), Pathé [ditto] and his three brothers start expanding the family business to produce film equipment as well. Trading as Pathé Frères [Wikipedia factsheet=>1900 (14th July)] the company sets about "industrialising" [Charles Pathé’s term] the entertainment industry, both producing occasional films of their own as well as distributing films made by others (having sold them the equipment needed to do so) [sub-thread continues at November ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1896 [November] Seeing is Believing [XLIX - Early Motion Pictures (Williamson)]: [Continued from 20th February 1895] Having recently been learning from, and collaborating with, his neighbour George A. Smith [15th March<=>1899 (November)] the British chemist-turning-movie producer James Williamson [Wikipedia biography=>1900 (14th June)] shows an actuality entitled "Devil's Dyke Fun Fair" [SASE factsheet] in the Town Hall at Hove, Sussex. He will continue to produce films at a rate of two or three a year until 1910, achieving 28 titles in all [sub-thread continues at 24th December ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1896 [3rd November] The Panic of 1893/Depression of 1894-1898 [XV - The 1896 Presidential]: [Continued from 16th August 1896] Democratic Party candidate William Jennings Bryan [Wikipedia biography] stands against the Republican Party's William McKinley [check him out]. Bryan is campaigning on an economic reform platform, whilst McKinley is campaigning on a pro-gold, high-tariff, platform. But the ongoing Depression is too raw for intellectual debate, and the Democrats are easy to smear for mismanaging the economy since 1892, and the Republicans return a solid victory [sub-thread continues at 15th July 1897 ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]

1896 [7th December] The Cuban War of Independence [XIV - The Punta Brava Incident]: [Continued from 27th June 1896] In an otherwise minor engagement at Punta Brava, just outside Havana, General Maceo is killed. General García becomes Commander in Chief shortly afterward [sub-thread continues at 21st December 1896 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

*********** THE "ANGEL OF DEATH" DIES ***********

1896 [10th December] Having already accidentally seen his obituary in advance (<=1888 (12th April)), Alfred Nobel [1894<=>1902 (10th April)] dies, leaving the bulk of his fortune to establish the Nobel Prize Scheme [Wikipedia factsheet]. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]

1896 [12th December] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XIV - The Toynbee Hall Demonstration]: [Continued from 30th March] [Sir]1899 William H. Preece [30th March<=>1897 (10th June)] organises a public demonstration of Guglielmo Marconi's [30th March<=>1897 (11th May)] (Post Office-)improved transmission system at Toynbee Hall, London. No message is sent as such, but every time Preece keys the transmitter it rings a bell on Marconi’s receiver, wherever he happens to be standing in the hall. It is a major newspaper success the following morning [continues at 1897 (15th February ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]
1896 [21st December] The Cuban War of Independence [XV - Another Bang on the War Drum]: [Continued from 7th December 1896] A resolution is floated by the Senate Foreign Relations Committee calling for United States recognition of the Cuban Junta in the form of a "Republic of Cuba". President Cleveland, in the closing weeks of his presidency, refuses to intervene, preferring to leave the problem to his successor to sort out [sub-thread continues at 4th March 1897 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** THE HORROR MOVIE IS BORN **********

1896 [24th December] Seeing is Believing [L - Early Motion Pictures ("The Haunted Castle")]: [Continued from November] Méliès' [May<=1897 (18th April)] latest project is a three-minute Gothic horror movie under the title "Le Manoir du Diable" [In English as "The Haunted Castle";-- Bing it now], complete with the Devil, bats, skeletons, spectres, and the like [sub-thread continues at 1897 (7th February) ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

********** BRITISH SCIENTIFIC PSYCHOLOGY IS BORN **********

1897 Following the precedent set by the experimental psychology laboratories set up by William James at Harvard [<=1875], Wilhelm Wundt at Leipzig [<=1879], and G. Stanley Hall at Johns Hopkins [<=1883], William H. R. Rivers [1891<=1906 (3rd September)] now helps establish psychology laboratories at both University College, London, and St. John's College, Cambridge. Over the ensuing decade he and students such as Charles S. Myers [Wikipedia biography=>1915 (13th February)] and William McDougal [Wikipedia biography=>1907] will accumulate valuable data on the anatomy and physiology of perception. This development is noteworthy in the present context because all three of those named - Rivers, Myers, and McDougal - will be involved in the shellshock debate once war comes. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

********** MAJOR WW1 WEAPON **********

1897 The "Puteaux 75" Project [VI - Customer Acceptance Testing]: [Continued from 1896] The French Army begins trials of the Puteaux Atelier's Modèle 1897 75mm field gun [Wikipedia factsheet]. The weapon is an enlarged version of the 57mm field gun trialled in 1891 [q.v.], but now fitted with the very excellent Deville-Rimailho hydro-pneumatic long-recoil system [1896]. The value of the Nordenfelt breech is that it allows a very high rate of fire, constrained mainly by the need to replenishment ammunition, and the value of the long-recoil system is that faced with all but the most demanding of targets there is no need to relay the piece after each firing. Taken together, these factors mean that the weapon can operate effectively at a hitherto unheard of fifteen aimed rounds per minute, that is to say, firing round for round with trained riflemen! It is fielded with shrapnel, melinite [<=1885], and - when authorised - gas shells. A thousand or so four-gun batteries will have been created by the beginning of WW1, and a further 17,500 guns will be produced during the war at St. Etienne and other production facilities. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

WAR VIDEO: See YouTube video - note minimal movement of the carriage wheels when firing, also the long recoil, also the relatively slow return movement of the barrel. Note also the apparently effortless two-second cyclic ergonomics of the breech-man and the near-most shell-handler. This gun was a decade ahead of the competition!! See another YouTube video - as before but with commentary. Note the third man using a quadrant to check that the elevation is still correct just before each discharge.

********** A WINNER OF WARS **********
A WINNER OF WARS

ASIDE - THE FRENCH SEVENTY-FIVE IN WW1: The fact that rapid accurate shrapnel fire had hitherto been unknown made it difficult to plan for: specifically it was something Alfred von Schlieffen [1894<=1904 (ASIDE)] had never seen, and had therefore not allowed for in the Schlieffen Plan. It would prove to be an omission of historic magnitude for the new weapon was capable of engaging reserve units while they were being brought into action (that is to say, at ranges far beyond effective machine gun fire). It could, and did, stop battalions in their tracks. It could, and did, stop corps reaching their objectives on time. And, as the von Schlieffen offensive unfolded, it stopped the entire German Second Army in its tracks at the First Battle of the Marne [1914 (5th September)]. The rest - the entire bloody stalemate of the Western Front - is history.

1897 The South African teacher-choirmaster Enoch Sontonga [Wikipedia biography] sets the lyric of *Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika* [Xhosa = “God bless Africa”] to the hymn tune *Aberystwyth* [1876] - see/hear it now. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1897 [Sir]1915 Henry J. Newbolt [1892< =>1914 (2nd September)] publishes a poem entitled "Drake's Drum" [Bartleby full text online], in which the legend is perpetuated that if there is ever again the risk of Britain being invaded by sea then the ghost of Sir Francis Drake [<=1588 (28th May)] will "quit the port of heaven" and see off the invader. Again. [THREAD = WW1 ROMANTIC NATIONALISM][THREAD = THE WW1 MIDDLE CLASS SOLDIER]


1897 [25th January-7th February] The Greek-Turkish War [I - The Greek Invasion of (Ottoman) Crete]: [New sub-thread] On 25th January the Greeks land an expeditionary force under Timoleon Vassos [Wikipedia biography] on the ethnically-Greek-but-politically-Ottoman island of Crete, intending (from their perspective) to free the island by force. The forces clash on 7th February at Livadia, where the outcome is a Greek victory. News editors across the world sense the hour, and their war correspondents start to gather in the region. Among them, having equipped himself ("at considerable expense") with a movie camera and with 20 years' experience as a war correspondent / war artist for the *Illustrated London News* under his belt, will be the British journalist Frederic Villiers [Wikipedia biography=>18th April] [sub-thread continues at 24th March ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]
1897 [2nd February] **The Venezuelan Dispute [V - The Treaty of Washington]** [Continued from 17th February 1896] This agreement between Britain and Venezuela lays down the structure of the arbitration Tribunal and the framework of the proposed arbitration process. Over the ensuing 32 months submissions are duly made and evidence taken [sub-thread continued at 3rd October 1899 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1897 [15th February] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XV - The Strasbourg‡ Cathode Ray Tube and Oscilloscope]**: [Continued from 1896 (12th December)] [Readers unfamiliar with the Edison Effect should pre-read the entry at 1880 (13th February) before proceeding] The University of Strasbourg's Karl Ferdinand Braun [1874<=>1898 (20th September)] and (his assistant) Jonathan Zenneck [Wikipedia biography] develop the "cathode ray tube" (CRT) [Wikipedia factsheet and image] an elongated evacuated glass bulb shaped so as to expose the chemically coated inner surface at one end to the "cathode rays" emanating from an inbuilt cold charged electrode at the opposite end. The cathode emissions - soon to be identified as electrons [=30th April] - are focussed into a narrow beam by passing them through a charged tunnel electrode (shaped much like the barrel of a gun). The coating acts both as a conducting two-dimensional film anode and as a source of phosphorescence when electrically excited at a particular point. The team's particular genius was then to make the spot of light move across the screen, allowing the CRT to be used to good practical purpose as an "oscilloscope" [Wikipedia factsheet], that is to say, by making the fluorescing screen into a visible tracing of the wave form of an input wave. They achieve this by passing the cathode ray between two pairs of additional electrodes, one pair deflecting the emitted beam horizontally at a steady speed and the other pair deflecting it vertically according to the moment-by-moment amplitude of the input. **This contrivance allows all electromagnetic waves to be seen by the naked eye as traces on the oscilloscope screen.** One of the first things the team then investigates in this fashion is the rapid damping of the electromagnetic pulse produced by a spark-gap transmitter [continues at 10th May ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1ASIDE - STRASBOURG OR STRASSBURG: Strictly speaking Strasbourg is at this time in Germany, not France, having been occupied since the Franco-Prussian War [=1870 (19th July)]. The French get it back in 1918, however, so in this resource we use the French spelling throughout.

1897 [4th March] **The Cuban War of Independence [XVI - McKinley's Inauguration]**: [Continued from 21st December 1896] The inauguration takes place in Washington of William McKinley [check him out]. It is the first presidential inauguration ever to be filmed [YouTube it now], and at least one modern historian senses it to have been a sight more militaristic than hitherto. McKinley's speech includes the words: "War should never be entered upon until every agency of peace has failed" [sub-thread continues at 13th March 1897 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1897 [4th March] **Seeing is Believing [LI - Early Moving Images (New Production Companies)]**: [Continued from 7th February] On 4th March William McKinley [Wikipedia biography] is inaugurated as 25th President of the United States. The proceedings are reportedly [have been unable to triangulate - Ed.] filmed by the recently formed partnership of Edward H. Amet [Wikipedia biography] and George K. Spoor [Wikipedia biography]. Also this month, having recently made something of a name for himself with a novelty reel entitled "Sketching Mr. Edison", the British-born American stage-caricaturist J. Stuart Blackton [Wikipedia biography] teams up with conjuror Albert E. Smith [Wikipedia biography] to found the Vitagraph Company [Wikipedia factsheet] to produce topical shorts. In an impressive first year Blackton capitalises upon his
theatrical skills with further performances to camera [no convenient video, but this 1900 reprise is indicative] [sub-thread continues at 18th April ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1897  [13th March]  The Cuban War of Independence [XVII - García's Summer Offensive]: [Continued from 4th March 1897] During 1897 Gmo García successfully invests one Spanish stronghold after another. On 13th March his troops take Jiguani [Google maps], and on 30th August they take Las Tunas [Google maps] and Guáimaro, 20 miles further west [sub-thread continues at 4th May 1897 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1897  [24th March]  The Greek-Turkish War [II - The Greek Invasion of (Ottoman) Macedonia]: [Continued from 25th January] Having made promising progress against the Ottomans in Crete the Greeks now strike northward into the Ottoman-held provinces of Epirus [map, etc.] and Thessaly [map, etc.]. Outnumbered by more than 2:1, the Greeks are banking on receiving significant support from ethnic Greeks in the region. The Ottomans, however, are assisted by German advisors under the command of Wilhelm von der Goltz [Wikipedia biography=>next entry but one], who will take a very hard line with irregulars of this sort. The initial Greek offensives make limited gains but soon run out of steam [sub-thread continues at 18th April ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1897  [18th April-18th May]  The Greek-Turkish War [III - The Decisive Ottoman Counterattack]: [Continued from 24th March] The Ottomans finally declare war on 18th April. On the (western) Epirus front they attack at Arta [map, etc.] and Preveza [map, etc.]. On the (eastern) Thessaly front they counterattack at Tyrnavos/Tournavos [map, etc.] on 21st April, Larissa [map, etc.] and Velestino [map, etc.] on 27th April, Farsala [map, etc.] on 5th May, Volos [map, etc.] on 8th May, and Domokos [map, etc.] on 16th May. By 18th May the Greeks are suing for peace [sub-thread continues at 21st October, but see also next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

**********  THE PRODUCERS LEARN A STRANGE LESSON  **********

**********  THE PRODUCERS LEARN A STRANGE LESSON  **********

**********  THE PRODUCERS LEARN A STRANGE LESSON  **********

**********  THE PRODUCERS LEARN A STRANGE LESSON  **********

1897  [18th April-18th May]  Seeing is Believing [LII - The Cinema at War (The Greek-Turkish War)]: [Continued from March, but see also preceding entry] The war in Macedonia is noteworthy in the present context as the first in history to be reported by cinematographic and well as by conventional methods. The aforementioned Villiers [25th January<=1898 (2nd September)] arriving (with his movie camera) in the port of Volos [map, etc.], about 80 miles north-north-west of Athens, on 24th April..

CAMERO/RECOMMENDED READING - FREDERIC VILLIERS: Although assessed by some historians as being "a notoriously self-aggrandising poseur" (Dash, 2012 online), the balance of opinion is that Villiers was genuinely the first to secure film footage from a war zone. His story was progressively unearthed only recently by the British historian Stephen Bottomore [no convenient biography=>1898 (3rd July)] (Bottomore, 1994, 2007 online). Nor was this Villiers' last war, for by 1912 he will have "covered more campaigns than any other correspondent and seen more battles than any soldier" (Bottomore, 1994, p12).

Villiers' written reports were wired to London in the conventional way, but it will not be until August that - by then back in Britain - he can make any money out of his film, now edited into 13 successive reels (see the advertisement in Bottomore, 2007 op. cit., p7). And even then there is limited box-office appeal because the films lack dramatic impact.

HOWEVER ...
One of the lessons of the cinematographic coverage of the Greek-Turkish war is that truth is less visually appealing than fiction. For while Villiers has been risking his life recording the war from the actual front Méliès [1896 (24th December)–1898 (15th February)], recently installed in a new production facility in the eastern suburbs of Paris, has simply been reading the daily telegraph reports from the Balkans and covering the war the easy way, by restaging the juicier events using actors and scenery. His first project, under the title “Combat Naval en Grèce” [Bing it now], re-enacts a reported shelling of Preveza [maplink in preceding entry] by the Greek navy (the film is noteworthy for its use of a "rocking set" - a pivoted stage - to simulate the movement of a ship at sea). Other titles include "La Prise de Tournavos" [YouTube it now], in which two or three Turks drives a similar number of Greeks from an anonymous street barricade. Méliès also makes good propaganda out of the punishments meted out by von der Goltz [24th March–1915 (7th December)] against Greek terrorists/resistance fighters, with reels such as "Exécution d'un Espion" [IMDB entry; footage lost] and "Massacres en Crète" [IMDB entry; footage lost]. The lesson is straightforward enough ...

"Villiers' films were on a subject that was headline news, and yet he found them unsalable. The public wanted action, not truth. Méliès was eager to supply such action, the Greek war fakes being the first films produced in his new studio. [...] As Villiers ruefully observed: 'Barnum and Bailey, those wonderful American showmen, correctly averred that the public like to be fooled'" (Bottomore, 1994, p16).


1 **ASIDE:** The fact that this film was not entitled "Execution of a Terrorist" clearly indicates which side the rest of Europe was on.

1897 [30th April] The British physicist [Sir]1908 Joseph J. Thomson [Wikipedia biography] suggests that a whole host of laboratory observations, not least the Edison Effect [<=1880 (13th February)], would be elegantly explained by accepting the existence of a negatively charged subatomic particle, small compared to the size of the smallest atom [i.e., Hydrogen]. Thomson calls the basic building blocks of matter "corpuscles", but the scientific world at large immediately recognises that George J. Stoney's [<=1891] term "electrons" would be fully appropriate. [THREAD = BASIC PHYSICS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1897 [4th May–20th May] The Cuban War of Independence [XVIII - Casus Belli]: [Continued from 13th March 1897] In promoting his belligerency rights resolution a second time, the Democratic Party's fighting cock on the Senate Foreign Relations Committee, Senator Morgan [check him out] reminds the Senate that American citizens are also getting hurt, indeed are "literally starving to death in numbers", as a consequence of General Weyler's Reconcentrado. Casus gunboat if ever there was one. On 10th May Senator Eugene Hale1 [Wikipedia biography] tries to point out that Morgan's sources are far from impartial, but to no avail. On 12th May Senator Jacob Gallinger [Wikipedia biography] submitted a fiendishly clever2 resolution requesting a $50,000 appropriation to feed suffering American citizens in Cuba. McKinnon throws his weight behind this...
suggestion on 17th, and on 20th Morgan's resolution passes 41:14 in the Senate [sub-thread continues at 26th June 1897 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1So often did this particular Republican try to correct the Interventionists that they took to calling him "the Senator from Spain".

2Why clever? Because the request for money "reified" Morgan's previously uncorroborated assertion.

1897 [4th May] The twin-screw passenger liner SS Kaiser Wilhelm der Grosse [Wikipedia shipography=>sunk in action 1914 (26th August)] is launched at A.G. Vulkan [Wikipedia factsheet=>1900 (10th January)], Stettin, for service with the Norddeutscher-Lloyd Line [1895 (31st January) => 1901 (30th March)]. She has an impressive "grand staircase", soon copied, including by the designers of RMS Titanic [=>1911 (31st May)]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

ASIDE - SS KAISER WILHELM DER GROSSE IN WWI: See the entry for the Battle of the Rio de Oro [=>1914 (26th August)].

1897 [10th May] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XVI - The 1897 Lavernock Transmission]: [Continued from 15th February] Assisted by his Post Office engineers Guglielmo Marconi [1896 (12th December) => 10th June] successfully transmits Morse Code from Lavernock Point, on the coast ten miles west of Cardiff to Flatholm Island some three and a half miles out into the Bristol Channel [continues at 11th May ...], [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1897 [11th May] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XVII - The Lodge-Muirhead Patents]: [Continued from 10th May] Having been collaborating closely of late [Sir]1902 Oliver J. Lodge [1894 (14th August) => 1901 (3rd June)] and Alexander Muirhead [1894 (14th August) => 1901 (3rd June)] file for a G.B. patent (eventually granted on 10th December 1897 as G.B. Patent 29069 of 1897) under the title "Improvements in Syntonic Telegraphy". Further collaborative patents follow until 1905 [continues at 4th June ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1897 [13th May-7th May 1898] The Rise of Herbert Hoover [II - Time at Coolgardie]: [Continued from ??th January 1896] [Read firstly the Western Australian Gold Rush sub-thread at 18th May 1895] Hoover's next stop is Perth, Western Australia, as a "mine scout" on behalf of Berwick, Moreing and Company (BMC), who manage a portfolio of well-established and productive properties at Kalgoorlie on behalf of clients. He pays particular interest to the Sons of Gwalia Mine [Wikipedia briefing; Google maps]. This property is a consolidation of contiguous earlier claims, and had been acquired by entrepreneur George William Hall [check him out] in 1896 for £25,000. Hall had turned Sons of Gwalia into a long-term producer and now wanted to take his profit and move on. Hoover saw a lot of future potential, and cabled BMC 11th September 1897 recommending purchase.

ASIDE: As with all managing agents there is a duty of confidentiality to those who are ultimately paying them. They manage other people's investments. It would therefore be a substantial forensic accounting operation to discover the identities of the investors for whom BMC were buying into Sons of Gwalia.

Once the transfer of ownership is completed and a Prospectus issued describing the necessarily optimistic plans for the future, the Sons of Gwalia Mining Company is launched at a banquet on the Strand 28th March 1898, complete with influential guests such as M.P. David Lloyd George. At a shareholders meeting 7th May 1898 returns of 33% on capital were mentioned, and investors signed up for adjacent mines on the same reef (Evans, 2015) [sub-thread continues at 20th March 1899 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = STOCK MARKET AND FINANCIAL SHARP PRACTICE]
1897 [17th May] **John Holland** [1875<=1900 (11th April)] finally launches his prototype submarine, and sets out to demonstrate its potential value to the U.S. Navy. [THREAD = THE WW1 SUBMARINE NAVIES]

1897 [1st June] **American Naval Expansion [VIII - Mahan on Cuba]:** [Continued from 30th January 1893] In this his latest essay **Alfred Mahan** criticises the “political obtuseness and backwardness” of Spanish rule in the Caribbean and Gulf of Mexico, and discusses one by one the prime anchorages to be had in those waters, and to whom they presently belong. Of these, Cuba is preeminent, having many natural harbours [sub-thread continues at 1st June 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1897 [4th June or hereabouts] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XVIII - Marconi’s Royal Institution Demonstration]:** [Continued from 11th May] **Sir William H. Preece** [1896 (12th December)<=20th July] organises a demonstration of Guglielmo Marconi’s [11th May<=20th July] (Post Office-)improved transmission system at the Royal Institution, London under the title "Signalling through Space without Wires" [continues at 19th July ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1897 [6th/15th June] **German Naval Expansion [III - Tirpitz Replaces Hollmann]:** [Continued from 1890 (22nd April)] **Alfred von Tirpitz** [1886 (3rd January)<=1898 (26th March)] replaces Friedrich von Hollmann [<=1896 (3rd January)] as German Navy Secretary. One of his first acts (15th June) is to update his 1896 Memorandum, calling now for 19 new battleships over a ten-year timescale. **Kaiser Wilhelm II** [1896 (3rd January)<=1898 (26th March)] agrees to submit this proposal to the Reichstag for funding [continues at 1898 (26th March) ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES][THREAD = WW1 WAR FEVER]

1897 [26th June] **The Cuban War of Independence [XIX - Ultimatum]:** [Continued from 4th May 1897] **President McKinley** has a note delivered to the Spanish Ambassador in Washington **Enrique Depuy de Lôme** [Wikipedia biography], in which he tells Spain that if they do not achieve peace in Cuba the United States will do it for them. That peace, moreover, will only count if it meets two conditions, namely (a) that Reconcentrado has to cease, and (b) that Spain must find an accommodation with the rebels which is acceptable to the rebels. And the rebels, for sure, are going to accept nothing short of independence [sub-thread continues at 4th October 1897 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1897 [26th June] The German diplomat **Bernhard von Bülow** [Wikipedia biography]=1900 (20th June)] is appointed Staatssekretär im Auswärtigen Amt [= Secretary of State for the Foreign Affairs Office], where he pursues a vigorous Aussenpolitik [= "international/outwardly directed politics"], a policy with the central aim of turning Germany into a world player. [THREAD = WW1 WAR FEVER]

********** "EACH EXPOSURE STATES A FACT"1  **********

1897 [12th July] The new **Park Fever Hospital, Hither Green** ["Lost Hospitals of London" factsheet] is formally opened. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

**ASIDE - PARK HOSPITAL IN WW1:** Nothing yet found.

1897 [15th July] **The Panic of 1893/Depression of 1894-1898 [XVI - The Klondike Stampede!]:** [Continued from 3rd November 1896] The Canadian authorities are now ready to exploit the Bonanza Creek find, and an army of would-be goldminers has accumulated in Washington State. It will take almost a year to get them and their equipment up into the very inaccessible Klondike region, but there is good gold to be had and a fair proportion of it ends up in the United States’ economy, greatly easing the pressure on
gold reserves at a time when the economy was already spontaneously recovering. Next stop the Panic of 1907 [see 17th October 1907] [end of The Panic of 1893/Depression of 1894-1898 sub-thread]. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]

1897 [19th July] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XIX - Tesla's Hudson River Transmission]: [Continued from 4th June] Nikola Tesla [1893 (29th November)<=>1898 (2nd May)] announces the recent successful transmission of a wireless telegraph message from his laboratory at Houston Street, Manhattan, to a ship in the Hudson River 25 miles [= 40km] distant [continues at 20th July ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

********** MARCONI AND THE POST OFFICE PART COMPANY **********

1897 [20th July] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XX - Marconi Goes Corporate]: [Continued from 19th July] Now resident in Britain and working closely with the British military establishment Guglielmo Marconi [10th June<=>1899 (12th October)] establishes the Wireless Telegraph and Signal Company [Grace's Guide factsheet<=>1899 (12th October)], Chelmsford. In that the new company is also claiming all patent rights in the transmission system as it stands (including all the improvements put in place by the Post Office) the 15-month collaboration with [Sir]William H. Preece [10th June<=>retires with knighthood 15th February 1899; d. 6th November 1913] and his Post Office engineers now has to be brought under a far stricter code of practice [continues at 27th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1897 [27th August] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XXI - The Potsdam Transmissions]: [Continued from 20th July] Two Technical University of Charlottenburg researchers, Georg von Arco [Wikipedia biography=>1901 (9th March)] and Adolf Slaby [Wikipedia biography=>1901 (9th March)], use a nearby Berlin church tower as an antenna to test their latest wireless equipment. They successfully transmit to the Matrosenstation Kongsnaes [Wikipedia factsheet] installation a mile away in Potsdam. Collaborating closely with the AEG Company [1887<=>1899] they will have pushed the range up to around 40 miles by the following summer [continues at 1898 (2nd May) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1897 [4th October-14th November] The Cuban War of Independence [XX - New Brooms in Madrid and Havana]: [Continued from 26th June 1897] Following the assassination of the Spanish Prime Minister in August the slightly more liberal replacement, Praxedes Sagasta [Wikipedia biography], makes immediate moves toward meeting the conditions set down in President McKinnon's June ultimatum. The first of these is - as required - to recall General Weyler. His chosen replacement is Captain-General Ramón Blanco y Erenas [Wikipedia biography]. Then, on 26th October, an offer of autonomy for the island is made, to become effective 1st January 1898. And finally, on 14th November, a new improved Reconcentrado is implemented, complete with better food and healthcare [sub-thread continues at 8th October 1897 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1897 [8th October-15th November] The Cuban War of Independence [XXI - USS Maine Dry-Docked]: [Continued from 4th October 1897] In accordance with standard pre-deployment practice, the USS Maine [check her out] - recently selected as the gunboat of choice should one be needed to protect American citizens during the Cuban troubles - is dry-docked at Newport News for de-barnacling.

*ASIDE*: The limpet mine specialists of WW2 found it hard to attach their charges to heavily encrusted plating, so in some respects being barnacled has its uses. We have been trying to imagine how the shipyard workers must have felt, and what the scuttlebutt would have been, once news of the fatal explosion [see 15th February 1898] started to come through on 16th February 1898. Some unknown shipyard fitters would have been scraping away at the very
plating (early reports say at Hull Frame 18, later ones maybe Hull Frame 27) where the explosion occurred.

Once out of dry dock, the ship is victualled and takes on some 900 tons of "Pocahontas" bituminous coal (both a known firedamp explosion risk AND a known spontaneous bunker fire risk, but good for speed).

ASIDE: The Pocahontas mine in Virginia gave its name to any bituminous coal from the broader New River coalfield, so we do not actually know which individual mine the coal came from.

Her captain since 10th April 1897 is Charles Sigsbee [check him out]. Toward the end of the stop-over, Chief of the Office of Naval Intelligence, Commander Richard Wainwright [check him out] - who it will be recalled is the Navy's foremost expert on bunker fires - takes over [Wikipedia gives 15th November as his last day with the ONI - Ed.] as Executive Officer [sub-thread continues at 2nd December 1897 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = USS MAINE FALSE FLAG CONSPIRACY]

1897 [21st October–4th December] **The Greek-Turkish War [IV - The Treaty of Constantinople]:** [Continued from 18th April] Peace talks between Greece and Turkey begin in Istanbul on 21st October and last until the signing of the Treaty of Constantinople [Wikipedia factsheet] on 4th December. The Greeks are allowed to retain most of pre-war Greek Thessaly, but only after payment of significant reparations. Crete remains within the Ottoman Empire [end of sub-thread]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1897 [21st October] **The Müggelsee Research Station [II - A New Director]:** [Continued from 1893] Upon the untimely accidental death of Johannes Frenzel [<=1893] the directorship of the Müggelsee Research Station passes to Paulus Schiemenz [no convenient biography] [continues at 1906 (1st April) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1897 [25th October] **Seeing is Believing [LIII - Early Motion Pictures (The "Ambulance" Reels)]:** [Continued from 25th October] The latest Vitascope reels from Heise's [=1893 (9th May)] production unit are the two-parter "Ambulance Call" [YouTube it now] and "Ambulance at the Accident" [YouTube it now], both - because they have no alternative - carefully stage-managed documentary re-enactments ¹ [sub-thread continues at 27th November ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

¹ ASIDE - REENACTMENT: Younger readers should note that it is only since the appearance of 24/7 CCTV coverage a century later that the world has grown used to seeing film of accidents as they occurred. Prior to that advance the camera could only ever capture the aftermath of accidents.

1897 [26th November] **The Perils of Coaling [IV - The Wainwright Briefing]:** [Continued from 20th May 1896] Following his study into bunker fires, Richard Wainwright [check him out] briefs Assistant Secretary of the Navy Theodore Roosevelt [check him out] on the perils of spontaneous combustion. Roosevelt, in turn, briefs Secretary of the Navy John Long [check him out]. Duties and procedures are duly tightened all the way from the individual coal bunker to the mine-head [sub-thread continues at 13th April 1912 ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1897 [2nd December] The Cuban War of Independence [XXII - USS Maine is Warned for Forward Deployment]: [Continued from 8th October 1897] On 2nd December President McKinley approves the forward deployment of the Maine, and nine days later she leaves Newport News to take up station at Key West, just over 100 nautical miles north of Havana. She will be in position four days later, there to await any distress call from the American Consul-General in Havana Fitzhugh Lee [Wikipedia biography] [sub-thread continues at 1st January 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1897 [12th December] The Cuban War of Independence [XXIII - The Integristas Threaten Disorder]: [Continued from 2nd December 1987] With less than three weeks to go before the implementation of the Limited Autonomy regime, and in the face of threats and agitations from the "Integristas" - the Weylerite opposition - Governor Blanco warns his district administrators to be on their guard for direct action against persons and property, and especially against American persons and property (Tone, 2006) [sub-thread continues at 1st January 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


1897 The Swiss psychiatrist Eugen Bleuler [Wikipedia biography] is appointed Medical Director at the University of Zurich's Burghölzli Clinic [1870<=>1900]. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1898 The German Army introduces a new 50cm-long sword bayonet. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE CONTROL]

1898 After his contribution to the Puteaux 75 project, Émile Rimailho [<=1896] joins a new project to retrofit a Deville-Rimailho recoil mechanism to the Model 1881 155mm Howitzer [<=1881], reinventing it as the Model 1904 155mm Court-Rimailho Howitzer [=>1904]. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

1898 [1st January] The Cuban War of Independence [XXIV - Limited Autonomy]: [Continued from 12th December 1897] In their attempt to head off confrontation with the United States arising from the 26th June 1897 Ultimatum [q.v.], Madrid implements limited autonomous government on Cuba, with ceremony but few cheers. José Congosto [no convenient biography] is now Secretary General of Cuba under an experimental Constitución Autonómica. Karp (1979) describes this as "Canadian-style", that is to say, self-government within a broader empire. President McKinley, however, pointedly refuses to endorse the new arrangement as "acceptable" within the meaning of said Ultimatum. The Weylerites on the island are more open in their condemnation of the experiment, and in the coming days become increasingly active as "Integristas" - those who believe in the integrity of the Spanish Empire at all costs [sub-thread continues at 3rd January 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [1st January] Seeing is Believing [LV - Early Motion Pictures ("Humpty Dumpty Circus")]: [Continued from 1897 (25th October)] The latest offering from the Vitagraph Company [1897 (March)<=>25th January] is "Humpty Dumpty Circus" [lost], a short stop-
motion animation of a circus scene, complete with acrobats and exotic animals (all, reportedly, from Blackton’s [1897 (March)–25th April] daughter's toy cupboard) [sub-thread continues at 5th April ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1898 [3rd January] The Cuban War of Independence [XXV - Accelerated Promotion for Dewey]: [Continued from 1st January 1898]

Assistant Secretary of the Navy Theodore Roosevelt fast tracks his protégé Commodore George Dewey [Wikipedia biography] to command the U.S. Navy's Asiatic Squadron. Roosevelt, Dewey, and naval strategist Alfred Mahan have been lunching together for months, so we may safely conclude that they see eye to eye on the U.S. Navy's role in any Expansionist foreign policy. Hagan informs us that a "blockade-Cuba-attack-Manila" strategy had been approved in these men's minds as early as June 1897. Hagan also reminds us that a Director of Naval Intelligence (such as Executive Officer on the Maine, Richard Wainwright) and an Assistant Secretary of the Navy (such as Roosevelt) cannot not be highly aware of each other's opinions [sub-thread continues at 12th January 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = USS MAINE FALSE FLAG CONSPIRACY]

1898 [12th January] The Cuban War of Independence [XXVI - The Havana Riot]: [Continued from 3rd January 1898]

A demonstration by right-wing Voluntarios - a pro-Weyler faction of Spanish Army officers - attacks the offices of a rebel-sympathising newspaper. Consul-General Lee cables Washington, but because there was no threat to American citizens he does not yet call in the Maine. On 18th January Maine tops up her coal from a lighter ...

CONSPIRACY TROPES: The <sabotaged luggage> narrative needs always to be at the back of a good Conspiracy Theorist's mind. For example, between 1914 and 1917 dozens of freighters out of American ports en route for Britain were damaged by German saboteurs planting delayed action incendiary devices in their cargoes [see 3rd February 1915, and supporting links for the full list]. All interactions with civilians - especially casual gang labour - are therefore risky and demand increased vigilance; and doubly so if things are hectic and confused, as when coaling.

Fully aware of the risks of sabotage, Captain Sigsbee has explicitly ordered his trimmers to "watch for any packages" [sub-thread continues at 25th January 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = USS MAINE FALSE FLAG CONSPIRACY]


1898 [25th January] The Cuban War of Independence [XXVII - USS Maine Makes Friends]: [Continued from 12th January 1898] President McKinley now orders the Maine to visit Havana "as a mark of friendship", while he gathers a back-up squadron under Admiral Montgomery Sicard [Wikipedia biography] in the Dry Tortugas anchorage 60 miles west of Key West.

ASIDE: Secretary of State William Day [check him out] had met with Ambassador De Lôme twice on 24th January, so that arrangements could be made to receive the ship. Karp (1979) explains just how edgy this courtesy visit actually was: Secretary of the Navy John Long [check him out] worried it would bring about "some crisis or riot", Consul-General Lee...
anticipated "a demonstration", and - in a rare show of unanimity - the press worldwide saw the whole thing as political intervention and duly predicted violence.

Maine enters Havana harbour at 0900hr, with her crew at battle-stations (albeit discretely so). She is guided in by Spanish pilot (with intelligence credentials) Julian Garcia Lopez [no convenient biography], passing without incident under the guns of Fort Morro and the other headland defences, and over the defensive minefield. Lopez next directs her to tie up in the inner harbour at Buoy #4, the deepest (at 36 feet) of the anchorages available, next to SMS Gneisenau, already on visit.

**ASIDE - HARBOUR MINEFIELDS IN THE 1890s:** It has been textbook practice to lay defensive minefields in one's own harbours since Alfred Nobel developed the "detonating horn" in 1853 [check it out]. The C.S. Navy become quite skilled with them during the Civil War, and the U.S. Navy officially adopted the technology in 1865. Contact mines are not recommended for this purpose because they are too indiscriminate. Far better to lay electrically detonated mines and wire them back to a forward observation post, which in Havana's case was reportedly on the foreshore below Fort Morro. There were a number of commercially competing systems available by the 1890s, and treatises had been written concerning their best use. Latimer Clark, Muirhead and Company were marketing "torpedoes and electrical apparatus for submarine coast defences" at least as early as 1875, and a "Latimer Clark Torpedo" is occasionally mentioned as a candidate for the Maine sinking. So too are the "Gibbins No. 2" and the Brennan Torpedo [Wikipedia briefing].

**CONSPIRACY TROPES:** Without a doubt, therefore, Buoy #4 could have been pre-laid with an electrically triggered underwater mine, and without a doubt Lopez could not have done his job as pilot without an intimate knowledge of the harbour's underwater defences. And in the lexicon of Conspiracy Theory, any <stand right here if you don’t mind> narrative has to be seen as highly suspicious ...

**ASIDE:** Over the years, conspiracy-minded authors have pointed to suspicious irregularities in some very high profile assassinations. For example, many JFK theorists have argued that the right turn onto Houston Street was inserted into the Motorcade route specifically to slow the President down in front of his waiting assassins. The same with Archduke Franz Ferdinand in Sarajevo in 1914 where the Imperial car "takes a wrong turn" ha ha and has to stop right in front of the waiting gunman. And the same again with RMS Lusitania in 1915 which had been told to slow down in a known U-Boat area - check it out. Just saying: less sinister interpretations are available.

Once Maine has been secured the pilot is dropped, and the first person ashore is the ship's Intelligence Officer Lieutenant Jenkins [check him out], whose first priority is speak to local agents who will have had the harbour under close observation for many days. He reports back to Captain Sigsbee that the intelligence consensus is that there are no mines. Nevertheless, Sigsbee allows no shore leave, mounts extra guards, and again explicitly instructs that all deliveries and visitors should be carefully searched. He also has watertight doors shut and keeps two boilers alight instead of the normal one, so that he will have power for the 10" turrets should he need it [sub-thread continues at 28th January 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = USS MAINE FALSE FLAG CONSPIRACY]

1898 [28th January] The Cuban War of Independence [XXVIII - Break out the Champagne]: [Continued from 25th January 1898] In the days after her berthing, Maine's officers engage in the usual diplomatic courtesies. Captain-General Blanco is presently off-island, and so Captain Sigsbee pays his compliments to the newly appointed head of the Autonomous Government, Secretary Congosto. Sigsbee also hosts a champagne reception for the officers on neighbouring Spanish ships. An offer of seats at a local bullfight are however politely declined. All is then quiet until 11th February when concerns are raised that Integrista pamphlets are doing the rounds in town bearing the
text "Look out for your ship". Lieutenant Jenkins, meanwhile, is busily sketching Havana’s forts and gun emplacements for the Office of Naval Intelligence [sub-thread continues at 8th February 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = USS MAINE FALSE FLAG CONSPIRACY]

1898 [8th-9th February] The Cuban War of Independence [XXIX - The De Lôme Letter]: [Continued from 28th January 1898] A private letter [full text online at https://en.wikisource.org/wiki/Dupuy_de_Lôme_Letter] from Ambassador De Lôme to his Foreign Minister in Madrid is somehow intercepted by agents of the Cuban Junta, and duly appears 9th February on the front page of the New York Journal under the banner headline "The Worst Insult to the United States in its History". The offensive phrase in what otherwise appears to us to be a perfectly anodyne analysis of the political situation at the time concerns President McKinley, describing him as "weak, and a bidder for the admiration of the crowd" and overly concerned with "keeping on good terms with the jingoes of his party". After 21 years in politics we doubt he personally would have taken much offence. What ought to have concerned people, on the other hand, is the fact that diplomatic communications between the Spanish Embassy and the newsroom of the wholly jingoistic Journal were more secure than the diplomatic bag to Madrid [end of The Cuban War of Independence sub-thread; the central narrative now continues as The Spanish-American War at 15th February 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [8th February-1st July 1944] Guatemala, 1898-2018 [I - Good Dictator, Bad Dictator Years, 1898-1944]: [New sub-thread] Manuel Estrada [check him out] was first elected 8th February 1898 and carefully managed his re-elections in 1904, 1910, and 1916. He was finally deposed as mentally incapable 30th March 1920, and died in 1924, aged 66 years. Acting President[1920-1921] Carlos Herrera [Wikipedia biography] then holds the fort under the watchful eyes of small shore parties from USS Tacoma [Wikipedia shipography] and USS Niagara [Wikipedia shipography], until himself couped 10th December 1921 by President[1921-1926] José Orellana [Wikipedia biography] who died of a suspiciously convenient heart attack 26th September 1926 having made enemies of the nation's entire workforce by violent strike breaking whenever the United Fruit Company (UFCO) or the railway companies were threatened.

RECOMMENDED READING: Note the pattern: put the people first and you will be popular, but not for long. Put the exploiters first and you will be well looked after until the workers' activists get on your case. For a thorough academic analysis of the dynamics of Central American presidencies in Guatemala and its neighbours we recommend a dissertation by Bucheli (2006 [full text online]) entitled "Good Dictator, Bad Dictator: United Fruit Company and Economic Nationalism in Central America in the Twentieth Century".

Orellana is followed by President[1926-1931] Lázaro Chacón [Wikipedia biography] concerning whom we have nothing to report. And then finally (as if the Guatemalan people had not already suffered enough), Chacón is followed by President[1931-1944] Jorge Ubico [check him out], "one of the most oppressive tyrants Guatemala has ever known", who is another to dance to UFCO's tune and turn a blind eye to their harsh labour practices [sub-thread continues at 1st July 1944 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

***** POTENTIAL FALSE FLAG CASUS BELLI*****

1898 [15th February] The Spanish-American War [I - The USS Maine Incident]: [New sub-thread, but in fact a continuation of The Cuban War of Independence narrative from 8th February 1898] While at anchor in Havana Harbour protecting U.S. interests during the Cuban War of Independence [see 10th October 1897], the armoured cruiser USS Maine [check her out] suffers a magazine explosion and sinks with the loss of two thirds of her crew. The explosions, one dull
and deep followed by another, quite volcanic, a second or so later, occur at 2145hr when the crew has already turned in. With her bow blown near clean off, the Maine settles in moments onto the shallow harbour bed, leaving much of her superstructure above the water and on fire. All but two of her officers are high in the ship and to the rear, and survive. Lieutenant Jenkins is one of the unlucky ones, apparently surviving the initial blast but being unable to escape the rapidly filling hull.

**ASIDE - MINE ATTACKS ON BATTLESHIPS**: Over the years a number of mine attacks have been dramatically reconstructed for the cinema. Check out ...  

- HMS/Valiant (Italian frogmen, 19th December 1941)  
- DKM Tirpitz (British miniature submarines, 22nd September 1943)

**ASIDE - MAGAZINE EXPLOSIONS IN BATTLESHIPS**: Over the years simulations or newsreel cameras have captured a number of magazine explosions. Check out ...

- [Simulation at 42mins] USS Maine (Unknown perpetrator, 15th February 1898)  
- HMS Barham (Italian submarine 25th November 1941)  
- USS Arizona (Japanese air attack 7th December 1941)  
- USS Iowa (No. 2 turret accident, 19th April 1989)

Captain Sigsbee's initial report reaches Washington by telegraph before midnight, and the back-up fleet in the Tortugas is alerted by fast cutter.

**THE MAINE AS A FALSE FLAG ATTACK**: A "false flag" attack is “a covert operation designed to deceive [by creating] the appearance of a particular party, group, or nation being responsible for some activity, disguising the actual source of responsibility” (Wikipedia, 2018). In the context of the Cuban War of Independence there are a number of distinct suspects. Firstly there is MADRID - the capital city of the Spanish Empire, and presently the rightful sovereign possessors of the island. Then there are the INTEGRISTAS (the right-wing Cuban Spanish), the REBELS (the nationalist Cubans), and the U.S. EXPANSIONISTS.

So whodunnit? Here are five potential explanations to choose from, the last TWO of which would count as False Flag Attacks. Check them out ...

1. IT WAS AN ACCIDENT (bunker fire to magazine, bunker explosion to magazine)  
2. IT WAS AN ACT OF WAR MADRID vs. THE UNITED STATES  
3. IT WAS A TERRORIST ATTACK INTEGRISTAS vs. THE UNITED STATES  
4. IT WAS A FALSE FLAG ATTACK REBELS vs. THE UNITED STATES BUT BLAMING MADRID  
5. IT WAS A FALSE FLAG ATTACK U.S. EXPANSIONISTS vs. THE UNITED STATES BUT BLAMING INTEGRISTAS AS AGENTS OF MADRID

Of these five, we can eliminate (2) straight away because under the Spanish code of honour Madrid would have claimed it proudly, and they did not. We can also double count (3) because harbour pilot Lopez [see 25th January 1898] was an Integrista. Moreover, the Weylerite Integristas already had a reputation for using booby traps - their Trocha had been festooned with them. We can also double count (4) because the rebels had previously dynamited trains, and were well supplied by explosives by one "Dynamite Johnny" O’Brien (Samuels and Samuels, 1995), a larger-than-life character of whom more later.

Sensing the likely box-office appeal of this particular sinking, Méliès [1897 (18th April)<>1st May] quickly produces cinematic re-enactments such as "Explosion du Cuirassé Le Maine" [= "Explosion on the Cruiser Maine"; footage lost], "Visite de l'Epave du Maine" [= "A Visit to the Wreck of the Maine"; footage lost], and (reportedly the maestro’s favourite) "Visite Sous-Marine
1898 [17th-21st February] The Spanish-American War [II - The Blame Game]: [Continued from 15th February 1898] The "yellow" [= Jingoistic] press are by now - needless to say - rolling in their own filth. They blame Madrid and need no Board of Inquiry to prove their case. Evidence is whatever their friends in the Cuban Junta care to conjure up. William Randolph Hearst’s New York Journal and Joseph Pulitzer's World are daily proclaiming Spanish guilt. The government, however, moves more cautiously and on 21st February President McKinley sets up a Board of Inquiry under Captain William T. Sampson [Wikipedia biography] to look into the incident [sub-thread continues at 25th February 1898] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = USS MAINE FALSE FLAG CONSPIRACY]

1898 [25th February] The Spanish-American War [III - Asiatic Squadron Warned for Action]: [Continued from 17th February 1898] Assistant Secretary of the Navy Theodore Roosevelt telegraphs Commodore George Dewey at his Hong Kong anchorage to make ready for sea and await further orders. Dewey, it will be recalled, is fully aware of the blockade-Cuba-invade-Manila war strategy, having helped put it together in 1897 [see 3rd January 1898] [sub-thread continues at 9th March 1898] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [3rd March] The Switch from Coal to Oil [VI - Early Recommendations (UK)]: [Continued from 1st July 1896] The destroyer HMS Surly [Wikipedia shipography] begins trialling the Admiralty’s latest oil-fired boiler system. Results are far from impressive due to incomplete combustion of the fuel and the consequent production of dense black smoke. Designers are sent back to their drawing boards while the Admirals watch and wait [sub-thread continues at 1st April 1901 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]


1898 [17th March] The Spanish-American War [V - Proctor's Evidence]: [Continued from 9th March 1898] Having only recently returned from a fact-finding visit to Cuba, Senator Redfield Proctor [check him out] passes on his observations in a speech to the Senate [full transcript online]. Here is an indicative extract ...

"With large families or with more than one in this little space, the commonest sanitary provisions are impossible. Conditions are unmentionable in this respect. Torn from their homes, with foul earth, foul air, foul water and foul food, or none, what wonder that one-half have died and that one-quarter of the living are so diseased that they cannot be saved. A form of dropsy is a common disorder resulting from these conditions. Little children are still walking about with arms and chests terribly emaciated, eyes swollen and abdomen bloated to three times the natural size. The physicians say these cases are hopeless."

Proctor's testimony persuades the Navy Chiefs to transfer the battleship USS Oregon [Wikipedia shipography] from the Pacific station round to the Atlantic, a voyage of some 14,000 miles around Cape Horn [sub-thread continues at 21st March 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [21st March] The Spanish-American War [VI - Inquiry Conclusions]: [Continued from 17th March] After four weeks' deliberation the Sampson Inquiry Board finally concludes that the Maine was destroyed by an underwater mine, perpetrators unknown, and not
by an internal explosion. The key observations are that ammunition was properly stored, magazines were locked and the keys accounted for, coal bunkers had been regularly inspected, only the two sternmost boilers were alight, and ambient temperature alone could not have been responsible because the warmest magazine (the stern 10" magazine) did not explode. Board member George W. Melville, the Navy's Chief Engineer [check him out] is, however, far from convinced that it was not spontaneous combustion. Its investigations complete, the panel passes a draft of its report to the White House [sub-thread continues at 28th March 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = USS MAINE FALSE FLAG CONSPIRACY]
with a toggle-action [see YouTube video and slow-motion] breech and an eight-round spring-loaded magazine in the handle. [THREAD = WW1 SMALL ARMS]

1898 [9th April] The Spanish-American War [IX - Ceasefire]: [Continued from 29th March 1898] Madrid orders Captain-General Blanco to declare a ceasefire in Cuba. Consul-General Lee and many other American citizens are evacuated from Havana by sea [sub-thread continues at 11th April 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [11th April] The Spanish-American War [X - McKinley Lies to Congress]: [Continued from 9th April 1898] President McKinley makes a war speech to Congress, declaring that he has exhausted all diplomatic means to secure peace, and calling for "the forcible intervention of the United States as a neutral to stop the war [...] and to use the military and naval forces of the United States as may be necessary for these purposes" (Karp, 1979, p93). He had not, he led Congress to believe, heard the detail of the Spanish ceasefire [sub-thread continues at 19th April 1898 ...] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [17th April] The French General Staff adopt "Plan XIV" [Wikipedia factsheet], a strategy document on how best to conduct a war against Germany. [THREAD = WW1 GRAND STRATEGIES]

1898 [19th-21st April] The Spanish-American War [XI - Joint Resolution]: [Continued from 11th April 1898] In reply to President McKinley's war message of 11th April, Congress judges that the United States may assist Cuban dissidents gain independence from Spain, but must then withdraw its forces. The Ultimatum is duly signed off and forwarded to the Spanish Ambassador. On 21st April the Spanish break off diplomatic relations [sub-thread continues at 22nd April 1898 ...] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [22nd-23rd April] The Spanish-American War [XII - Blockade]: [Continued from 19th April 1898] Taking authority from the Joint Resolution on 21st April, President McKinley issues a Proclamation [see transcript] of a naval blockade of Cuba, and almost immediately the gunboat USS Nashville [Wikipedia shipography] intercepts and seizes the Buena Ventura, carrying lumber. Spain responds with a declaration of war. McKinley counters with another Proclamation [see transcript] the following day, this time calling for 125,000 volunteers for an expeditionary force [sub-thread continues at 25th April 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [25th April-12th August] The Spanish-American War [XIII - Shooting War]: [Continued from 22nd April 1898] President McKinley informs Congress that a state of war has existed between the United States and Spain since 22nd April. After a brief but brisk ship-to-ship engagement 25th April off Cádiz, the main events of the ensuing war are ...

The Battle of Manila Bay [=30th April]; The Landings at Guantánamo Bay [=6th June]; The Battles of El Caney and Las Guasimas [=22nd June]; The Battle of San Juan Heights [=1st July]; The Battle of Santiago Bay [=3rd July]; The Siege of Santiago [=1st July]; The Battle of Manila City [= 14th August]; The Treaty of Paris [=10th December]

The overall outcome is a U.S./Cuban Rebel victory and some extremely profitable war gains at Madrid's expense [see 10th December 1898]. The war is noteworthy in the present context (a) for the Americans deliberately targeting their intelligence operatives on the Western Union telegraph office in Havana, so as to monitor communications between local commanders and their commanders-in-chief in Madrid, (b) for being the first in a (still ongoing) series of U.S. interventions outside its own borders, and (c) for the systematic manipulation of American public opinion toward war by certain of their press barons. On 25th April Commodore Dewey is ordered onto a war footing at his
anchorage at Hong Kong, destination Manila. That same day Assistant Secretary of the Navy Theodore Roosevelt tenders his resignation and puts out feelers for a commission in a fighting unit (Thomas, 2010). Dewey’s fleet sets sail 27th April [sub-thread continues at 30th April 1898 ...] [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND COMMUNICATIONS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


********** JINGOISM GOES TO SCREEN **********
********** JINGOISM GOES TO SCREEN **********
********** JINGOISM GOES TO SCREEN **********
********** JINGOISM GOES TO SCREEN **********

1898 [25th April] Seeing is Believing [LVI - The Cinema at War ("Tearing Down the Spanish Flag")]: [Continued from 1st January, but within the context of the preceding entry] On the day the U.S. declares war on Spain the Vitagraph Company [1st January<=>3rd July] starts production of what will end up as 90-second reel entitled "Tearing Down the Spanish Flag" [Wikipedia factsheet; footage lost but for the general effect see this 1899 remake courtesy of the U.S. Library of Congress]. Working in a makeshift studio in a Brooklyn office block Blackton [1st January<=>3rd July] simply points his camera at a flagpole bearing a Spanish flag, sets his camera rolling, and then films that flag being taken down and replaced by the Stars and Stripes. The reel is an instant box-office triumph. Another enterprising producer, Amet [1897 (4th March)<=>3rd July], is inspired by the U.S. Navy’s shelling of Spanish shore installations between 27th April and 1st May to construct an 18-by-24 feet water stage at his home in Waukegan, Illinois, on which to re-create the spectacle. Here are some of the secrets of the resulting "Bombardment of Matanzas" [IMDB entry; footage lost but see Dash (op. cit. [=1897 (18th April)]) for an indicative surviving still] ...

"In miniature [Amet] ... constructed the Bay of Santiago in a tub, with all the ships participating in the action, working them up with a great fineness of detail and equipping them with guns, all to fit exactly with the pictures and descriptions in the periodicals. The models were proportioned to the lens angle to create perspective with great accuracy. Electrically controlled devices supplied waves, and push buttons controlled the guns and ship movements" (Fielding, 1972, p40).

Amet also produces a reel entitled "The Dynamite Cruiser Vesuvius" [IMDB entry; footage lost], featuring the operations of the "dynamite ship" USS Vesuvius [Wikipedia shipography] against shore installations (and when, after one particular viewing, it is pointed out that this vessel only ever operated at night he will reply with a grin that "we used moon-light film" (Bottomore, 2007 op. cit.) [sub-thread continues at 15th May ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] Fielding, R. (1972). The American Newsreel, 1911-1967. Norman, OK: University of Oklahoma Press.

1ASIDE/RESEARCH ISSUE: This being the date of the declaration of war, no American had yet got anywhere near a Spanish flag, of course. The work must therefore be treated as depicting a symbolic desire rather than an actual past event. It is a celebration of righteous war. Whissel (2002) reminds us that circus shows of the 1890s regularly included battle reenactments, thus ...

"Rather than deceiving audiences, reenacted actualities were situated within a broader culture of similar popular entertainments, including panoramas, wax museums, and live reenactments, which viewers were already familiar with and from which the films' conventions were borrowed. [...] Like its predecessors, the films sought not to fool viewers but rather to impress them with the effectiveness of the illusion" (Jasen, 2011)
A later historian will add ...

"[Tearing Down the Spanish Flag was] the very first moving picture that was a picture play and that told a story in the fluid continuity of pictured pantomime ... it was an unprecedented reliance upon the intelligent ability of audiences to understand the significance of picture pantomime ... the first step toward the realisation that a new art was in hand" (Bottomore, 2007 op. cit., VI, p4).

ASIDE: Vesuvius was a strange but interesting design. Classed as a monitor [definition at 1861 (25th October)] she fired 15” fin-stabilised high-brisance (a nitrocellulose-nitroglycerine mix) rounds from three fixed launching tubes sunk into the foredeck (so you had to range and traverse the entire ship before firing). Moreover, in order to avoid premature detonation these shells were fired by compressed air, so that there was no distant boom to allow those on the receiving end to take cover.

1898 [30th April] German Naval Expansion [V - The German Navy League]: [Continued from 26th March] Alfred von Tirpitz [26th March<=>1900 (20th June)] sets up the Deutscher Flottenverein [= "German Navy League"] [Wikipedia factsheet] to help popularise the notion that Germany's international standing is a function of the size of its navy [continues at 1899 (13th March) ...]. [THREAD = THE WWI SURFACE NAVIES]

ASIDE: One of the League's accidental first steps is to create a market in glossy postcards of ships and sailors - see specimen.

1898 [30th April-1st May] The Spanish-American War [XIV - The Battle of Manila Bay]: [Continued from 25th April 1898] Commodore Dewey's Asiatic Squadron arrives at the entrance to Manila Bay on 30th April, makes its final preparations for battle, and just after midnight 1st May moves in through the minefields toward Patricio Montojo's [Wikipedia biography] Manila squadron. Montojo has his ships at anchor across a side bay under the protection of forts and shore batteries, and the first shots are fired around dawn. But Dewey's heavier guns significantly outrange Montojo's and so he simply makes pass after pass, picking off the Spanish ships one by one until Montojo finally strikes his colours just after noon. It is a total victory for America's largely new-built ships against Spain obsolete ones, and it is particularly noteworthy in the present context because Méliès [15th February<=>1899 (November)] - who has, it will be recalled, already made three reels concerning the sinking of the USS Maine - now adds a fourth entitled "Combat Naval devant Manille" [= "Defending the Fort at Manila"; IMDB entry; footage lost] [sub-thread continues at 1st May 1898 ...] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


1898 [1st May] The Spanish-American War [XV - Good Insurgents]: [Continued from 30th April 1898] In the vacuum left by the withdrawing government forces, Gmo García makes his brigade headquarters in the strategically well-positioned town of Bayamo [Google maps]. Here he is joined by forward operating U.S. Army intelligence officer Lieutenant Andrew Summers Rowan [Wikipedia biography], enabling the Americans and the Rebels to work together [sub-thread continues at 2nd May 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** RADIO CONTROL IS BORN **********

1898 [2nd May or hereabouts] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XXII - Tesla's Teleautomaton]: [Continued from 1897 (27th August)] Nikola Tesla [1897 (19th July)<=>20th September] demonstrates a radio-controlled model boat - the Teleautomaton - before a
public gathering in Madison Square Gardens, New York City. It gets a mixed reception (potentially do subsequent attempts to sell radio-controlled torpedoes to the U.S. Navy (see 20th September ...].)

[THREAD = WWI SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1898 [2nd-6th May] The Spanish-American War [XVI - The Volunteer Army Prepares]:
[Continued from 1st May 1898] President McKinley orders General Wesley Merritt [Wikipedia biography] to draw up plans for an expeditionary force to put down in the Philippines to follow up Commodore Dewey's success in the Battle of Manila Bay. On the same day ex-Assistant Secretary of the Navy Theodore Roosevelt has himself measured for a cavalry officer's uniform (Thomas, 2010), for he and Merritt have an empire to build. Roosevelt's commission, as Lieutenant-Colonel in the 1st Volunteer Cavalry [see below], is approved 6th May [sub-thread continues at 16th May 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

CAMEO - THE ROUGH RIDERS: Among the volunteer units created for the duration of the war was the 1st Volunteer Cavalry [Wikipedia factsheet] - the famous "Rough Riders" - under Colonel Leonard Wood [check him out] and future 26th President of the United States Theodore Roosevelt. See them on (probably carefully "arranged") manoeuvres on this (1898?) Mutoscope Company [15th May=>3rd July] reel - click here.


¹ASIDE: The Kinetoscope Company had in fact suffered a double-whammy market collapse toward the end of 1895, because not only had projected movie systems rendered their peep shows old hat but even that marketplace was losing customers to the Mutoscope Company [1894 (21st November)]=>22nd June.

1898 [16th May] The Spanish-American War [XVII - Bad Insurgents]: [Continued from 2nd May 1898] Having defeated Spain's Manila squadron, Commodore Dewey has to do some quick thinking. There is a large Spanish infantry presence in Manila City and elsewhere on the island of Luzon, where - just as in Cuba - they have been suppressing an insurgency. The leader of the rebels until only six months ago, Emilio Aguinaldo [check him out], is presently in exile in Hong Kong. Dewey therefore decides to fetch him back, reunite him with his guerrillas, and have him engage the Spanish land forces while he and his fleet blockade Manila from the sea. This will shortly be exposed as a very bad idea! [see 22nd June 1898]. Meanwhile, on the East coast, banker J. P. Morgan is allowing his yacht Corsair to be temporarily commissioned into the U.S.Navy as USS Gloucester [Wikipedia shipography], with Richard Wainwright - fresh from micromanaging diving operations on the wreck of the Maine - commanding [sub-thread continues at 24th May 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [24th May] The Spanish-American War [XVIII - Aguinaldo Sees his Chance]: [Continued from 16th May 1898] Philippine Guerrilla leader Emilio Aguinaldo arrives in Manila Bay and is set ashore to rebuild his power base. The first thing he does is to proclaim a provisional government of one - him. Then as his forces start to gather to
him he lays siege to Manila City [sub-thread continues at 25th May 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [25th-29th May] **The Spanish-American War [XIX - En Route]:** [Continued from 24th May 1898] Colonel Roosevelt and the 1st Volunteer Cavalry are mustered at San Antonio, Texas, and on 29th May are entrained for the invasion assembly area around Tampa. Administratively all is FUBAR [sub-thread continues at 4th June 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [27th May] The American management consultant Frederick W. Taylor [Wikipedia biography] begins a period on site at the Bethlehem Steel Company [<=1893 (1st May)] in an attempt to improve productivity. In so doing he applies a set of principles which will later become famous as "scientific management" [Wikipedia factsheet]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

****** AN UNWELCOME SECOND OPINION ******

1898 [27th May] **Later Maine Investigations [I - The Bucknill Thesis]:** [New sub-thread] The world’s most experienced mine warfare expert, a Royal Engineer Lt.-Colonel named John T. Bucknill [no convenient biography], publishes the first in a series of academic papers directly challenging the conclusions of the Sampson Inquiry [see 21st March 1898]. Bucknill has been conducting practical experiments with underwater charges against decommissioned warships for nearly 40 years, is the author of the 1889 monograph "Submarine Mines and Torpedoes as Applied to Harbour Defence" (Bucknill, 1889 [full text online]), the textbook work on the subject, has first-hand experience of being aboard a target ship attacked in this way, and has also studied the effects of external explosions on double-hulled vessels. Based on a re-analysis of the testimony and photographic evidence from the American inquiry, Bucknill’s conclusion is that the explosion in the Maine was initiated internally, not externally by submarine mine [Sub-thread continues at 10th October 1910 ...] [THREAD = USS MAINE FALSE FLAG CONSPIRACY]

1898 [1st June, say] **American Naval Expansion [IX - Mahan on Panama]:** [Continued from 1st June 1897] In this his latest essay Alfred Mahan turns his attention to "the Isthmus", the narrow strip of land between North and South America, where there had been a long-standing interest in constructing an "interoceanic" canal to join the Atlantic to the Pacific. A canal at Panama - presently a province of Colombia - has been talked about for a long time, he says, but recent economic growth now makes the need for it "too evident for insistence". The question then becomes one of how to defend it when it runs through somebody else's country [sub-thread continues at 13th March 1900 ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

**ASIDE:** Click here to learn about the creation of a politically controllable Panama five years later, and the subsequent building of the Panama Canal.

1898 [4th-21st June] **The Spanish-American War [XX - Puerto Rico/Philippines/Guam]:** [Continued from 25th May 1898] On 4th June President McKinley asks his most senior general, Nelson A. Miles [Wikipedia biography], hero of the 1894 Pullman Strikes, to assemble a seaborne occupation force at Tampa, destination Puerto Rico. On 12th June Emilio Aguinaldo declares his insurgents an independent Philippine republic. And elsewhere in the Pacific USS Charleston [Wikipedia shipography] is sent to occupy the Spanish island of Guam, which she does with not a lot of fuss on 20th-21st June [sub-thread continues at 6th June 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [6th-10th June] **The Spanish-American War [XXI - The Landings at Guantánomo Bay]:** [Continued from 4th June 1898] On 6th June the Americans commit a three-ship cruiser
squadron led by USS Marblehead [Wikipedia shipography] under Bowman H. McCalla [Wikipedia biography] to cut the submarine telegraph cables out of Guantánomo and neutralise the Spanish shore defences in preparation for an amphibious landing. An assault force of U.S. Marines and Cuban Republicans then completes the invasion on 10th June and - facilitated by Gmo García’s rebel brigade - establishes a bridgehead perimeter from which to threaten Santiago de Cuba, the island’s heavily defended second city, some thirty miles to the west. By the end of the month, V Corps will have landed some 16,000 men [sub-thread continues at 22nd June ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898  [22nd June] The Spanish-American War [XXII - Philippines Declared Independent]: [Continued from 6th June 1898] With his rebel army now numbering some 14,000 men, Emilio Alguinaldo now proclaims independence from Spain and sets up a Revolutionary Congress with himself as President of that Congress [sub-thread continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898  [22nd June] The Spanish-American War [XXIII - The Battles of El Caney and Las Guasimas]: [Continued from preceding entry] These battles are fought between the American/Cuban Expeditionary Force under William R. Shafter [Wikipedia biography] 1st July advancing out of Guantánomo Bay and Spanish outposts in villages and strongpoints in the San Juan Hills [the modern Parque Nacional de Baconao]. Gmo García’s rebel brigade assists by securing the Daiquiri Heights, only to be shelled by the Americans in error for their pains. Despite well-organised resistance the attackers make slow but sure progress toward Santiago [sub-thread continues at 24th June 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898  [24th June] The Spanish-American War [XXIV - Dewey Scolded]: [Continued from 22nd June 1898] Having just learned of Admiral Dewey’s assistance to Emilio Aguinaldo and his Philippine independence fighters, President McKinley sends him a telegram of correction to the effect that Aguinaldo is absolutely NOT to be treated as an ally, for that would give him privileges and expectations beyond. But the damage has already been done, for Aguinaldo is already reassembling his liberation army to fight the Spanish occupation. But should the United States take Spain’s place, then - so be it - he is happy to fight them instead [sub-thread continues at 1st July 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898  [1st July] The Spanish-American War [XXV - The Battle of San Juan Heights: [Continued from 24th June] This battle is fought near Santiago, Cuba, between General Shafter’s [<=22nd June] U.S./Cuban Rebel corps and the Spanish Imperial garrison at Santiago under Arsenio Linares y Pombo [Wikipedia biography]. The outcome is a U.S./Cuban Rebel victory. The battle is noteworthy in the present context (a) for being the occasion of Colonel Roosevelt’s leading 1 his 1st Volunteer Cavalry (most of the "Riders" actually being on foot) in a final assault on the Spanish defence works atop Kettle Hill, and (b) for John J. ("Black Jack") Pershing [1886 (30th September)<=1916 (14th March)] doing much the same with the buffalo soldiers of the 10th U.S. Cavalry Regiment [1877 (3rd July)<=1913]. The key to the victory seems to have been the volume of covering fire provided by three supporting Gatling guns (700 rounds per minute for eight minutes) [sub-thread continues at 3rd July ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

  1The First's original Commanding Officer, Colonel Leonard Wood [check him out], was promoted to Brigadier just before the battle, so Roosevelt now commands that regiment.

1898  [3rd July] The Spanish-American War [XXVI - The Battle of Santiago Bay]: [Continued from 1st July] This day-long naval battle is fought between a Spanish cruiser squadron under Pascual Cervera [Wikipedia biography] and a blockading American
battleship squadron under (nominally, but not present on the day) William T. Sampson [check him out] and (senior officer present) Winfield S. Schley [Wikipedia biography]. The Spanish are attempting to break out to the open sea, and are well aware that their strongest units - the armoured cruisers Infanta Maria Teresa [Wikipedia shipography] and Vizcaya [Wikipedia shipography] - are going to have to do a diversionary "Death Ride" [c.f. 1916 (31st May)] while the four other ships attempt to scatter. In the event all six Spanish ships are either sunk outright or run aground. Richard Wainwright’s USS Gloucester distinguishes itself by taking on and sinking two Spanish torpedo boat destroyers, the Furor [Wikipedia shipography] and the Plutón [Wikipedia shipography] both of which outgunned him [sub-thread continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [3rd-17th July] The Spanish-American War [XXVII - The Siege of Santiago and the Spanish surrender]: [Continued from preceding entry] Now cut off from Havana by land and sea, the garrison at Santiago has little choice but to hold out as long as it can and trust in diplomacy. In the event it endures a fortnight-long siege before the entire island surrenders, whereupon Vitagraph Studios [=preceding entry] seizes the spirit of the moment by simulating the raising of the Stars and Stripes above Morro Castle, Havana, in "Raising Old Glory". The contribution of G™u Garcia’s rebels to the victory is not deemed sufficient to allow him into the city to witness the surrender after 30 years' helping to bring it about [Library of Congress it now] [sub-thread continues at 25th July 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [3rd July] Seeing is Believing [LVIII - The Cinema at War ["The Battle of Santiago Bay"]]: [Continued from 15th May] Not surprisingly the destruction of the Spanish fleet gets the nascent film industry rushing for its cameras. Smith and Blackton at the Vitagraph Company [25th April<=next entry] get their "fleet" together by gluing cut-out stills photographs to wooden bases which are then floated on a small water stage to produce "The Battle of Santiago Bay" [IMDB entry], whilst Amet [25th April<=1900 (14th July)] uses his larger tank [ditto] to produce "Spanish Fleet Destroyed" [IMDB entry]. Both are such commercial successes that Blackton [25th April<=1915 (14th September)] will later recall ...

"It was suddenly apparent that these little squares of film possessed the power to arouse public feeling to a tremendous pitch of patriotic and emotional fervour. The motion picture was no longer a pleasing novelty. Intelligently directed, it possessed hitherto undiscovered potential forces. Its latent drama could stir human emotions to their depths. It was capable of moulding and influencing the minds of people to a degree and to an extent impossible to predict, but even then dimly discernible. To thinking minds it began to loom large as an overwhelming power for good and evil" (Bottomore, 2007 op. cit.).

A 27-second drive-by of the wreck of the Vizcaya [<=preceding entry] by a Mutoscope Company [22nd June<=1905 (3rd July)] location team is filmed on 4th July and then distributed under the title "Wreck of the Vizcaya" [YouTube it now courtesy of the U.S. Library of Congress]. It shows the actual (and by then abandoned) ship and is a paradigm-setting piece of matter-of-fact documentary honesty. The Edison Company [1896 (May)<=1900 (17th May)] then go one better still with a far more ambitious 18-minute reel entitled "The Spanish-American War" [YouTube it now], a stringing together of lesser reels of ships at anchor and under way, rear-echelon events such as river crossings and a firing squad, and the eventual victory parade, which with a bit of pruning and some interpolated interviews could go out today as a competent History Channel documentary [sub-thread continues at 1899 (30th May) ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1ASIDE: This phrase from Hans-Jürgen Syberberg's [Wikipedia biography] 1977 movie "Hitler: A Film from Germany" [Wikipedia factsheet].
ASIDE: The present author grew up with reruns of NBC's 1952-1953 TV series "Victory at Sea" [IMDB entry]. We mention this because the similarities between that documentary series and the 1898 Edison reel are compelling. You have only to watch the first 10 minutes of NBC's 26 half-hour episodes [YouTube the first 10 minutes] to realise that you are listening primarily to the verbal narrative, with the visuals thrown in for good measure; and yet if you run the whole thing again with the volume turned down the item still makes reasonable sense! Or to put it another way, the human mind seems perfectly capable of creating its own explanatory narrative should one not be provided. And to cut a long story short, students of war and peace need to look in some detail at this capability, for it promises to explain much ...

RESEARCH ISSUE: Unfortunately the ability of the mind to extract a unifying story from a succession of inputs - be they spoken, visual, or mixed - is far from adequately explained. Some cognitive scientists have studied the nature of a story's "gist" ...

CAMEO - GIST THEORY (VERBAL MATERIAL): The defining work here was carried out between 1920 and 1932 by the Cambridge cognitive scientist [Sir] Frederic C. Bartlett [Wikipedia biography]. Bartlett presented subjects with one or two pages of detailed extracts from novels, and then examined what those subjects could recall after varying periods of time. Typically there remained only a more or less sketchy and more or less inaccurate "gist" version of the original, garbled, much shortened, and full of errors and confusions. For the fuller story see the Companion Resource, and study the 1920 and 1932 entries for <Bartlett>.

CAMEO - GIST THEORY (VISUAL MATERIAL, POLITICAL CARICATURE): To begin with, see the political cartoons of James Gillray [start at 1792 (20th April [ASIDE]) and follow the onward pointers].

CAMEO - GIST THEORY (VISUAL MATERIAL, THEMATIC APPERCEPTION): The defining work on the extraction of meaning from (deliberately ambiguous) line drawings was a 1935 paper entitled "A Method for Investigating Fantasies" by the Harvard University psychologists Christiana Morgan and Henry Murray, for details of which see the Companion Resource.

CAMEO - GIST THEORY (VISUAL MATERIAL, STATE OF THE ART): The defining work here began recently and is still ongoing. The lead author is Paul Locher [no convenient biography], the seminal paper is Locher, Krupinski, Mello-Thoms, and Nodine (2008), and the general thesis is that viewing a depictive image takes place in two distinct stages, the first a rapid holistic appraisal of the picture's "gist", and the second a slower and more exhaustive serial scanning of its detailed content. The gist processing was confirmed by exposing paintings for a mere 100 milliseconds and was enough to support a reasonably accurate estimate of what the painting was of or about. The serial scanning was confirmed using data from an eye tracking system alongside verbal report. For the fuller story see the Companion Resource, and browse outwards from the entries for <Locher>.

Other theorists follow seminal papers by Minsky (1975) on cognitive "frames", Rumelhart (1976) on "schemata", Schank and Abelson (1977) on "scripts", Schank (1980) on "memory organisation packets", and Kintsch (1988) on "coherent structures" in associative memory. All of these researchers hypothesise the existence of memory structures
capable of momentarily linking together separate perceptual propositions to give a coherent sequential narrative, thus ...

**CAMEO - SCRIPT THEORY:** Here, for example, is how Schank and Abelson (1977) introduce the notion of scripts ...

"A script, as we use it, is a structure that describes an appropriate sequence of events in a particular context. A script is made up of slots and requirements about what can fill those slots. The structure is an interconnected whole, and what is in one slot affects what can be in another. Scripts handle stylised everyday situations. [...] A script is, in effect, a very boring little story. [...]"


And still other theorists look to differences in processing between the brain's left and right cerebral hemispheres ...

**CAMEO - HEMISPHERIC DIFFERENTIATION:** Readers not already familiar with "left-brain, right-brain" differences should pre-read ALL the following primers: *Split Brain* [Wikipedia factsheet]; *Right Hemisphere Syndrome* [Wikipedia factsheet]; Myers and Mackisack (1990); *Bicameral Mind* [Wikipedia factsheet]. The defining work here was carried out between 1964 and [ongoing] by the American cognitive neuroscientist Michael Gazzaniga [Wikipedia biography], and was prompted by the initial observation that strange things happened in neurological patients whose two cerebral hemispheres were surgically severed [as described in the above primers]. Accumulated research observations eventually led Gazzaniga to create his own version of a "bicameral" theory of consciousness in which our left brains are "constantly trying to find relationships between events" [1] that you encounter in the world, and constantly assessing where you stand in relation to others" (*Science News*, 24th February 1996). For a longer introduction see the *Companion Resource*.

[1] Being able to detect "relationships between events" is, of course, the essence of narrative understanding.

**** VISUAL ARGUMENT IN NARRATIVE UNDERSTANDING ****

As it happens, the notion of hemispheric specialisation neatly accounts for the strange ability of the mind to understand both verbal and pictorial stories. When a narrative IS provided, the left brain listens to it and the right brain passively checks that the picture sequence is broadly consistent with the words. When, on the other hand, a narrative IS NOT provided, the left-brain simply switches its attention to what the right-brain is actively telling it is going on.

**HISTORICAL CAMEO - BOTTOMORE (1994):** While we are on the subject of hemispheric differences it is worth passing on the following anecdote from the cinema historian Stephen Bottomore [=1897 (18th April)] who took it from Winston Churchill’s [1895 (20th February)<=>2nd September] 1899 memoir of his personal involvement in a cavalry charge at the Battle of Omdurman [=>2nd September]. *Note the clear right-brainedness of Churchill's memory of the event* ...

"Churchill was known in later life as a fervent cinema fan. To judge from his description of the battle, films were already a preoccupation. *The whole scene
flickered exactly like a cinematograph picture, and besides I remember no sound. The event seemed to pass in absolute silence" (Bottomore, 1994, p20).

We shall be returning to the sciences of narrative cognition in due course but not before we have resurrected one of Aristotle's most powerful explanatory notions ...

A LITTLE DEEP PHILOSOPHY: Unluckily for those who do not like long Greek words it is not possible to resolve the issue of narrative cognition without firstly returning to the Aristotelian philosophical topic of "enthymeme" ...

ASIDE: We introduced the notion of enthymeme in the 335BCE entry on Aristotle's theory of rhetoric. To save back-browsing here is the Wikipedia factsheet again (if this is not enough then click here to be taken back to 335BCE for the fuller story).

The nature of enthymemes as truncated (and therefore subjective (and therefore unsafe)) forms of mental argument was discussed from time to time in philosophical works for two full millennia, but major psychologies of reasoning did not appear until Immanuel Kant in the 1780s [see Companion Resource] and James Mill [Wikipedia biography] in 1829. We may date modern interest in the topic to a 1958 monograph entitled "The Uses of Argument" by the (at the time) Leeds University philosopher Stephen E. Toulmin [Wikipedia biography]. Since then a wide variety of academic departments (not least Media/Cinema/Drama Studies, Linguistics, and Artificial Intelligence) have explicitly included enthymemes in their discussions. Toulmin, S.F. (1958). The Uses of Argument. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

RECOMMENDED BIBLIOGRAPHY: Canada's York University's Carol Poster [University homepage] has prepared a detailed online interdisciplinary bibliography showing the main departmental involvements and the publications within each department: check it out and note the paltry four publications from psychologists.

And finally, coming right up to date, the enthymeme has recently become one of the strongest candidate constructs in theories of "visual argument", such as those promoted by Harvard University's H. Nelson Goodman [Wikipedia biography], Northwestern University's Daniel J. O'Keefe [University homepage], San Francisco State University's Bill Nichols [Wikipedia biography], the University of Windsor's J. Anthony Blair [University homepage], and the University of Illinois' Cara A. Finnegan [University homepage].

RESEARCH CAMEO - GOODMAN (1968): In a 1968 monograph entitled "The Languages of Art" Goodman attempted to apply elements of linguistic theory to visual aesthetics. Pictures, he argues, denote their object(s) even when those objects are not specific people, places, or things. They are therefore an aspect of the cognitive processes of symbolisation and understanding. Goodman H. N. (1968). The Languages of Art: An Approach to a Theory of Symbols. Indianapolis: Bobbs-Merrill.


RESEARCH CAMEO - NICHOLS (1991): In a 1991 monograph entitled "Representing Reality: Issues and Concepts in Documentary" Nichols explores the vaguely defined differences between merely "telling a story" and "making an argument" in the medium of film documentary. He decides early on that one of the key differences is that with documentary "we prepare ourselves not to comprehend a story but to grasp an argument" (p5). The difficulty then, however, is that editorial devices - for example cutting within a scene - are quite capable of framing evidence in such a way as to force the argument in a certain partisan direction. He calls this risk the "fiction of objectivity" (p165), and, when abused, it turns an otherwise well-constructed documentary into propaganda. Nichols, B. (1991). Representing Reality: Issues and Concepts in Documentary. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
RESEARCH CAMEO - BLAIR (1996): In a 1996 paper entitled "The Possibility and Actuality of Visual Arguments" Blair (following O'Keefe above) argued that for a communication to be an argument it had to meet four main criteria, namely (1) that it had to be an asserted claim "that something has to be believed, or chosen, or done" (p24), (2) made for a particular stated reason, (3) to a set of intended recipients, and (4) with the sponsor(s) intention that those recipients "accept the claim on the basis of the reason(s) offered" (p24). He then applied this analysis to visual argument, finding that with this sort of material the constituent propositions themselves are usually relatively commonplace. All that is needed for a visual communication to count as argumentation, therefore, is for it to have the necessary claims and reasons and be intentionally directed by a sponsor at an audience. This, however, will often require difficult judgement calls to be made, thus ...

"Asserting or claiming is the default function in spoken or written language. That is, to utter or write a declarative sentence is, in the absence of any counter-indication, to assert its propositional content. The same is not true for all visual expression. When we go to an art gallery or to the movies [...] we must infer what we can from the external and internal contextual cues. Thus the movie 'Batman' is taken to be sheer entertainment, not argumentative; whereas the movies 'Dances with Wolves' or 'JFK' [...] are dramatically structured so as to leave no doubt that they express a point of view ..." (op. cit., p27).


RESEARCH CAMEO - FINNEGAN (2001): In a 2001 paper entitled "The Naturalistic Enthymeme and Visual Argument" Finnegan argues that our perception of photographic material (including documentary and news) is a "potent argumentative resource" precisely because such material "leaves space for the audience to insert its own knowledge and experience". Even without words, therefore, we make presumptions of realism and assumptions as to purpose. She calls such constructions "naturalistic enthymemes". Finnegan, C. A. (2001). The naturalistic enthymeme and visual argument. Argumentation and Advocacy, 37:133-149.

Or to put it all another way, when all is said and done enthymemes - especially the visual ones which are off to one side in our consciousness - allow the clever communicator to pass off dubious arguments as reliable. To understand the enthymeme, therefore, is to come one step closer to a cognitive science of propaganda.

STUDENT EXERCISE - VISUAL ENTHYMEME

1. FROM THE AUDIENCE'S PERSPECTIVE: Take a look at this image. Beginners: What does it "say" to you? Advanced: Guided by the examples previously given [[<=335BCE]] state this image's argument in the P1-P2-C format of the classical Aristotelian syllogism. Then do the same for this 1914 image and for this 2015 image.

2. FROM THE DIRECTOR'S PERSPECTIVE: "Rescued by Rover" is an actual 1905 movie title. Without firstly viewing the original, create a ten-scene storyboard to match that title. Now watch the original film [link at 1905 (3rd July)] to see how close you were. Give yourself one mark for every correctly matching scene. Repeat for "The Battle of the Somme" [=>1916 (10th August)] and (as a comedy) "Shoulder Arms" [=>1918 (20th October)].

Non-English speakers using translation software should note that Rover is a common dog's name in Britain.

1898 [4th July] The Hawaiian Annexation [XIV - The Final Annexation]: [Continued from 6th January 1895] With Grover Cleveland's defeat by William McKinley in the 1896 presidential elections, the cause of Hawaiian independence had lost its only honest broker. After hearing representations from the likes of Lorrin Thurston and with the strong endorsement of the aforementioned Senator John Morgan and the Senate Foreign Relations Committee, McKinley decides for the annexation of the islands as a Territory, and commissions the Newlands Resolution [Wikipedia briefing] to initiate the formal proceedings. Queen Lili'uokalani boycotts the ceremonies and spends the rest of her life [d. 1917] campaigning - vainly - for justice. Hawaii will become
1898 [4th July] The SS La Bourgogne sinks following a collision off the coast of Nova Scotia. Only 70 passengers out of 506 on board (i.e., 14%) and 103 crew out of 220 (i.e., 47%) survive. Many passengers, it will subsequently be alleged, are left to swim for it by the crew for fear of overloading the lifeboats. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [25th July-13th August] **The Spanish-American War [XXVIII - Puerto Rico]**: [Continued from 3rd July 1898] Although ship-ship and ship-shore engagements have been going on since 8th May, the Puerto Rico campaign only begins in earnest when General Miles' invasion convoy starts offloading troops at Guanica (Google maps). The most experienced Puerto Rican units have been transferred to Cuba, and only lightly armed militia remain on the island. These are gradually pushed back toward the capital San Juan, and are still putting up resistance when the Madrid government orders them to lay down their weapons on 13th August [sub-thread continues at 30th July 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [30th July-9th August] **The Spanish-American War [XXIX - Time for Peace]**: [Continued from 25th July 1898] President McKinley now presents Madrid with his peace terms. These are that Spain should (a) cede to the United States by right of conquest Puerto Rico and Guam, (b) cede Manila City and Bay by [the not internationally recognised] right of future conquest (the Spanish are still actively defending them), and (c) discuss the future of the rest of the Philippines at a peace conference to be held in Paris. On 7th August Madrid quite properly declines (b) because Manila City and Bay are still holding out. McKinley persists with his original demands [sub-thread continues at 11th August 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [11th-14th August] **The Spanish-American War [XXX - Manila Surrendered]**: [Continued from 30th July 1898] Madrid reluctantly accepts McKinley's armistice terms without conditions, and the ceasefire becomes effective on 12th August. On 14th August Manila City surrenders, there being no point in further resistance. General Merritt then declares a Military Government with himself as Military Governor [sub-thread continues at 28th August 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [28th August/16th September/29th September] **The Spanish-American War [XXXI - The Peace Delegations]**: [Continued from 11th August 1898] President McKinley appoints a five-man peace delegation for the impending Paris talks led by ex-Secretary of State William Day [check him out]. When they embark their liner 16th September, McKinley confidentially briefs them to ask for more than the 12th August ceasefire had indicated, namely the whole of the island of Luzon, and not just Manila City and Bay. The two delegations will hold their first meeting 29th September [sub-thread continues at 25th October 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


1898 [1st September] Based in Bradford, the Low Moor Chemical Company [Blackwell (1987) factsheet=>1916 (21st August)] obtains a licence from the government to produce picric acid for military use. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

********** "NOT A BATTLE BUT AN EXECUTION" **********
**Battle of Omdurman:** This battle is fought as part of the Mahdist War between a British and Egyptian army under Kitchener [Wikipedia biography] and a Sudanese Mahdist army under Khalif Abdallahi ibn Muhammad [Wikipedia biography]. Kitchener has prepared meticulously well and the outcome is a crushing defeat for the Mahdists thanks to a combination of discipline, modern rifle fire, the Maxim machine gun, and adequate field artillery. The battle is noteworthy in the present context (a) for again demonstrating the power of artillery against infantry in the open (especially when firing the new Lyddite-filled shells), (b) for the appearance on history's stage of a young Lancer named Winston Churchill [3rd July => 1899 (5th May)], and (c) for a largely unsuccessful attempt by two pioneering war correspondents - the Western Morning News' John M. ("Mad Jack") Benett-Stanford [no convenient biography] and the aforementioned Villiers [1897 (18th April) => 1899 (12th October)] - to capture the proceedings on film. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

^1ASIDE: Kitchener's artillery is so effective against the Mahdists that Khartoum will subsequently be described as "a victory for picric acid" (Brown, 2005, p150).

^2ASIDE: Although Villiers later claimed that "nobody else had a cinematograph with them" Bottomore (1994) credits both men with this breakthrough. Unfortunately for Villiers, who had wangled a vantage point high up on the gunboat Melik [Melik Society shipography], he lost his opportunity when the recoil of her guns tipped his camera over and broke open his film magazine. Benett-Stanford was slightly more successful, managing to film some of the preparations for battle the day before. This footage was then possibly sold on to the A. D. Thomas Company [IMDB factsheet] and incorporated into his 1898 reel "March on Omdurman and Khartoum" [IMDB entry]. Once again, therefore, the cine-correspondents learned the hard way that battles are difficult to "stage" for best visual effect. Even when a camera is in the right place shells are like shooting stars - most of the time you simply are not ready for them. Or - and this is actually an even greater problem - that which you perceive quite well with the naked eye is likely to be insignificant at best to the camera, because the camera has no fovea ...

REMINDER - CAMERAS ARE NOT EYES
REMINDER - CAMERAS ARE NOT EYES
REMINDER - CAMERAS ARE NOT EYES

DOUBLE ASIDE: The fovea [Wikipedia factsheet] is the human retina's central area of high resolution vision. Moreover the eyes themselves are kept pointed directly toward whatever most interests us by a frighteningly complex (and still far from understood) system of visual attention and scanning, beginning in neocortical Area #8 [Wikipedia factsheet]. To see what is involved try the following exercise ...

fixate on this X while moving your head up and down and side to side (few cameras are target-stabilised in this way in 2015, let alone 1898)

It follows that the Director and the Editor have to compensate for the new medium's deficiencies by (a) skiffly concatenating "establishing" and background footage with a little true reality and a lot of "arranged reality", (b) providing the end product with a supporting narrative (spoken, printed, or captioned), and (c) adding appropriately enticing taglined advertisements.

WAR ART: Check out Edward Hale's (1899) "The Charge of the 21st Lancers". The same event is also dramatised in this YouTube video (from the 1972 movie "Young Winston" - note Churchill's signature Broomhandle Mauser [=1896] at the end). Omdurman is also the setting for the closing chapters of one of Britain's favourite novels and films, "The Four Feathers" [=1901 (22nd February)].
concentrates on separating out the oscillator aspects of the transmitter circuit from the antenna aspects. The performance of the resulting "loosely coupled antenna" is so much improved that Braun foresees no problem achieving 100km transmitting ranges. Indeed before the end of the year he will have achieved a 30km\(^1\) range from Strasbourg to the nearby town on Mutzig [continues at 5th November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

\(^1\)ASIDE: Although 30km is less than the range claimed by Tesla the year before [<=1897 (19th July) Braun's equipment is considerably smaller and consumes less power.

1898 [15th October-2nd November] Zionism Pre-WW1 [XII - Herzl Meets the Kaiser]: [Continued from 1896 (12th July)] In order to foster good relations between Germany and the Ottoman Empire Kaiser Wilhelm II [26th March<=1899 (30th May)] has for some time been planning a state visit to Jerusalem, to take place on 31st October. The preparations for this visit have coincided with the latest appeals for assistance in obtaining a sponsor for their Jewish Palestine proposal from William Hechler [<=1896 (10th March)] and Theodor Herzl [1896 (10th March)<=1902 (23rd October)]. Sensing an opportunity to impress both the Muslims and the Jews (and annoy the French, British, and Russians into the bargain) the Kaiser's aides offer Herzl a meeting with the Kaiser as his entourage passes through Constantinople. This meeting duly takes place 15th October and the end result is that the Kaiser agrees to promote the Zionist proposal with the Ottoman Sultan. In the end, however, the Ottomans - despite the fact that as a failing state they could well do with the money - will eventually decline the request [sub-thread continues at 1902 (23rd October) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

RECOMMENDED READING: For a fuller telling of the story here we recommend Klinger (op. cit. [<=1st February]).

1898 [24th October] [Continued from 31st March] Concerned at their poor performance against the coal owners in the Great Coal Strike [<=31st March] the miners of South Wales decide to improve their bargaining power by creating a coalfield-wide South Wales Miners' Federation [Wikipedia factsheet=>1910 (1st November)]. [THREAD = THE WW1 WORKING CLASS SOLDIER]

1898 [25th-31st October] The Spanish-American War [XXXII - Mission Creep]: [Continued from 28th August 1898] Falsely claiming that it was the will of the American people (Karp 1979), President McKinley telegraphs his peace delegation in Paris instructing them to claim the whole of the Philippine Archipelago, and not just Luzon. They table the new demand at the 31st October session of the talks [sub-thread continues at 2nd November 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

***** "Our uniformed assassins" (Mark Twain) *****

1898 [2nd November] The Spanish-American War [XXXIII - The Founding Fathers Turn in Their Graves]: [Continued from 25th October 1898] With Madrid left naked in the international spotlights, with armies of occupation in Cuba and Guam, and with a bloody anti-American war brewing in the Philippines, some very highly regarded politicians and academics finally get a word in edgeways. Imperial rapine is all very well, they say - Genghis the Great, Alexander the Great, Peter the Great, they all did it. But, they point out, the conquerors of old had not been bound by a Constitution which said not to do it. America had its Government-by-Consent Constitution, and as a result American greatness had - until now - had an intellectual purity about it. Senator George Frisby Hoar [Wikipedia biography] gives perhaps the clearest statement of these emerging existential qualms: America, he said, had metamorphosed into a "vulgar commonplace empire, founded upon physical force, controlling subject races and vassal states". Worse still, a whispered trickle of atrocity reports is leading far-from-unpatriotic American
commentators such as Mark Twain suddenly to see their armed forces as the nation's "uniformed assassins" [sub-thread continues at 8th December 1898 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

**ASIDE - MARK TWAIN'S DAMASCENE CONVERSION:** Mark Twain spent most of the 1890s lauding American Expansionism, not least in the Philippines, Hawaii, and Cuba. By 1899 he had done a 180-degree flip, and saw the damage done by Expansionism. For a fuller introduction to this deeply moving personal conversion see this 2010 powereofnarrative blog.


1898 [10th December] **The Spanish-American War [XXXIV - The Treaty of Paris]:** [Continued from 2nd November 1898] This peace treaty between the United States and Spain brings the Spanish-American War to a formal conclusion, with Spain allowing Cuba to leave her empire as an independent republic, and ceding to the United States the Philippines, Puerto Rico, and Guam. William Randolph Hearst describes it as "Great for the United States, Great for the World, Great for Humanity", Theodore Roosevelt [...] (discharged in September and now back in civvies) famously describes it as "a splendid little war", and President McKinley describes it as what would be expected of "a world power". The Treaty now has to come back to the Senate for ratification, and - refreshingly - that proves no mere rubber-stamping exercise ... [sub-thread continues at 21st January 1899 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1898 [??th December] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XXV - Marconi Goes into Production]:** [Continued from 5th November] Guglielmo Marconi [1897 (13th May)<=1900 (26th April)] opens a factory for his Wireless Telegraph and Signal Company on Hall Street, Chelmsford [continues at 1899 (6th February) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1898 [??th December] The French submarine Gustave Zédé [...] takes part in fleet exercises and makes history by twice "sinking" an "enemy" battleship, once while at anchor and then again while under way. [THREAD = THE WW1 SUBMARINE NAVIES]

1899 Encouraged by the effectiveness of lyddites [...] at the Battle of Ondurman [...] the War Department commissions new suppliers of picric acid [...] Such as Read Holliday and Sons [...] Huddersfield. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

1899 The Liebig Extract of Meat Company [...] introduces the tradename "OXO" for its meat extract range. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1899 Having fallen out with the Winchester Repeating Arms Company [...] John Browning [...] undertakes design projects for Remington [...] and Fabrique Nationale in Belgium. [THREAD = WW1 SMALL ARMS]

1899 Howard Carter [...] is appointed Chief Inspector of the Egyptian Antiquities Service, to supervise the ongoing excavations at Thebes [...] [THREAD = PRE-WW1 INTELLECTUAL RIVALRY]

1899 Walther Rathenau [...] joins the board of the family firm, AEG [...] [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]
1899 [14th January] RMS Oceanic [Wikipedia shipography] is launched at Harland and Wolff [1895 (24th December)<=>1901 (4th April)], Belfast, for service with the White Star Line [1889 (19th January)<=>23rd November]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

ASIDE - RMS OCEANIC IN WW1: Oceanic was converted into an armed merchant cruiser on 8th August 1914, but then lost on rocks a fortnight later.

1899 [21st January] The Spanish-American War [XXXV - The First Philippine Republic]: [Continued from 10th December 1898] Emilio Aguinaldo is declared President of the First Philippine Republic [Wikipedia briefing], thereby placing ethnic Filipinos in a fragile peace (it lasts precisely a fortnight) with General Merritt's military government. At the same time, President McKinley sets up the First Philippine Commission [Wikipedia briefing] under the chairmanship of Jacob Schurman [Wikipedia biography] to look into the best form of government to introduce after the military occupation [sub-thread continues at 6th February 1899 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

***** ONE WAR STOPS, ANOTHER BEGINS *****
In which the U.S. implements a Reconcentrado policy of its own, and encounters "Gooks" for the first time

1899 [4th February] The Philippine-American War [I - Jungle, Gooks, and Military "Excesses"]: [New sub-thread] With the First Philippine Republic only two weeks old [see 21st February 1899], the casual shooting of a Filipino by an American sentry triggers demonstrations which soon escalate into a full-scale rebel-against-empire insurrection worthy of the 1895 Cuban uprising (only this time the United States is the empire with no friends, and not Spain). Emilio Aguinaldo takes to the hills and wages a guerrilla campaign. It will be 26 months before he is captured and things start to quieten down again. By that time up to a million Filipinos, most of them guilty of nothing more than visceral hatred, have died from the direct or indirect consequences of the American occupation. It is not surprising then that modern authors draw comparisons between this war and the Vietnam War - see, for example, Francisco's (1973 [full text online]) paper "The First Vietnam" [sub-thread continues at 16th March 1900 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

ASIDE - "GOOK": The Internet appears unsure whether the soldiers' slang "Gook" for Asiatic insurgent comes from the Philippine War, the Korean War, or the Vietnam War (there are claims for each). Some accounts also indicate that the "n*****" word was in common usage. If anyone knows which is right please email the author.

1899 [6th February] The Spanish-American War [XXXVI - The Senate Ratification]: [Continued from 21st January 1899] After nearly two months of deep and meaningful debate, the Senate finally approves 57:27 the resolution to ratify the Treaty of Paris, although even now the Treaty will not come into effect until 11th April 1899 [sub-thread continues at 3rd March 1899 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1899 [6th February] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XXVI - Braun's Outer Surface Conduction]: [Continued from 1898 (??th December)] Karl Ferdinand Braun [1898 (20th September)<=>1900 (??th May)] files for a U.S. patent (eventually granted 26th January 1904 as U.S. Patent 750429) under the title "Wireless Electrical Transmission of Signals over Surfaces". The grounds for the patent are the novel use of a soil-buried spark gap between two "earth plates" in a high power wireless transmitter. Braun describes the soil infill as a "semiconductor"¹¹ and emphasises his design's reliance on the "outer surface"¹¹ conduction of electric charge. By this he is recognising that a solid metal object (wire, sphere, cylinder, etc.) will conduct electricity only in its outer surface
[because the like-charged electrons mutually repel each other], and might just as well have been hollowed out for all the difference it would make. Not long afterward Braun and his team relocate to Hamburg to continue their research in the field[2] [continues at 27th April ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1ASIDE: Braun is here using the word "semiconductor" to refer to poorly conducting substances such as soil and water, NOT (in the modern sense of the word) to the one-way transmission seen in the crystal diode rectifier. The outer surface effect had been known about for some time, and is seen at work in the "Faraday Cage" [Wikipedia factsheet].

2ASIDE - BRAUN AND THE CRYSTAL DIODE: The Internet literature widely repeats the claim that Braun patented the crystal diode rectifier in 1899. However, we have so far been unable to track down any such patent.

1899 [12th February] The German-Spanish Treaty: Eager to expand its empire into the Far East Germany buys the Caroline and Northern Mariana Islands of Micronesia from Spain, administering them from the German protectorate of Kaiser-Wilhelmsland [= modern Papua New Guinea]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1899 [3rd March] The Spanish-American War [XXXVII - The Czar Resigns]: [Continued from 6th February 1899] Thomas Brackett Reed [check him out], the Speaker of the House (and thereby guardian supreme of Constitutional Democracy in the United States) resigns his seat and retires from public life, sickened to his stomach by the war's lies and deceptions, and by Congress' casual disregard for the human costs of its armed Expansionism (Karp, 1979) [sub-thread continues at 11th April 1899 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1899 [13th March] Having been undergoing working up trials for nearly a year HMS Terrible [1895 (27th May)=>scraped 1932] Suffers a split boiler tube on one of her 48 Belleville tubed boilers, resulting in the death of one artificer and injury to several others. The event will be discussed in detail in Parliament, and the Hansard transcripts make interesting further reading [go there now]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1899 [13th March] German Naval Expansion [VI - The British Navy Estimates, 1899-1900]: [Continued from 1898 (30th April)] The British Parliament debates the proposed £28million estimates for naval works for the coming year. The Member for Northampton, Henry Labouchere [Wikipedia biography], suspects no little empire building by the navy lobby, as the following extract suggests [note the careful avoidance of the word "Germany"]

"Now, Sir, what is the main plea upon which this portentous and enormous increase is justified? The right honourable Gentleman now the Secretary for India, when he was First Lord of the Admiralty, said that we must be on an equality with any two Powers. We have gone very far beyond that at the present time. But we are very often told that one of the reasons why we ought to expend money is because France and Russia are expending money, and at least we ought to be on an equality with France and Russia combined. I wonder if honourable Gentlemen on either of these two Benches have ever taken the trouble to look into the real cost of the navies of France and Russia. In 1884 the cost of the French navy was £7,500,000. At the present time it is £12,000,000. The cost of the Russian navy in 1884 was £3,500,000. The cost at the present time is £7,000,000. That is to say, whilst since 1884 we have increased the expenditure on our Navy by £18,000,000, the united increase of the navies of France and Russia has only been £8,000,000. [...] It was argued at the commencement of this naval craze that we had been obliged to increase our Navy owing to the increase on the part of Russia, but, as a matter of fact, their increases have been due to our increases. We are putting the cart before the horse when we say that our increases have been due to theirs ..." (Hansard, 13th March 1899, 644-645).
In the event the financing is approved, with the overriding strategy being that the Royal Navy should be kept equal in strength to the next two rival navies combined [continues at 1900 (1st January) ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES] [THREAD = WW1 WAR FEVER]

"It was a deal so utterly discreditable that it cannot be defended"

(Liggett, p68)

1899 [20th March or thereabouts - 1st March 1905] The Rise of Herbert Hoover [III - Time in China]: [Continued from 13th May 1897] Following friction between Hoover and other BMC managers in Australia Moreing eventually intervenes and suggests to Hoover a comparable position in China, where Zhili Province's Kaiping Coal Field [Wikipedia briefing] is presently a good target for predatory Western "promotion". Hoover accordingly puts his affairs in order in California, marries 10th February 1899, and then departs for a working honeymoon in Tientsin/Tianjin. He will be there for some two years, and in that time China will bring him "wealth in one deal" (Liggett, p66). Here are the key players in what happens next ...

**DRAMATIS PERSONAE:**

Chang Yen-Mao [no convenient biography], Chinese Civil Servant, Zhili Province's Director of Mines (whose signature is needed on any Western concession document); Lord Curzon [see 1st January 1903], the British Foreign Secretary; Gustav Detring [no convenient biography], German Civil Servant, advisor to Chang and Commissioner to the Chinese Customs Service with good contacts in the Chinese government; James Bromley Eames [no convenient biography], Belgian investment banker with the Banque d'Outremer, Constantin von Hanneken [no convenient biography, but see Mak (2013, full text by Googling <ricardo Mak 2013 "western advisers and late qing">), ex-Prussian artillery officer, ex-military adviser on the Port Arthur harbour defences in the early 1880s, but presently just a rather mysterious civilian with a direct line to the Russian Legation and also to ... Li, Hung-Chang [Wikipedia biography], 75-year-old Viceroy of Zhili Province; C. Algernon Moreing [check him out], whom we have already met; The Oriental Syndicate [no convenient briefing], a holding company set up by Moreing in December 1899 to ease the conveyancing; Lord Salisbury [see 26th September 1900], the British Prime Minister; Chevalier Emmanuel Florian de Wouters d'Oplinter [no convenient biography], Belgian investment banker with the Banque Belge pour l'Étranger; Alfred White-Cooper [no convenient biography], The Oriental Syndicate's lawyer in drawing up the even more blatantly unequal revised contract.

**DRAMATIS PECUNIAE:**

Banque d'Outremer, a bank formed in 1899 by a consortium of banks (each in turn a consortium of its own), including Ernest Cassel [see own entry], for the purpose of overseas development [see Brion and Moreau (2008 [full text online])]; Banque Belge pour l'Étranger, a bank formed in 1902 at the suggestion of King Leopold II [see own entry] to develop trade between Belgium and China, often by brokering the greater resources of the Société Générale de Belgique.

Hoover sets to work surveying the Kaiping resources and by late Spring 1900 he has seen all that he needs to see. However, just as he completes his technical report he becomes ensnared in the 1900 Boxer Rebellion, and is one of the Westerners who escape the famous 55-day Siege of Peking [see 20th June 1900] only to get bottled up in the ancillary siege at Tientsin.

**ASIDE:** Tientsin is the port for Beijing (some 60 miles away to the north-west up the Hai River), and is therefore the port of arrival for Western reinforcements. Its siege is accordingly raised several weeks earlier than Beijing's.

Here are the principal events in the coming months ...
1900, 13th-30th July: The Tientsin siege is raised and five-way business discussions take place in the second half of July between Chang, Hoover, Detring, von Hanneken, and the lawyer Eames. The resulting management services contract is signed 30th July.

1900, early August: Trusting no other courier with the paperwork, the Hoovers sail for London on the next boat out, arriving 8th October.

1900, 8th October: Hoover meets with Moreing, who detects a number of issues with the contract wording. Moreing therefore prepares a revised version and sends Hoover back to China accompanied this time by Chevalier Emmanuel de Wouters.

1900, 21st December: While Hoover and de Wouters are still at sea, Moreing registers the Chinese Engineering and Mining Company Limited in London. (Liggett, 1932, explains that this could have been done in Hong Kong but would have been harder to keep secret.)

1901, January: Hoover and de Wouters arrive back in Tientsin in January 1901 and immediately re-open negotiations with Chang and Detring concerning the terms of Moreing's new contract. Chang is pushing for a Chinese Board of Directors, and makes a number of other "stipulations".

1901, 9th February: Hoover and de Wouters inform Detring that they are ready to meet Chang's reservations.

1901, 15th-16th February: Chang travels to Tientsin from Beijing to inspect the new contract. He is pressured to sign quickly, but after examining the document simply dismisses it as not reflecting any of his concerns. It is, he complains, less a managed services contract and more a deed of sale!

1901, 19th February: After a heated argument Chang is eventually constrained upon to sign, but even then he has the good sense to annotate his reservations in a 14-point Supplementary Memorandum. Hoover immediately takes custody of Chang's official seal and title deeds, and De Wouters becomes acting manager.

1901, September: Hoover returns to Britain with 50,000 shares (one twentieth of the coalfield) to his credit.

1901, November: As a reward for a job well done, Hoover is made a one-sixth partner in Bewick, Moreing and Company.

1902, July: Émile Francqui arrives in Tientsin from Shanghai to represent the Belgian shareholders.

1902, 28th November: At a shareholders' meeting Chang starts to resurrect the problems he had been raising all along, none of which have been acted upon and many flagrantly ignored. A formal legal challenge is then drawn up.

1902, December: Moreing personally delivers 50,000 shares to Detling as payment for services rendered.

1903, 2nd February: The Chinese shareholders hold an indignation meeting and start to kick up such a fuss that the Chinese government, weak though it is, protests 19th June 1903 to the British government, and Chang begins Chancery litigation in London to enforce the Supplementary document.

ASIDE - USEFUL ENGLISH VOCABULARY: Under British Law it is not a crime to drive a hard bargain, nor is it a crime to refuse to honour a debt. To steal or defraud money is a crime, and is adjudged by criminal law. To owe money is a civil offence, and is adjudicated by common law (for example, by "CCJs"). To cheat by unfair contract terms - as in the Kaiping Case - is neither one thing nor the other, and is adjudicated by the Chancery Division of the High Court. The word "chancery" comes from the same etymological root as "chancellery", "chancellor", etc., in its sense of senior advisor. More recently the word "chancer" - from a totally different linguistic root - has become standard British and Irish slang for "an unscrupulous or dishonest opportunist", and phrases such as "He's a right chancer" are regularly heard in underworld dramas and everyday informal speech. So in the present context we could say that Herbert Hoover was a chancer who ended up in Chancery.

1905, 18th January: Chang's Chancery case is brought to trial before Justice Joyce, with not-yet-ennobled Rufus Isaacs [watch this man] appearing for Moreing and BMC. Hoover, who
is complicit in the alleged offence both as partner in BMC and as director of the Chinese Engineering and Mining Company, takes fully two days to give his testimony, often "squirming on the witness stand" (Liggett, 1932, p119). The eventual judgement is heavily in favour of the Chinese, Chang's conditions are validated, and costs are awarded against Moreing and BMC.

***** THE RAPE OF BAN-KING *****

An appeal is lodged, but the original judgement is upheld 24th January 1907 (and if Isaacs cannot get you off, nobody can). Nevertheless, in China, where it matters, the High Court ruling is ignored and little or nothing changes.

1899 [11th April] The Spanish-American War [XXXVIII - Treaty of Paris Implemented]: [Continued from 3rd March 1899] The Treaty of Paris [see 10th December 1898] comes into force. In the real world this makes little practical difference, and the four occupation governments stay in place. However the State Department now has to work on the civilian structures which are to replace them. In Cuba the military occupation will continue under General Leonard Wood [check him out] until 20th May 1902, when civilian President Tomás Estrada Palma [Wikipedia biography] is installed. In the Philippines the precarious peace has just failed [see 4th February 1899] and years of no-holds-barred warfare beckon [follow new sub-thread from 4th February 1899]. Judge William Taft [check him out] will become Governor-General of the islands on 4th July 1900 when sugar baron Charles Herbert Allen [Wikipedia biography] becomes civil governor [sub-thread continues at 28th December 1899 ...].

1899 [16th April] [Before proceeding readers should re-familiarise themselves with the story of chess-playing automata [<=1836 (April) and follow the onward pointers]] The American writer Ambrose G. Bierce [Wikipedia biography] publishes a short science fiction story entitled "Moxon's Master" [full text online], in which he satirises the suggestion that machine intelligence is going to be anything but Satanic. Moxon is the inventor of a chess-playing automaton which, when beaten, responds by strangling its creator. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE CONTROL]


1899 [5th May] Winston Churchill [1898 (2nd September)<=12th October] resigns from the army and on 6th July fights, and only narrowly loses, the Oldham by-election. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1899 [17th May] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XXVIII - Tesla's Pike's Peak Experiments]: [Continued from 27th April] Nikola Tesla [1898 (20th September)<=1901 (1st March)] opens a research laboratory at Colorado Springs and starts to erect a wireless transmitter station at the top of nearby Pike's Peak. Within weeks his laboratory will be generating sparks seven metres in length [see confirming image at http://www.teslauniverse.com/nikola-
tesla - article - nikola - tesla-at-75] [Continues at 20th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1899 [18th May-29th July] The First Hague Congress and Convention: This ten-week international congress at den Haag, Netherlands, hammers out a code of practice governing which weapons and battlefield behaviours are "fair" and which are "cheating"1. Amongst the weapons and behaviours proscribed are poisons and gases, dum-dum bullets, the execution or mistreatment of prisoners-of-war, the collective punishment of civilians, looting, and bombing from the air [continues 1907 (15th June) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL WEAPONS]

1 ASIDE: A passing Martian might find it difficult to reconcile the notion that there are fair and unfair ways of killing one's enemies with the oft-quoted adage that "all's fair in love and war".

1899 [30th May-5th June] The Kruger-Milner Conference: Following rising tensions in the South African Republic between ethnic Boers (who have the vote) and Uitlanders [Dutch = "foreigners"; mainly British migrants attracted from Cape Colony into the Boer republics by the lure of mining riches] [who do not] the British High Commissioner for Southern Africa Sir Alfred Milner [Baron Milner]28th May 1901 [1st Viscount Milner]1902 [Wikipedia biography=>7th August] visits President Kruger [1896 (3rd January)<=>7th August] at Bloemfontein for six days of in-the-event unsuccessful talks on the matter. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1899 [30th May or hereabouts] Seeing is Believing [LIX - Early Motion Pictures (Deutsche Bioskop)]: [Continued from 1898 (3rd July)] The German film producer Julius Grünbaum [Wikipedia biography=1908 (27th February)] founds Deutsche Bioskop [no convenient factsheet=>1902 (18th June)]. The company's first offering is "Frühjahrparade" [in English as "Spring Parade"; no IMDB entry; no video], a record of Kaiser Wilhelm II's [1898 (15th October<=>21st November] review of his troops this Spring [sub-thread continues at 12th October ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1899 [1st June or hereabouts] John Brown and Company [Wikipedia factsheet=>1902] take over the Clydebank Engineering and Shipbuilding Company [<=1897]. Their first major contract will be for the battlecruiser HMS Inflexible [=1907 (26th June)]. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]

1899 [1st June or hereabouts] Prince Louis of Battenberg [1892<=>1902 (?!) is appointed Assistant Director of Naval Intelligence. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE CONTROL]

1899 [25th July] HMS Vengeance [Wikipedia shipography] is launched at Vickers, Sons, and Maxim Limited [1897<=>1901 (2nd October)], Barrow-in-Furness. She has been identified as be the first modern capital ship ever to be built, armoured, armed, and engined by the same manufacturer. Her turrets are flat-faceted because her Krupp armour [=1894] is notoriously difficult to forge to a radius. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

**********   JAPAN TAKES THE INTERNATIONAL STAGE   **********
**********   JAPAN TAKES THE INTERNATIONAL STAGE   **********
**********   JAPAN TAKES THE INTERNATIONAL STAGE   **********
1899 [7th August] **The Uitlanders Crisis Again:** The Conservative politician Sir Ellis Ashmead-Bartlett [Wikipedia biography] raises the problems of China and the Boer republics in the House of Commons. On the China question he notes ...

"The aggressive advance of the Russian Power upon the independence of China still continues, and the resisting power of the China Government does not increase. Russia is augmenting and consolidating her military and political strength in Manchuria, while we look on with folded arms" (Hansard, 76:60-144).

But perhaps all is not lost ...

"There has, however, quite of late appeared one ray of brightness and comfort in this ever-blackening horizon. This relief comes from the east, and not from the west. The keen and progressive people of Japan are moving for the protection of China [...]. The Japanese are doing exactly what we should have been doing for the past four years. Let us hope Her Majesty’s Government at last realise that cooperation with Japan is our main lever and hope in the East" (ibid.).

As for South Africa, where the Uitlanders issue [<=30th May and 13th June] remains unresolved, he adds follows ...

"The franchise concession has been made by [Colonial Secretary Joseph Chamberlain [1895 (29th December)<=>21st November]] the key of the position, but the difficulties of the Transvaal will be by no means settled, even if the full demands of [High Commissioner for Southern Africa Sir Alfred Milner [30th May<=>1901 (1st March)]] are accepted by the Volksraad [...]. These are details, and very important details. The main thing, however, is that Her Majesty’s Government should make it plain to [President Kruger [30th May<=>12th October]] and to the Boer Executive and Volksraad - that is, to the thirty-three persons who are absolute masters of the Transvaal [...] - that no evasion or shuffling will be permitted" (ibid.).

Chamberlain will issue a formal ultimatum on 22nd September and it will be rejected as absolutely as might have been predicted three weeks later [=>12th October]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = HOW TO START A WAR]

********** IMPORTANT WW1 TECHNOLOGY **********

==== THE STEAM TURBINE ====

1899 [6th September] **Hawthorn Leslie and Company** [<=1886], Tyneside, launches its first Viper-class torpedo boat destroyer of 350 tons [Wikipedia_shipography]. The ships are noteworthy in the present context for being the first to benefit from steam turbine propulsion, thereby pushing their maximum speed up to 36.5 knots. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1899 [3rd/7th October] **The Venezuelan Dispute [VI - The Tribunal Decides]** (Continued from 2nd February 1897) The arbitration Tribunal in the border dispute between Britain and Venezuela finally rules that the Schomburgk Line should stand. The Venezuelan delegation smells a nobbled judge, but lacks the clout to do anything about it. Things will now go relatively quiet until the matter is raised again in 1962 in the United Nations [sub-thread continued at 20th August 1962 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1899 [12th October-1902 (31st May)] **The Second Boer War, 1899-1902:** This war of colonial confrontation is fought between the British and the two disputedly independent "Boer Republics", namely the South African Republic [colloquially, Transvaal] under President Kruger [7th August<=>1900 (1st September)] and the Orange Free State under Martinus T. Steyn [Wikipedia biography] of 1900 (18th February).
WHO'S WHO AND WHERE'S WHERE:

Belmont [coordinates]: Railway halt on the Cape Town-Mafeking-Bulawayo Railway, 15 miles north of Orange River Station.

Bloemfontein [map, etc.]: The capital city of Orange Free State, with rail links westward to Kimberley, northward to Johannesburg, eastward to Durban, and southward to Noupoort and Stormberg.

British Bechuanaland [map, etc.]: The north-western, administratively British, province of what is nowadays the Republic of South Africa, including the towns of Vryburg and Mafeking.

Cape Colony [map, etc.]: The southern, administratively British, half of what is nowadays the Republic of South Africa, including the ports of (west to east) Cape Town, Port Elizabeth, and East London.

Colenso [map, etc.]: Railway town on the Tugela River in Natal, 118 miles inland from Durban, and a key supply waypoint for communications with Ladysmith, 15 miles further inland.

De Aar [map, etc.]: Railway town in Cape Colony, 470 miles inland from Cape Town, and a key supply waypoint for communications with Kimberley, 120 miles further inland.

Dundee [map, etc.]: Coal-mining town in up-country Natal, some 180 miles inland from Durban.

Graspan [coordinates]: Railway halt on the Cape Town-Mafeking-Bulawayo Railway, 8 miles north of Belmont.

Jacobsdal [map, etc.]: Diamond-mining community on the Riet River about 15 miles south of Kimberley and straddling the border between the Orange Free State and Cape Colony.

Johannesburg [map, etc.]: Gold-mining town in the South African Republic/Transvaal.

Kimberley [map, etc.]: Important mining town on the northern frontier of Cape Colony, close to the border with Orange Free State. Also a junction town on the Cape Town-Mafeking-Bulawayo railway. Why important? In short, diamonds! Kimberley sits on the richest diamond reef in the world, and was (and still is) the centre of the De Beers [Wikipedia factsheet] mining empire.

Koedoesrand (Drift) [coordinates]: Mountain (with nearby Modder River crossing [coordinates]), 27 miles east of Magersfontein.

Ladysmith [map, etc.]: Local administrative town on the north-western frontier of Natal, close to the border with Orange Free State and 130 miles inland from Durban.


Mafeking [map, etc.]: Remote gold-mining town on the north-eastern frontier of British Bechuanaland, close to the border with the South African Republic/Transvaal.

Magersfontein [map, etc.]: Open land alongside the Cape Town-Mafeking-Bulawayo Railway, some five miles north of the Modder River.

Modder River [map, etc.]: A 300-mile-long tributary of the Riet River, flowing broadly westward through the towns of Paardeberg and Magersfontein to a confluence at Jacobsdal.

Natal [map, etc.]: The easternmost, administratively British, province of what is nowadays the Republic of South Africa, including the port of Durban. Nowadays formally KwaZulu-Natal.

Noupoort [map, etc.]: Railway junction town on the Port Elizabeth-Bloemfontein railway.

Orange Free State [map, etc.]: The north-central, administratively Boer, province of what is nowadays the Republic of South Africa, including the towns of Bloemfontein and Kroonstad.

Orange River [map, etc.]: A 1367-mile-long river arising in the Drakensberg Mountains west of Colenso and flowing more or less directly westward to the South Atlantic, forming as it does so the southern borders of (from east to west) Orange Free State, British Bechuanaland, and German South-West Africa.

Orange River Station: See the CAMEO at 10th November.

Paardeberg (Drift) [coordinates]: Mountain (with nearby Modder River railway crossing [coordinates]), 25 miles east of Magersfontein and two miles west of Koedoesrand.

Pretoria [map, etc.]: Capital city of the South African Republic/Transvaal.

Riet River [map, etc.]: A 180-mile-long tributary of the Vaal River arising in the south-eastern highlands of Orange Free State and flowing more or less directly westward to receive the Modder River (from the north) at Jacobsdal and then the Vaal River (also from the north) 50 miles west of Kimberley.
**South African Republic/Transvaal**: The northernmost, administratively Boer, province of what is nowadays the Republic of South Africa, including the towns of Pretoria and Johannesburg.

**Stormberg**: Railway junction town on the East London-Bloemfontein railway.

**Tugela River**: A 312-mile-long river arising in the Drakensberg Mountains west of Colenso and flowing more or less directly eastward to the Indian Ocean, thus horizontally bisecting Natal.

**Vaal River**: A 696-mile-long river arising near Johannesburg and flowing more or less directly south-westward to join the Orange River near Kimberley, forming as it does so the border between Orange Free State and the South African Republic/Transvaal.

**Vryburg**: Railway facility on the Cape Town-Mafeking-Bulawayo, some 160 miles north of Kimberley.

The Imperial forces are commanded initially by Sir Redvers H. Buller [Wikipedia biography=>30th October], but serious reverses in the field in December [=10th/11th/15th] cause him to be replaced [=23rd December] by Sir Frederick S. Roberts ("Bobs"), Baron Roberts of Kandahar [Earl Roberts] 1901 [1880 (1st September)<=next entry] with a comparatively young Lord Kitchener [1898 (2nd September)<=1900 (18th January)] as his Chief of Staff. The war begins with the highly mobile, highly motivated, and well-led Boer forces running all sorts of rings about the more pedestrian Imperial commanders, but then progressively sees them having to go on the defensive as the British deploy ever greater numbers against them. Here are the main events (in date order within campaign) ...

**THE INITIAL BOER OFFENSIVE (OCTOBER 1899)**: The first phase of the war sees the Boers strike westward toward Mafeking and Kimberley, and eastward toward Ladysmith. The main actions under this heading are ...

- The Siege of Mafeking, 1899-1900; The Siege of Kimberley, 1899-1900; The Battle of "Glencoe"/Talana Hill, 1899; The Battle of Elandslaagte, 1899; The Battle of Lombard's Kop, 1899; The Battles of Nicholson's Nek and Ladysmith, 1899; The Siege of Ladysmith, 1899-1900

**THE RELIEF COLUMN PHASE**: Following the initial Boer attacks the available British forces are divided into three axes of advance according to their ports of supply, as follows (from west to east) ...

**CAPE TOWN-KIMBERLEY ADVANCE (NOVEMBER 1899-FEBRUARY 1900)**: This advance under Paul S. Methuen, 3rd Baron Methuen [Wikipedia biography=>10th November] is transported north-eastward out of Cape Town via the rail junction at De Aar toward the Orange River, from there to proceed via Magersfontein in an attempt to relieve the siege at Kimberley. The main actions under this heading are ...

- The Modder River Crossing, 1899; Battle of Magersfontein, 1899; 1900; The Battle of Paardeberg, 1900; The Battle of Bloemfontein, 1900; The Battle of Sanna’s Post, 1900; The Relief of Kimberley, 1900

**THE CAPE MIDLANDS [PORT ELIZABETH/EAST LONDON] ADVANCE (NOVEMBER 1899)**: This advance under Sir William F. Gatacre [Wikipedia biography=>10th December] is transported northward out of Port Elizabeth and East London via the rail junctions at Noupoort and Stormberg toward the Orange River, from there to threaten Bloemfontein from the south. As we shall shortly be seeing [=10th December], the Boers get to Stormberg first, severely delaying progress. The main action under this heading is ...

- The Battle of Stormberg, 1899 [NB: By the time Stormberg had been retaken by the British, the Cape Town-Kimberley advance had become the main threat to Bloemfontein and the Cape Midlands advance was allowed to fizzle out.]
THE DURBAN-LADYSMITH ADVANCE (NOVEMBER 1899-FEBRUARY 1900): This advance under Buller himself is transported north-westward out of Durban toward Colenso, from there to organise the relief of Ladysmith. The main actions under this heading are ...

The Battle of Colenso, 1899; The Battle of Spion Kop, 1900; The Relief of Ladysmith, 1900

THE BRITISH COUNTER-OFFENSIVE (MARCH-NOVEMBER 1900): As reinforcements arrive from home the British gradually drive the Boers back into their homelands, capture their capital cities, take large numbers of prisoners of war, and eventually create pro-British replacement administrations. The main actions under this heading are ...

The Relief of Mafeking, 1900; The Battle of Bloemfontein, 1900; The Annexation of Orange Free State, 1900; The Capture of Pretoria, 1900; The Capture of Johannesburg, 1900; The Annexation of the Transvaal, 1900

THE GUERRILLA PHASE (DECEMBER 1900-MAY 1902): A significant number of Boers remain in the saddle and begin a guerrilla war. The British respond with the ominously named "Sweeping", that is to say, by adopting scorched earth tactics, systematically destroying farms and townships and confining the population in concentration camps. The main actions under this heading are ...

De Wet's Winter Campaign, 1900-1901; The Sweeping, 1901; The Treaty of Vereeniging, 1902

The overall outcome of the war is a British victory. The war is noteworthy in the present context (a) for demonstrating the relative ineffectiveness of regular infantry against highly motivated guerrillas, (b) for developments in field communications [see CAMEO below], (c) for opening a long and bitter debate as to how best (if at all) to use cavalry in the age of modern weaponry, (d) for the re-appearance in the war zone of Winston Churchill [5th May<=15th November], this time as a war correspondent, and (e) for the by-now-inevitable camp-following of movie-makers [=>next entry]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

CAMEO - SIGNALLING IN THE SECOND BOER WAR: The war saw the British relying on the established Wheatstone Automatic telegraph. The signallling service was directed by Richard Lionel Hippisley [no convenient biography=>1908], Director of Telegraphs for the Royal Engineers. Some 18,000 miles of cable were laid during the war (Royal Signals Museum website), and despite constantly having to cope with cut wires successfully delivered 13,500,000 messages. Not that all of these arrived intact at their destination: Philip Pienaar, one Boer signallist, once got "the entire plan of campaign for the next four weeks" by tapping General Hamilton's telegraph line (Pienaar, 1902, cited in Lee, 1985). The British also experimented with sending their messages in arcane languages such as Hindustani (Deacon, 1980), a ploy repeated by the U.S. Army with Choctaw in WW1 and then by the Navajo "windtalkers" in WW2 (better known, perhaps, thanks to the 2002 movie of the same name). The first theatre trialling of wireless telegraphy was by the British in 1899, although no substantive content was carried. A Boer order for six wireless sets from Guglielmo Marconi's [1897<=23rd October] German rivals Siemens and Halske [=1853], was impounded as contraband upon arrival at Cape Town (IEEE website). [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

CAMEO - PLAYING TO THE LARGER AUDIENCE: The war saw both the British and the Boers appealing for help from overseas. Ireland and Scandinavia are well-represented in the Boer ranks, and Canada and Australia send detachments to serve with the British.

1899 [12th October] Seeing is Believing [LX - The Cinema at War (The Boer War)]: [Continued from 30th May but in the context of the preceding entry] The cameramen move quickly. A Cape Colonist himself but in Britain on business, Edgar M. Hyman [no convenient biography=>8th December] embarks for Cape Town on 23rd September, there to spend a month
filming troop disembarkations. **Benett-Stanford** [1898 (2nd September)<=>10th November] sails for South Africa on 7th October and **Dickson** [1893 (9th May)<=>10th November] on 14th. They are soon joined by **Joseph Rosenthal** [Who's Who of Victorian Cinema biography=>8th December], **Villiers** [1898 (2nd September)<=>1904 (8th February)], **Charles S. Goldman** [Previously Goldmann; Wikipedia biography=>1900 (28th May)], [Sir?]??** Walter C. Beevor** [Who's Who of Victorian Cinema biography=>10th November], and **C. Rider Noble** [no convenient biography=>1900 (1st September)].

**ASIDE:** For a fuller history of these arrivals see Bottomore (2007, Chapter IX [clickable at 1897 (18th April)]). For their individual affiliations see below. Beevor was a Surgeon-Major who had, a year before, taken portable X-Ray apparatus on an up-country expedition in India, and so was well qualified technically. Moreover as a serving soldier he suffered less censorship than did the civilian cameramen (albeit the hottest actions were unfilmed because his primary duty was to his wounded). For a full list of the resulting 21 **R. W. Paul Company** [see below] reels see Bottomore [ibid].

Back in Britain, meanwhile, the **British Mutoscope and Biograph Company** [IMDB factsheet] (Dickson), the **R. W. Paul Company** [1896 (21st March)<=>20th October] (Beevor), the **Warwick Trading Company** [1898 (15th March)<=>8th December] (Benett-Stanford, Hyman, Rosenthal, and Goldman), and the impresario **Walter Gibbons** [Wikipedia biography] (Noble) put their respective editing teams on alert, and the **Mitchell and Kenyon Company** [1897 (27th November)<=>1900 (14th June)] starts to produce re-enacted footage from an ersatz *Veldt* around Blackburn, Lancashire. In the event, however, results are less than earth-shattering, as Bottomore (2007) explains ...

"Cameramen (and war correspondents in general) had to contend with two major difficulties in trying to report on or represent the Boer War. Firstly, there was the problem of capturing on film a mobile, fast-moving, conflict where the foe was using accurate, long-range, weaponry [...]. This problem had confronted cameramen in previous wars, but it was more acute in South Africa. Britain's enemy here were determined, skilled marksmen, using the latest artillery and rifles, and, knowing the landscape, they could find places of concealment. Many British soldiers complained that [...] they never actually saw a Boer" (op. cit., pIX.2).

Bottomore also notes how the War Office was concerned from the outset that the new medium was somehow more intrusive than conventional press representation had previously been, thus ...

"The cameramen were subject to censorship and regulation as much, if not more, than the print correspondents, and it seems to have affected the two main cameramen of the war, Rosenthal and Dickson, more than the others. [...] Both had to obtain special passes to film and to travel. [...] A re-think about censorship of the press and visual media was going on in the British military by the middle of 1900. The first indications of this came in June, after the fall of Pretoria and its occupation. At this point, most of the journalists and cameramen left [...] being told that if they stayed, 'they would not be allowed to send any matter' [...]. Just a month later, the chief censor [**Lord Stanley** [preceding entry<=>1912 (27th June)]] wrote a report for [**Lord Roberts** [preceding entry<=>23rd December]] assessing how press censorship had fared during the war, and was not complimentary: he stated that from the start of the campaign there had been no proper regulation for either censors or correspondents, nor any uniformity for the granting of licences, nor any guidance about which newspapers were allowed to have correspondents at the front [...]. Early the following year the army produced another report about war correspondents, again with negative conclusions about film cameramen. It was written by Major W. D. Jones[1] [...] and over the following weeks the report was circulated and received comments, notably by Lord Stanley. The interesting point for our purposes is that, while Jones and Stanley disagreed about how strictly press correspondents should be controlled, they agreed that film cameramen were unwanted. [...] And they attained their wish, at least for the remainder of the [war], for no more cameramen covered [the war] after the end of 1900 [... just as it] was entering its most controversial phase - with farms being burned and civilians removed to concentration camps" (ibid., pp3-4).
1899 [13th October-1900 (17th May)] **The Siege of Mafeking:** This 217-day siege is fought out as a largely self-contained [Mafeking being the most remote of all the battlefields of the Second Boer War] defensive action within the Second Boer War [<=12th October] between a besieging Boer army under **Jacobs P. Snyman** [historical society biography] and the British forces in and around **Mafeking** under **Baden-Powell** [1895 (??th December)]<=17th May]. Baden-Powell has around 2300 mainly irregular and auxiliary troops at his disposal to hold a six-mile-long perimeter, but deploys them with carefully targeted aggression and no little military cunning so that the numerically superior Boers never mount an all-out attack. The eventual outcome is the successful relieving of the town on 17th May 1900 [see separate entry]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1899 [14th October-1900 (15th February)] **The Siege of Kimberley:** This 124-day siege is fought out as part of the Cape Town-Kimberley Campaign of the Second Boer War [<=12th October] between a besieging Boer army under **Cornelius Wessels** [no convenient biography] and the British forces in and around the mining town of **Kimberley** under **Robert Kekewich** [Wikipedia biography]. Also present is mining tycoon-politician **Cecil Rhodes** [<=1895 (29th December)]. Hostilities begin on 12th October when Boer commandos cut the railway lines north and south of the town. Faced with superior numbers the British then gradually withdraw within a 14-mile-long defensive perimeter. Kekewich has around 3500 troops at his disposal (including irregulars and auxiliaries), but deploys them with carefully targeted aggression and no little military cunning so that the numerically superior Boers never mount an all-out attack. The eventual outcome is the successful relieving of the town by a cavalry column under [Sir]1900 **John French** [1st Earl of Ypres]922 [Wikipedia biography=21st October] (of whom much, much, more in due course) on 15th February 1900. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1**ASIDE:** It has been suggested that Rhodes deliberately engineered his presence at Kimberley during the siege, calculating that it would raise the town's claim to military protection. He had, during the preceding two decades been gun-running to the Matabele in return for concessions to "dig for stones", and systematically buying the silence of critics both in South Africa and back in Britain (Meredith, 2007). Meredith, M. (2007). *Diamonds, Gold, and War*. London: Simon and Schuster.

1899 [17th October] **Panama Switches Empires [VIII - The Thousand Days' War]:** [Continued from 28th April 1885] With the 1895 rebellion a fading memory, the Panamanian separatist movement sees another opportunity when civil war breaks out across Colombia as a whole. On the one side in this greater conflict are the **Partido Liberal Colombiano** (PLC) under Generals **Rafael Uribe Uribe** [Wikipedia biography] and **Benjamin Herrera** [Wikipedia biography], and on the other side are the **Partido Conservador Colombiano** (PCC) under figurehead President **Manuel Sanclente** [Wikipedia biography]. Much of the fighting takes place on the Colombian mainland, and sees the PLC progressively...
beaten back by the PCC [sub-thread continues at 4th November 1902 ...] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1899 [20th October] Seeing is Believing [LXI - The Cinema at War (The Battle of "Glencoe"/Talana Hill)]: [Continued from 12th October] This battle is fought as part of the Durban-Ladysmith Campaign of the Second Boer War [<=12th October] between a Boer army under Lukas J. Meyer [Wikipedia biography] and a British brigade under Sir William Penn Symons [Wikipedia biography] who dies 23rd October of wounds received this day. The Boers have crossed out of their homelands and the first British resistance is encountered at Dundee [maplink at 12th October]. The Boers assemble on Talana Hill just to the north of the town, and the British then spend the day driving them from it, but suffer such disproportionately high casualties that they are ordered to abandon Dundee and fall back on Ladysmith. The battle is noteworthy in the present context for the speed with which the R. W. Paul Company [12th October<=>10th November] releases a battle-re-enactment reel entitled "The Battle of Glencoe" [IMDb entry: footage lost] [sub-thread continues at November ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** "SIGNALLERS" BECOME "TELEGRAPHISTS" **********

1899 [20th October] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XXIX - The HMS Vernon Experiments]: [Continued from 17th May] [Sir] Henry Bradwardine Jackson [Wikipedia biography] is given command of the Royal Navy's new technology centre at HMS Vernon [Shore Establishment] [1895 (23rd April)<=>1904 (31st March)] in order to supervise customer prototyping of the latest Marconi Company [1897 (20th July)<=>1900 (17th March)] equipment [continues at 23rd October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

ASIDE - IMPLEMENTING NEW TECHNOLOGY: It is important to realise that the trialling of any new technology involves people every bit as much as equipment. Accordingly much of Jackson's time was spent designing job descriptions, career pathways (wig-wag "signallers" now become "telegraphists"), aptitude testing, training regimes, and the like. HMS Vernon trained selected officers and men while a separate school aboard the 1810-vintage Impregnable/Caledonia [Training Ship] added wireless-relevant skills to its boy cadet curriculum. A third school at HMS Ganges [Shore Establishment] [Wikipedia shipography], Felixstowe, took over from Impregnable after the latter was scrapped in 1905. We recommend Godfrey Dykes' website for the fuller detail. HMS Ganges is nowadays a heritage museum [museum website].

ASIDE - AN UNEXPLAINED CURIOUSITY: Jackson's naval career between 1899 and 1915 makes strange reading, with regular job changes, sometimes only weeks apart, and reports of his being difficult to get on with. And yet he was a technical expert in wireless warfare and made it to Third Sea Lord in 1905 [=1905 (7th February)] and First Sea Lord in 1915 [=1915 (27th May)]. We presume therefore that part of his wireless expertise lay in signals intelligence [= e-spying, and how best to do it] rather than in the technicalities of ship-to-ship communication per se. See, for example, the HMS Diana intercept at 1904 (28th January).

1899 [21st October] The Battle of Elandslaagte: This battle is fought as part of the Durban-Ladysmith Campaign of the Second Boer War [<=12th October] between a Boer army under Johannes H. M. Kock [Wikipedia biography] and a British cavalry column under French [14th October<=>25th October]. Elandslaagte [map etc.] is a railway station 10 miles to the north-east of Ladysmith, and had been occupied by a Boer Kommando1 on 19th October. French has been tasked with retaking it. After an intensive firefight the outcome is a British tactical victory with both sides suffering some 250 casualties. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1ASIDE - THE KOMMANDOS: Unlike the modern word "commando", the Boer term Kommando does not in itself imply a special forces unit, but rather a battalion-sized force of irregulars drawn from a particular geographical region.
1899 [23rd October-4th November] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XXX - The U.S. Navy Wireless Trials]:** [Continued from 20th October] The U.S. Navy tests wireless communications between experimental wireless installations on USS *New York* [Wikipedia shipography] and USS *Massachusetts* [Wikipedia shipography]. Assisted by Guglielmo Marconi [12th October ASIDE] in person the Navy's main concern is with interference between two simultaneously keyed transmitters. Marconi reassures them that the necessary system upgrades are imminent. Nevertheless no substantive contract is forthcoming from the Bureau of Equipment [continues at 22nd November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1899 [25th October] **The Battle of Lombard's Kop:** Following the withdrawal from Dundee [<=20th October] this battle is fought as part of the Durban-Ladysmith Campaign of the Second Boer War [<=12th October] between three British columns under Geoffrey G. Grimwood [no convenient biography], Ian Hamilton [no convenient biography], and French [21st October<=30th October], and the Boer advanced guard presently digging in on the hills to the north and to the east of Ladysmith. The Boers are manoeuvring for tactical advantage of the approaches to Ladysmith, while the British are attempting to deny them the heights of Pepworth Hill (Hamilton) and Long Hill (Grimwood). "Just about everything that could go wrong [for the British] did" (Rickard, 2007 online), with most units getting lost in the bush during the night approach, and then getting pinned down come daybreak by fire from the heights. The outcome is that the British are driven from the field in disarray and retreat within the defences at Ladysmith. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1899 [28th October] **The Australians Embark:** The first of around 16,000 Australian volunteers embark for the voyage to South Africa, although in the event they will be piped at the post by a detachment of New South Wales Lancers who had been training in Britain when war was declared and are already en route for Cape Town. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1899 [30th October] **The Battles of Nicholson's Nek and Ladysmith:** Following the setback at Lombard's Kop [<=25th October], these battles are fought as part of the Durban-Ladysmith Campaign of the Second Boer War [<=12th October] between a Boer army under Piet Joubert [Wikipedia biography=>next entry] and Louis Botha [Wikipedia biography=>15th December] and the British forces in and around Ladysmith under Sir George S. White [Wikipedia biography=>next entry]. The Boers are already established on the heights to the north and east of the town, namely (one mile due north) Surprise Hill and Bell's Kopje, (two miles further north) Tchrengula Hill, (a mile beyond that) Nicholson's Nek, (two miles to the north-east) Pepworth Hill, (three miles further to the north-east) Long Hill, and (four miles to the east) Lombard's Kop. The British occupy a roughly circular perimeter which links together half a dozen lesser hills like beads on a string. As darkness falls on 29th October a column commanded by Frank Carleton [no convenient biography] is sent out to make its way to Nicholson's Nek, there to support an attack on the nearer heights by White's main force. Again, however, there are problems with the night manoeuvres and at daybreak Carleton has only made it as far as Tchrengula Hill, where - being overlooked from Nicholson's Nek - he has to endure 30th October under well-observed fire. White's main attack fares little better and the overall outcome is a convincing Boer victory with heavily disproportionate British casualties (400 British killed or wounded plus a further 800 taken prisoner, against 200 Boer killed or wounded). White now has little option but to man the perimeter at Ladysmith and prepare to be besieged. The final train out of the town (on 2nd November) takes with it the cavalry commander French [25th October<=1900 (11th February)] and [another name to
bear in mind] his Adjutant [Sir] Douglas Haig [1st Earl Haig] who can be put to better use organising the cavalry units presently arriving from Britain. Leaving siege lines to keep the defenders hemmed in, Botha now shifts mobile units toward the British railhead at Colenso, on the Tugela River 15 miles to the south, in order to forestall any relief effort [continues next entry ...].

1899 [30th October-1900 (28th February)] The Siege of Ladysmith: [Continued from preceding entry] This 118-day siege is the focal event of the Durban-Ladysmith Campaign of the Second Boer War [<=12th October]. It is fought out between the Boer army under Joubert and the British forces in and around Ladysmith under White. White has around 8000 troops at his disposal, but they are well handled in defence and the Boers never mount an all-out attack [but see the entry for the Battle of Wagon Hill at 1900 (5th January)]. The eventual outcome is the successful relieving of the town by a column under Buller on 28th February 1900. The siege is noteworthy in the present context (a) for the deployment (until their gas supplies run out) of a Royal Engineers observation balloon troop, and (b) for the public interest back home in the will-they-won't-they relief efforts. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** MOVIE CONTINUITY IS BORN **********
********** MOVIE CONTINUITY IS BORN **********
********** MOVIE CONTINUITY IS BORN **********

1899 [November] Seeing is Believing [LXII - Early Motion Pictures (Technical Developments)]: [Continued from 20th October] The latest screening at George A. Smith's St. Ann's pleasure garden in Hove is a one-minute reel entitled "The Kiss in the Tunnel" [IMDB entry]. This work is noteworthy in the present context because it will in due course be identified as a successful early experiment in cinematographical (and therefore psychological) "continuity": YouTube the film now and note how three railway sequences (from Hepworth Studios [1896 (March)<=1900 (24th January)]) have been edited around a central sequence filmed by Smith himself, to give a single coherent narrative. In France, meanwhile, Méliès [1898 (1st May)<=1900 (15th April)] is having something of a box-office success with his first multiple-scene feature, the six-minute-long "Cendrillon" [in English as "Cinderella"; IMDB entry; YouTube it now] [sub-thread continues at 10th November ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

ASIDE - CONTINUITY ERRORS: Continuity errors in movies are nowadays so common that they have become bread-and-butter to light entertainment TV [YouTube tutorial].

RESEARCH ISSUE - CONTINUITY ERRORS: The human cognitive system is notoriously bad at detecting all but the most glaring continuity errors, as can readily be demonstrated: STUDENT EXERCISE - CONTINUITY ERRORS: Check out this self-explanatory YouTube. See also and compare STOP TRICK [=>1900 (15th April)], where similar cognitive processes are involved.

********** HISTORICALLY SIGNIFICANT NEUROPSYCHOLOGY **********
********** HISTORICALLY SIGNIFICANT NEUROPSYCHOLOGY **********
********** HISTORICALLY SIGNIFICANT NEUROPSYCHOLOGY **********

1899 [4th November] Locating Brain Function [VI - Freud (1899)]: [Continued from 1895 (23rd September)] Sigmund Freud [1895 (23rd September)<=1901 (2nd January)] publishes "Die Traumdeutung" [in English (1913) as "The Interpretation of Dreams"], in which he sets out his theoretical interpretation of hundreds of dream case studies. His conclusion, in short, is that dreams typically reflect an unconscious "dream-wish" "which dates from the infantile life and is in a state of repression" (1913 Translation, p450) [continues at 1901 (2nd January) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]
The Modder River Crossing: This river crossing under fire is fought as part of the Cape Town-Kimberley Campaign of the Second Boer War between Lord Methuen's division and a Boer army under Piet Cronjé and Jacobus de la Rey. Methuen is heavily reliant on infantry and totally dependent on supply by rail, whereas the more lightly equipped Boer Kommandos fight as dragoons, that is to say, as cavalry when manoeuvring but as infantry when in action. This, together with the lack of water in (and maps of) the bush, makes Boer rail-blocks difficult to outflank. Methuen's first act is therefore to establish a forward headquarters at Orange River Station ...

CAMEO/RECOMMENDED READING - ORANGE RIVER STATION: Orange River Station was (and, as Oranjertvier, still is) a railway halt on the southern bank of the Orange River, six miles east of Hopetown, at the railway bridge on the De Aar-Kimberley leg of the Cape Town-Kimberley-Bulawayo Railway. It will soon become a tented barracks, and supply depot under the command of Sir Henry H. Settle. Later in the war the facilities will be extended to include one of the largest Concentration Camps used during the "Sweepings" [1899 (1st September)]. There is much to be learned from Pelteret's virtual tour of the locality (check out especially the photograph of the blockhouse guarding the railway bridge, a fortified sentry post not at all dissimilar to those guarding the police stations and checkpoints of Northern Ireland 80 years later). We also strongly recommend a 1996 paper by the historian Stephen M. Miller entitled "Lord Methuen and the British Advance to the Modder River" (Miller, 1996 online); also Smit and Janse van Rensburg's (2014 online) analysis of the influence of the terrain on the fighting.

Methuen's moves forward from Orange River Station on 21st November. His first objective is a Boer rail-block 15 miles up the line at Belmont, where some 2000 men of the Kommandos of Jacobus Prinsloo and G? van der Merwe are awaiting them. When, following a pre-dawn approach, the British attack on 23rd November the Boer sharpshooters manage to inflict some 200 casualties on them. Then, under mounting pressure from Methuen's two full brigades, they simply remount and fall back to a similarly prepared position at Graspan, eight miles further north. Again an attack has to be methodically prepared, again, when delivered on 25th November, casualties are heavy, and again the Boers simply fall back to prepared positions (at Enslin, five miles north of Graspan). The final line of defence south of the Modder River itself (13 miles beyond Enslin) is a five-mile-wide entrenchment straddling the railway as it approaches the railway bridge. The battle here takes place on 28th November, beginning before dawn but faltering once caught in the open after daybreak. The Boers eventually withdraw, but only after inflicting some 400 British casualties. Their next stop will be at Magersfontein, five miles north of the river ...

ASIDE - TACTICS, OLD AND NEW: The Boers had recently armed themselves with a consignment of Mauser M1895 for a full run-down, which, firing smokeless rounds, was ideal for firing from concealed positions. Crucially, this weapon was already exposing serious deficiencies in British infantry tactics, thus (internal references omitted) ...

"At Belmont, Methuen [...] relied on the basic tenets of [...] classic nineteenth century warfare. Accordingly, he would seek to get his troops close enough to the enemy to conduct a bayonet or 'cold-steel' charge. Although [some commanders] argued that fire action was no longer just a preparation for the bayonet charge but the crux of the attack itself, most of the British Army, trained during an earlier time when rifles did not shoot as far and as accurately, when [powder smoke] obscured vision, and before
magnitudes increased the rate of fire, relied on, as their main tactic in battle, that the charge would be preceded by volley fire. Therefore, the purpose of firepower was simply to establish a position close enough to the enemy to enable a bayonet charge to be launched. Volley fire had proven very effective in Africa and Asia [... but, increasingly, militarily critics advocated the use of independent fire. But independent fire in extended order, to be successful, required properly trained and drilled troops. Officers were less able to command the individual soldier as the firepower of weapons improved and lives extended along wider fronts. Better training and drill were needed, not only to keep up with the handling of modern and more advanced weaponry, but also to fill the gap left behind by the departure from close order which heretofore had provided good morale. This improved training was never adequately provided. No drill prepared the British troops to meet the challenge of the Boers and their new tactics” (Miller, op. cit., pp4-5 in our offprint).

More ominously ...

"For the first time, British troops in the open faced the full fire of modern weapons. The effects were devastating. No matter how good the British soldier was, he could not withstand modern firepower. The frontal assault as the main tactic for conducting a battle should have been laid to rest by the British Army at the Modder River; it was not” (ibid., p17 in our offprint).

Thus although the British were armed with the Lee-Metford [<=1895] and the Magazine Lee-Enfield (MLE) [dito], which in theory were entirely comparable to the Mauser, they did not exploit the true potential of these new weapons. The Boers had also purchased some state-of-the-art Krupp field guns (although here they made the mistake of sourcing only high explosive ammunition, rather than shrapnel) and Creusot howitzers [see Hall (1971 online) for a full run-down].

1899 [10th November-8th December] Seeing is Believing [LXIII - The Cinema at War (Filming on the Orange and Modder Rivers)]: [Continued cinematographically from November, but in the military context of the preceding entry] The events on the Orange and Modder Rivers are scooped by Benett-Stanford [<=12th October], who has got himself embedded with the 1st Bn Northumberland Fusiliers (the ancestral 5th Regiment of Foot), part of 9th Brigade. Bottomore (op. cit.) credits him with "The Fifth Northumberland Fusiliers Digging Entrenchments" and "The Passing of the Armoured Train" [released 5th December; no clear IMDB entry; footage survives but not online as such, although possibly incorporated into the several British Pathé compilations readily available on YouTube], filmed at Orange River Station on or about 12th November. Moving forward at the end of the month with the Northumberlands' Headquarters Company he then adds "Troops Passing Over Modder River by Train" [IMDB entry; footage incorporated into this British Pathé compilation] and "Lancers Crossing the Modder River" [IMDB entry; footage incorporated into this British Pathé compilation], both available early in the New Year. Even closer to the fighting (as a serving Medical Officer with the Scots Guards, part of the Guards Brigade), Beever [12th October<=1900 (18th February)] was kept too busy to film during the advance out of Orange River Station (his equipment wagon would have had low priority within the Guards Brigade’s impedimenta). His first offerings are therefore from the first week of December as his di...
film to George A. Smith [November<>1900 (28th February [ASIDE])] for processing, with the prints subsequently being commercially distributed by the Warwick Trading Company [12th October<>1900 (28th May)], whilst Beevor has a similar arrangement with the R. W. Paul Company [20th October<>15th November] [sub-thread continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1899 [15th November] Seeing is Believing [LXIV - The Cinema at War ("The Battle of Muswell Hill")]: [Continued cinematographically from preceding entry, but militarily from the one before that] On 15th November the Boers south of Colenso ambush a British armoured train moving up from the town of Frere [map, etc.]. This train is manned by some 120 troops, accompanied by the war correspondent Winston Churchill [12th October<>1900 (12th February] ...

ASIDE: It was Churchill's second such outing, and his telegraphed account of the first was appearing in British newspapers at about the same time as the second was coming to grief.

However as it approaches the Chieveley railway halt [coordinates], still seven miles south of Colenso, it runs into a Boer ambush and decides to return to Frere. The Boers, of course, have planned for exactly this eventuality and a detachment has got in behind the train and sabotaged the track. The leading wagon is derailed and the survivors set about clearing the wreckage under heavy fire, only abandoning their efforts when the wounded outnumber the able-bodied. Churchill is amongst 60 or so survivors taken prisoner. The event is noteworthy in the present context because it will be re-enacted in short order by the R. W. Paul Company [10th November<>1900 (18th February)], and released on 9th December as "Wrecking an Armoured Train" [IMDB entry; footage lost]. The film was shot "on a siding to the north of London" (Bottomore, 2007, X, p5), leading it to be referred to by those in the know as the "Battle of Muswell Hill" [sub-thread continues at 1900 (11th February) ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

********** AN OPPORTUNITY LOST **********
********** AN OPPORTUNITY LOST **********
********** AN OPPORTUNITY LOST **********

1899 [21st November] The Kaiser Visits His Grandmother: Kaiser Wilhelm II [30th May<>1900 (20th June)] attends a Windsor Castle banquet during a family visit to his grandmother Queen Victoria [1887 (20th June)<=>1901 (2nd February)]. Colonial Secretary Joseph Chamberlain [7th August<=>1901 (25th October)] takes the opportunity of suggesting an Anglo-German Alliance of some sort. Much to Chamberlain's irritation, however, the Germans do not take up the offer (preferring instead to begin discussions on their distinctly confrontational Second Naval Bill a few days later). [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1899 [22nd November] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XXXI - American Marconi]: [Continued from 23rd October] To help him expand into the American marketplace Guglielmo Marconi [23rd October<>1900 (26th April)] founds the Marconi Wireless Telegraph Company for America [Wikipedia factsheet] [continues at 1900 (8th February) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]


********** BATTLE #1 IN THE BRITISH ARMY'S BLACK WEEK **********

1899 [8th-10th December] The Battle of Stormberg: This battle is fought as part of Gatacre's Cape Midlands Campaign of the Second Boer War [eventually sidelined]
October] between a Boer army under Jan Hendrik Olivier [no convenient biography] and Gatacre’s spearhead units. The Boers have seized the town to prevent the British using the East London-Bloemfontein railway to support the main offensive out of Cape Town further west. Gatacre assembles such troops as are available (about a half brigade) but thanks to poor staff-work the outcome is an easy Boer victory and a disrupted British advance. The British casualty rate (mainly prisoners-of-war) is close on 50%, [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** BATTLE #2 IN THE BRITISH ARMY’S BLACK WEEK **********
********** "A DRAWING-ROOM GENERAL’S MISTAKE"**********

1899 [11th December] The First Battle of Magersfontein: This battle is fought as part of Lord Methuen’s [10th November<=1900 (11th February)] Cape Town-Kimberley Campaign of the Second Boer War [<=12th October] between a Boer army under Cronjé [10th November<=1900 (11th February)] and De la Rey [10th November<=1900 (1st September)] and Methuen's spearhead units, namely the Highland Brigade, the Guards Brigade, and the 9th Brigade. The Boers have established a defensive line astride the Cape Town-Mafeking-Bulawayo Railway at Magersfontein [maplink at 12th October], five miles north of the Modder River, thus ...

"At the insistence of General [De la Rey], the Boers decided to take up defensive positions at a line of kopjes called Magersfontein. This placed them directly in Methuen's way, as the latter had to pass directly by Magersfontein via the railway line in order to reach Kimberley. The Boers, having learnt from their mistakes at Graspan and Enslin, would stay out of the kopjes this time around and dig their positions in front of the Magersfontein kopjes rather than on the hilltops" (Smit and Janse van Rensburg, op. cit., p127).

Following the disproportionate losses fighting his way forward from Belmont to the Modder River [<=10th November], Methuen is already short of some 2000 front-line fighters (some 25% of those immediately available). He is also taken by surprise by the Boers being out in front of the heights rather than on them, with the result that his troops are still in marching formation when first engaged. By nightfall the British will have suffered more than a thousand casualties and are pulling back to the Modder River to await reinforcements. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1,2ASIDE/RECOMMENDED VIEWING: Methuen has been heavily criticised by historians for following outdated rules rather too inflexibly, and Magersfontein was indeed his fourth costly frontal attack in a fortnight. But the British Army's outmoded tactics were compounded in this particular offensive by a lack of reconnaissance units, as a consequence of which the assault troops were routinely never in the right place at the right time. One survivor of the battle - a "Private Smith" of the Highland Brigade's Black Watch (the ancestral 42nd Regiment of Foot) - later commemorated the battle in the poem from which this entry's headline text is taken. Here are the last four lines of that piece (note the rank-and-file's sense of betrayal for lives squandered by command error and inefficiency, something we shall be seeing time and time again in WW1 poetry) ...

"Why weren't we told of the trenches?  
Why weren't we told of the wire?  
Why were we marched up in column,  
May Tommy Atkins enquire?"

This YouTube amateur documentary traces the ordeal of the Highland Brigade in some detail both in the local museum and on the battlefield itself. Click here to listen to the commemorative bagpipe lament entitled "The Highland Brigade at Magersfontein".

********** BATTLE #3 IN THE BRITISH ARMY’S BLACK WEEK **********

1899 [15th December] The Battle of Colenso: This battle is fought as part of the Durban-Ladysmith Campaign of the Second Boer War [<=12th October] between a Boer army under
Louis Botha [30th October<=>1900 (24th January)] and a British army four times its size under Buller [30th October<=>23rd December]. The Boers have dug themselves in along the northern banks of the Tugela River, blocking road and rail communication with the garrison at Ladysmith and cutting the telegraph lines...

**ASIDE:** Colenso retained line of sight to the hills around the Ladysmith perimeter, and was therefore able to communicate with the garrison there by heliograph by day and by lamp by night.

Buller has resolved to cross the river under fire but although in this he has not a lot of options his frontal attack is "spectacularly inept" (Meredith, 2007), resulting in a Boer victory with massively disproportionate British casualties (1138 against 38).  [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1899 [23rd December] **Seeing is Believing [LXV - The Cinema at War (Lord Roberts Takes Over)]:** [Continued from 15th November] Following the setbacks in Black Week [above], the British War Office appoints the veteran Lord Roberts [12th October<=>1900 (11th February)] to relieve Buller [15th December<=>1900 (24th January)] as Commander-in-Chief in South Africa (although he remains Officer Commanding for the operations in Natal). His arrival in Cape Town on 10th January will be filmed by Hyman [10th November<=>1900 (18th February)] and subsequently released as "Arrival and Reception of Lord Roberts" [IMDB entry; footage incorporated into this British Pathé compilation] [sub-thread continues at 1900 (24th January) ...].  [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1899 [28th December] **The Spanish-American War [XXXIX - Re-Interring the Maine's Dead]:** [Continued from 11th April 1899] At a special service in Arlington National Cemetery the remains of 163 of Maine's sailors and marines are re-interred following removal from their Cuban burial places [end of The Spanish-American War sub-thread]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1900 The British clergyman and Secretary of the Peace Society [<=1848] W. Evans Darby [no convenient biography] publishes "International Arbitration" [full text online], a history of humankind's various attempts to establish an international political and military peace-keeping force.  [THREAD = WW1 PACIFISM AND CONSCIENTIOUS OBJECTION]

1900 Arthur Junghans [<=1875] and Thomas Haller [Wikipedia biography] merge their respective family clock-making businesses as Junghans and Haller Clockmakers. Three years later they will have grown into the largest clockmaker in the world, and two years after that [continues at 1905 ...]. Around the same time the German chemist Carl Duisberg [Wikipedia biography] is promoted to C.E.O. of Friedrich Bayer and Company [1863 (2nd January)<=>1914 (1st October)], Duisberg will in due course be one of the prime movers in Germany's 1916 programme of deporting unemployed Belgian workers [=>1916 (24th October)], and also in the 1925 creation of I. G. Farben.  [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]

1900 The French chemist Victor Grignard [Wikipedia biography] starts to develop processes to help synthesise organic compounds to demand. The work will eventually win for him the 1912 Nobel Prize for chemistry.  [THREAD = THE INDUSTRIAL AND SCIENTIFIC REVOLUTIONS]

1900 The Swiss Army tests and adopts a 7.65mm variant of Georg Luger's new pistol [1898<=>1904] designating it the Ordonanzpistole OP00.  [THREAD = WW1 SMALL ARMS]
1900 A newly qualified physician named Carl Jung [Wikipedia biography] becomes an intern to Eugen Bleuler [1898-1908 (24th April)] at the University of Zurich's Burghölzli Clinic [<=1898]. His doctoral research will focus on the psychology of "occult phenomena" [continues at 1902 ...]. [THREAD = WWI MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1900 William Beardmore and Company [1888-1906 (23rd June)] takes over Napier's Shipyard [Wikipedia factsheet], Govan. Around the same time Beardmore's also start to develop a site at Dalmuir on the opposite bank of the River Clyde, naming it the Naval Construction Yard [no separate factsheet=>1906 (23rd June)]. It gets its first order, for HMS Agamemnon [=1906 (23rd June)], in 1904. [THREAD = THE WWI FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]


1900 Arthur Evans [<=1894] begins excavations at the Palace of Minos at Knossos, Crete. [THREAD = PRE-WW1 INTELLECTUAL RIVALRY]

1900 [1st January] German Naval Expansion [VII - The Bundesrath Incident]: [Continued from 1899 (13th March)] The SS Bundesrath [no convenient shipography] is boarded off the South African coast by HMS Magicienne [no convenient shipography=>17th March] and (deliberately too?) briefly inspected for war contraband. Since Germany is at this time a neutral country the event has serious diplomatic consequences [continues at 20th June ...]. [THREAD = THE WWI SURFACE NAVIES]

1900 [5th January] The Battle of Wagon Hill: This battle is fought as part of the Siege of Ladysmith [=1899 (30th October)] when a force of the Boers commanded by Cornelis Janse de Villiers [no convenient biography] launches a surprise assault on Wagon Hill and "Caesar's Camp" (jointly, the Platrand [coordinates]), the two southernmost hills in the British perimeter. The defenders are commanded by [Sir]I-ATER THIS YEAR Ian S. M. Hamilton [Wikipedia biography] (whom we shall be seeing again in the Dardanelles in 1915). The attackers inflict more than 400 British casualties, and then withdraw. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

RECOMMENDED VIEWING: Click here for an informative amateur documentary visit to the battlefield.

1900 [10th January] The twin-screw passenger liner SS Deutschland [Wikipedia shipography] is launched at A.G. Vulkan [1897 (4th May)<=1901 (30th March)], Stettin, for service with the Hamburg-America Line [1891 (22nd January)<=1912 (23rd May)]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1900 [13th January] The City Imperial Volunteers: The latest British volunteer corps to sail for South Africa is the City Imperial Volunteers [Wikipedia factsheet], comprising some 1400 men drawn from the banks and offices of London's financial district. Upon arrival they will be assigned to French's Cavalry Brigade [=11th February] (it will be they, for example, who provide the escort for "Cronjé's Surrender" [=18th February]). [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** THE "DUFFER" LOSES HIS LAST BATTLE **********

1900 [24th January] Seeing is Believing [LXVI - The Cinema at War (The Battle of Spion Kop)]: [Continued from 1899 (23rd December)] This battle is fought as part of the Durban-Ladysmith Campaign of the Second Boer War [=12th October] between a Boer army under Louis Botha [1899 (15th December)<=12th February] and a British army more than twice its size
under (overall) Buller [1899 (23rd December)<=12th February] and (5th Division) Sir Charles Warren [Wikipedia biography=>12th February]. In preparation for a major relief effort toward Ladysmith the British have decided that possession of Spion Kop is vital to crossing the Tugela River (the heights overlook the crossing place at Trichardt's Drift [coordinates]). In the event, however, a heavy overnight mist prevents Warren's assault battalions from making it all the way to the summit, and when the skies clear they find themselves overlooked and with minimal cover. They remain pinned down and taking casualties until nightfall permits the survivors to be withdrawn. Casualties are disproportionate (1500 British and 335 Boers). The relief effort is abandoned for the time being, and Warren is dismissed for bungling. Unable to get close to the action Rosenthal [1899 (10th November)<=11th February] contents himself with a lines of communication reel entitled "General Buller's Transport Train of Ox-Teams" [no clear IMDB entry; footage probably the final few seconds of this British Pathé compilation]. He has now been joined by Dickson [1899 (10th November)<=28th February], whose first dozen efforts attend to similar rear echelons activities. Worthy of mention are "Operations of Red Cross Ambulances after Spion Kop" [IMDB entry; YouTube it now], filmed on the Tugela, and "On to Ladysmith" [IMDB entry], filmed at Chieveley [maplink at 1899 (15th November)]. Back in Britain, meanwhile, Hepworth Studios [1899 (November)<=1901 (2nd February)] are putting the finishing touches to a light-hearted allegory entitled "The Conjuror and the Boer" [IMDB entry] [sub-thread continues at 11th February ...], [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1.2 ASIDE: The view that Sir Charles Warren was a bit of a duffer [idiomatic but no longer everyday English = not intellectually up to the allocated task] was unmistakably expressed by Buller in private correspondence.

RECOMMENDED VIEWING: Click here for an informative SATV documentary visit to the battlefield.

1900 [28th January] The Deutscher Fussball-Bund [= "German Football Association"] [modern corporate website (it's likely to be partly concealed by the "Wir sind Weltmeister!" banner)] is founded. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1900 [8th February] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XXXII - Stone's Pure Wave]: (Continued from 1899 (22nd November)) The American engineer John S. Stone [Wikipedia biography=>1904 (23rd February)] files for a U.S. Patent (eventually granted 2nd December 1902 as U.S. Patent 714756) under the title "Method of Selective Electric Signalling". The thrust of the 45 [!!] separate points of novelty claimed is to support a "multiple inductive oscillation circuit" capable of generating a pure signal waveform of known and controllable frequency [continues at 27th February ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

********** ROBERTS SWINGS A PERFECT RIGHT HOOK **********

1900 [11th-17th February] Seeing is Believing [LXVII - The Cinema at War (The Second Battle of Magersfontein and the Relief of Kimberley)]: (Continued cinematographically from 24th January and militarily from 1899 (11th December)) In the two months since the setback at the First Battle of Magersfontein (=1899 (11th December)) the British have been progressively building up reinforcements on the Modder River, so that when Lord Roberts [1899 (23rd December)<=18th February] arrives by train from Cape Town on 9th February he has available to him not just Methuen's [1899 (11th December)<=18th February] 1st Division (Guards Brigade and 9th Brigade) but also [Sir] Thomas Kelly-Kenny's [Wikipedia biography=>18th February] 6th Division (13th and 18th Brigades), [Sir] Charles Tucker's [Wikipedia biography=>18th February] 7th Division (14th and 15th Brigades) ...
CAMEO - 2ND BN SOUTH WALES BORDERERS: The South Wales Borderers (the ancestral 24th Regiment of Foot) recruited two "Voluntary Service" companies to fight as the 2nd Bn (the 1st Bn was stationed in India). The first of these "VSCs" is presently en route from Britain and will not be operational (with 15th Brigade) until May. The second will join them in 1901.

, Sir Henry E. Colvile's [Wikipedia biography - 18th February] 9th Division (Highland Brigade) ...

ASIDE: After its mauling on 11th December 1899 the Highland Brigade's replacement brigadier, [Sir] Hector A. MacDonald [Wikipedia biography - 18th February], had simply refused to serve any longer under Methuen.

, and French's [1899 (25th October) - 18th February] Mounted Division (Cavalry Brigade and two short brigades of mounted infantry) ...

ASIDE - MOUNTED INFANTRY IN THE BOER WAR: In order to offset the superior mobility of the Boer Kommandos, British infantry regiments were asked to train up companies of horsemen. These units fought as infantrymen, not cavalrymen - that is to say, on foot and with rifle and bayonet; they were not armed with lances or swords and executed no cavalry charges as such (they were cavalrymen without the attitude, in other words). There would be no equivalent units in the immobile war on the WW1 Western Front, but the tactical principle would be seen again (mutatis mutandis) in WW2 in the Wermacht's notion of the Panzergrenadier [comparison image], and in modern times in the APC [= "armoured personnel carrier"; [comparison image]].

, along with plentiful field and medium artillery. Roberts therefore has the luxury of being able to resource two axes of advance, namely (1) allowing Methuen's division to continue to threaten in a north-north-easterly direction along the Cape Town-Mafeking-Bulawayo railway line toward Kimberley, while (2) sending his fresh units in a surprise outflanking move to the right (soon to be named "The Great Flank March") to threaten Bloemfontein [maplink at 1899 (12th October)], the Orange Free State's capital (from where he would then be able to advance northward along the Bloemfontein-Pretoria railway line into the Transvaal). The main Boer field army on this front is presently maintaining its rail-block at Magersfontein [ditto], and would not be strong enough, Roberts calculated, to be able to divide its forces and defend Kimberley and Bloemfontein at the same time. The British attack begins late on 11th February with French's horse leading a dash eastward to seize a crossing over the Riet River ...

GEOGRAPHICAL ASIDE: The Magersfontein rail-block is situated five miles north of the confluence [coordinates] of the Riet (from the south-east) and the Modder (from the north-east) Rivers. Roberts was trying to get in behind those well-defended positions by crossing the Riet further to the south-east, and by then striking northward to the Modder. He had therefore assembled his fresh troops in the open country east of the railway line between Graspan [maplink at 12th October] and Enslin [ditto], from where it was a day's march eastward to the Waterval Drift [coordinates] crossing of the Riet, followed by a further 30 miles northward to the Klip Drift [coordinates] and Dekiel's Drift [coordinates] crossings of the Modder.

After two full days of forced marching Roberts' four divisions are strung out along a 50-mile-long arc of veldt, exhausted and logistically disorganised, but in precisely the right place tactically speaking. French's vanguard is across the Modder, Kelly-Kenny's 6th Division is close on his heels, and the 7th and 9th Divisions are holding open the lines of communication all the way back to Graspan. Roberts rests his troops on 14th February and on 15th sends French and 2000 men of his division to break through to Kimberley. At the same time, very much at the risk of being surrounded should he stay at
Magersfontein and Kimberley. Cronjé [1899 (11th December) => 12th February] abandons his positions there and executes an exceptionally clever forced march of his own toward the Paardeberg and Koedoesrand Hills [maplinks at 1899 (12th October)], deftly putting himself astride Roberts’ approach to Bloemfontein. This week-long battle is accordingly the first major British victory of the war, and one achieved by bold manoeuvre rather than by expensive frontal assault. As for the cameramen, the battle unfolds far too quickly for them to keep up, although Rosenthal [24th January => 13th March] (having transferred from the Natal Front following the events at Spion Kop [<=24th January]) does manage to “arrange” a reel entitled “A Skirmish with the Boers near Kimberley” [IMDB entry; footage incorporated into this British Pathé compilation] [sub-thread continues at 18th February ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1 ASIDE: Cronjé moved 5000 men and all the associated wagons across open country, across the rear of the cavalry en route for Kimberley and across the front of the infantry still on the Modder. The rumbling of their wagons was not heard because the British were moving transports of their own, and their dust was not spotted until the morning, by which time they were well on their way.

********** ROBERTS SWINGS ANOTHER RIGHT HOOK **********
********** THE DECISIVE BATTLE IN NATAL **********
********** THE DECISIVE BATTLE IN NATAL **********
********** THE DECISIVE BATTLE IN NATAL **********

1900 [12th-27th February] The Battle of the Tugela: In the month since the setback at Spion Kop [<=24th January] the British have been building up reinforcements on the Colenso Front in Natal, so that Buller [24th January => 28th February] now has available to him Sir Cornelius F. Clery’s [Wikipedia biography] 2nd Division (2nd and 4th Brigades), Arthur F. Hart’s [no convenient biography] 3rd Division (5th (Irish) and 6th (Fusilier) Brigades) ...

CAMERO - 1ST BN ROYAL WELCH FUSILIERS: The 1st Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers (the ancestral 23rd Regiment of Foot) arrived in South Africa in mid-November 1899 and was assigned, along with three other fusilier battalions, to [Sir] 6th (Fusilier) Brigade. The battalion’s Commanding Officer was Charles C. H. Thorold [no convenient biography => killed in action 24th February]. Notably it took part in the attacks north of the Tugela - see below - during which Thorold was mortally wounded.

, [Sir] 4th Division (7th and 8th Brigades) ...

ASIDE: Readers in detail should note that Lyttelton had until very recently commanded 4th Brigade [see London Gazette of 13th October 1899], part of 5th Division, and that his advancement had at this juncture yet to be officially acknowledged [see London Gazette of 22nd March 1900].

, Warren's [<=24th January] 5th Division (10th and 11th Brigades), and Douglas Cochrane, 12th Earl of Dun donald’s [Wikipedia biography] 3rd (Natal) Cavalry Brigade. The Boers are commanded by Louis Botha [24th January => 11th June], and have recently reduced their numbers by some 5000 men, sent to reinforce Cronjé [11th February => 18th February] on the Modder River.

GEOGRAPHICAL ASIDE: The railway town of Colenso [maplink at 1899 (12th October)] is situated a mile south of the Tugela River [map]. Check out both town and river on this Google Earth image, noting how the river runs east, then north, then east again, as it snakes between two significant massifs. Both of these massifs are subdivided in turn by tributary gorges and ravines, making the terrain in Natal totally different to that presently facing Roberts in Western Cape. The British were driven from the town during the Battle of Colenso [<=1899 (15th December)] and fell back to the railway halt at Chieveley [maplink at 1899 (15th November)]. The Boers have strong positions in the town and on both massifs. On their left (south of the river, east of the town) the named features include (from north-west to south-east)
Buller has decided to clear the Hlangwane massif before trying to cross the Tugela, and we shall allow Winston Churchill [1899 (15th November)⇒28th February] to explain his thinking in this ...

"Let us now consider the Boer left by itself. It ran in a chain of sangars [= rapidly erected breastworks of stones and/or sandbags], trenches, and rifle-pits, from Colenso village, through the scrub by the river, over the rugged hill at Hlangwani, along a smooth grass ridge we called 'The Green Hill', and was extended to guard against a turning movement on to the lofty wooded ridges of Monte Cristo and Cingolo and the neck joining these two features. Sir Redvers Buller's determination was to turn this widely extended position on its extreme left, and to endeavour to crumple it from left to right” (Churchill, 1900 [Project Gutenberg full text online]; Chapter 22). Churchill, W. L. S. (1900). London to Ladysmith via Pretoria. London: Longmans.

The battle begins on 12th February with Dundonald's cavalry aggressively scouting up onto Hussar Hill, and elements of 2nd, 3rd, and 5th Division assembling in the valleys south of Green Hill. On 14th February the cavalry fights its way forward onto Cingolo Hill, from where its horse artillery becomes able to cover a parallel advance by the infantry. The assault proper then begins on 17th February and by mid-afternoon on 18th February 2nd Brigade has taken the Monte Cristo Ridge, 4th Brigade and 6th (Fusilier) Brigade have taken Green Hill, and the Boers are falling back across the Tugela to the heights north of the river. Realising that his troops are too exhausted to pursue them Buller cautiously mops up in their wake, not re-occupying Colenso until 19th February and not arriving at the Tugela until late on 20th. On 21st February Buller's field engineers manage to throw a pontoon bridge across the Tugela at [approximate coordinates], allowing Wynne's 11th Brigade to fan out toward Wynne's Hill and Hart's 5th (Irish) Brigade to do likewise toward Hart's Hill. However the Boers now have the advantage of the heights again and the advances soon stall. The attack is then taken up by fresh brigades on 27th February, and, after heavy fighting, 6th (Fusilier) Brigade captures Pieter's Hill, 5th (Irish) Brigade takes Railway Hill, and 4th Brigade takes Hart's Hill. Driven off by a final bayonet charge the Boers abandon their positions here and around Ladysmith and begin a 60-mile withdrawal to fall-back positions in the Biggarsberg Mountains north of Dundee [maplink at 1899 (12th October)]. The British suffer around 2300 casualties (72 of whom are from 1/RWF) during the battle, the Boers significantly fewer. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]
is the showdown confrontation between the British advancing out of the Northern Cape and the Boers falling back from Magersfontein and Kimberley. The commanders are **Lord Kitchener** [1899 (12th October)=>20th November] and **Cronjé** [12th February=>10th March], respectively.

**ASIDE:** **Lord Roberts** [11th February=>10th March] had been taken ill a few days earlier and his Chief-of-Staff Kitchener was presently acting up.

Cronjé's *Kommandos* are centred around **Vendusie Drift** ([approximate coordinates](http://www-coordinate-maps.com/)), with reinforcements approaching from both the north-east (under **Jakobus F. De Beer** [no convenient biography]) and the south-east (under politicians-in-the-field **President Steyn** [<=1899 (12th October)] and **Christiaan R. De Wet** [Wikipedia biography=>10th March]). Kitchener therefore implements a double-pincer movement. The outer pincers stay three or four miles from the river and engage the Boer reinforcements, whilst the inner pincers hug closer to the river in a bid to drive Cronjé's outposts back into his laager so as to surround them. The key to both the inner and the outer southern pincers are some heights since named **Kitchener's Hill** ([coordinates](http://www-coordinate-maps.com/)), two miles south of Vendusie Drift. The keys to the inner and the outer northern pincers are **Gun Hill** ([coordinates](http://www-coordinate-maps.com/)), about two miles to the north-west of Vendusie, and the **Koedoesrand Ridge** ([coordinates](http://www-coordinate-maps.com/)), four miles to the north-east of same, where **French**'s [11th February=>7th March] cavalry - thanks to another highly effective forced march - has already placed itself across one the Boers' possible lines of retreat. Kitchener has available to him **Kelly-Kenny**'s [11th February=>10th March] 6th Division (12th Brigade and 18th Brigade [including 1st Bn Welch Regiment]) and **Colville**'s [<=11th February] 9th Division (Highland Brigade and 19th Brigade [including 1st Bn Gordon Highlanders and 2nd Royal Canadian Regiment]). The battle begins on 18th February - a date which will become known as "Bloody Sunday". Kitchener orders 9th Division to deploy **MacDonald**'s [<=11th February] Highland Brigade along the southern bank of the river (thus forming the inner pincer, south) whilst **Smith-Dorrien**'s [1879 (22nd January)=>1914 (21st August)] 19th Brigade ("probably the finest brigade in the whole army") crosses to the northern bank and moves toward the Boer outer perimeter on Gun Hill and in the **donga** (= a deep watercourse cut into a floodplain, and hence a very handy natural trench) which drains down from it into the Modder (forming the inner pincer, north). French's cavalry is already in position (as the outer pincer, north) to provide covering fire from Koedoesrand. The right of the Highland Brigade is covered by 6th Division attacking Kitchener's Hill and the approaches to **Vandenberg's Drift** ([coordinates](http://www-coordinate-maps.com/)), three miles past Vendusie. These manoeuvres result in a dozen or so battalion-sized firefights in which the tactical advantage is always with the well-sited Boer defenders, thus ....

**CAMEO - 1ST BN WELCH REGIMENT ON BLOODY SUNDAY:** I/WR arrived in Port Elizabeth on 4th February and was assigned to **Theodore T. Stephenson**'s [Wikipedia biography] 18th Brigade within Kelly-Kenny's 6th Division. On 18th February it advanced in company with **1st Bn Essex Regiment** toward the kopje overlooking Vandenbergs' Drift, while the other two battalions of the brigade advanced on Kitchener's Hill. These were direct attacks on experienced Boer marksmen and despite the good use of rush-and-drop tactics casualties steadily accumulate. By nightfall the battalion had suffered 78 casualties, and De Wet retained possession of Kitchener's Hill, which Kitchener had neglected to secure with sufficient strength ...

**ASIDE:** Kitchener's bungling at Paardeberg on Bloody Sunday would be conveniently forgotten when, in 1914, Britain needed a new Secretary of State for War [=>1914 (5th August)].

**CAMEO - 2ND ROYAL CANADIAN REGIMENT ON BLOODY SUNDAY:** At the Battle of Paardeberg 2/RCR was commanded by **Sir**[993] **William D. Otter** [Wikipedia biography] and was attached to Smith-Dorrien's 19th Brigade within Colville's 9th Division. On 18th February the battalion engaged the Boer perimeter in the region of the Gun Hill
donga in a day-long firefight which cost it around 90 casualties. It was a day of deep national
significance, however ...

"The Battle of Paardeberg was the first time men in Canadian uniform, fighting in a
Canadian unit, made war overseas. It also gave Canada its first remembrance day:
from 1900 until the end of the First World War, Canadians gathered not on November
11, but on February 27 - Paardeberg Day - to commemorate the country's war dead
and its achievements in South Africa" (Foot, 2014 online).

CAMEO/RECOMMENDED READING - 1ST BN GORDON HIGHLANDERS ON
BLOODY SUNDAY: At the Battle of Paardeberg 1/GH was commanded by Herbert H.
Burney [no convenient biography] and was attached to Smith-Dorrien’s 19th Brigade within
Colville’s 9th Division. On 18th February the battalion advanced around the reverse slope of
Gun Hill to take position on the north-western shoulder of the Boer perimeter (i.e., to the left
of the Canadians facing the donga), where they spent the day in an intense firefight with the
defenders. Their exploits are meticulously explained in Chissel (2011 online).

One of the early historians will assess the day's events as follows ...

"... what happened on the morning of Sunday, February 18th, was that from every quarter an
assault was urged across the level plains, to the north and to the south, upon the lines of
desperate and invisible men who lay in the dongas and behind the banks of the river.
Everywhere there was a terrible monotony about the experiences of the various regiments
[namely] that bravery can be of no avail against concealed riflemen well-entrenched, and that
the more hardy is the attack the heavier must be the repulse. [...] What had we got in return
for our eleven hundred casualties? We had contracted the Boer position from about three
miles to less than two [although] our shrapnel alone, without any loss of life, might have
effect ed the same thing" (Conan Doyle, 1902 online, Chapter 19).

As soon as news of the Bloody Sunday losses reaches Roberts he quits his sickbed and
sets out at 0400hr on 19th February with Tucker's [11th February<=>10th March] 7th Division
(14th and 15th Brigades [including (although not yet at full strength) 2nd Bn South
Wales Borderers]) and all available artillery. They start to arrive at Paardeberg around
mid-morning, and Roberts immediately takes steps to calm things down. He is
persuaded by the divisional commanders to mount no more major infantry assaults
until the more or less encircled Boers have been softened up by artillery. The British
bombardment begins without delay and, later in the day, Roberts invites Cronjé to
surrender, but to no avail. On 20th February the encirclement is tightened and the
shelling intensifies, soon killing enough of Cronjé's transport animals to render his
force immobile. Unable to break out Cronjé permits De Wet to disengage and the
latter then heads off upriver to Poplar Grove [maplink at 7th March] to prepare the next line
of defence. On 22nd February the Royal Engineers Balloon Section gets an
observation balloon into the air to improve artillery spotting, and the shelling
continues, the infantry remaining on half rations to permit the logistical train to feed
the guns. Finally toward dusk on 26th February 1/GH and 2/RCR are ordered to mount
a pre-dawn attack on the battered Boer perimeter. This brings them within yards of the
Boer perimeter, and after a two hour firefight at close range the Boers raise the white
flag. It is the 19th Anniversary of the British defeat in the Battle of Majuba Hill [<= 1881
(27th February)], The overall outcome is a decisive British victory, with 4019 Boers taken
as prisoners-of-war. A few hours later Beevor [1899 (10th November)<=>13th March] is
fortuitously in the right place to film Cronjé's departure under guard following the
formalities, this material surviving as the R. W. Paul Company's [1899 (15th
November)<=>17th May] "Cronjé's Surrender to Lord Roberts" [IMDB entry; YouTube it now].
British casualties at Paardeberg total 303/320 (sources differ) killed and 906/942
wounded (ditto). Some of the latter will become unwitting movie extras at Durban a
couple of days later when Hyman [1899 (23rd December)<=>28th May] films "Arrival of
Wounded at Hospital Ship" [IMDB entry; footage incorporated into this British Pathé compilation] [sub-thread
1 ASIDE: The north-eastern body of Boer reinforcements were initially commanded by Ignatius S. Ferreira [no convenient biography=>killed in action 18th February 1900]. De Beer assumed command after Ferreira was mistakenly shot by one of his own sentries on 18th February.

2 This phrase from Conan Doyle (op. cit).

1900 [26th-27th February] The main British socialist parties hold a joint conference at the Congregational Memorial Hall, Farringdon Street, London, and agree to form a single overarching organisation capable of competing meaningfully in the electoral process. This new organisation is duly named the "Labour Representation Committee" [Wikipedia factsheet=>1906 (12th January)], [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


1900 [27th February] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XXXIII - Murray’s Printing Telegraph]: [Continued from 8th February] The New Zealand inventor Donald Murray [Wikipedia biography] files for a U.S. patent (eventually granted on 17th July 1900 as U.S. Patent 653936) under the title "Page-Printing Telegraph". The device uses a five-key 32-item codebook, but the character-to-code assignment is different to that already in use under Émile Baudot's [=1874 (17th June)] system. With further amendments, the system will eventually be standardised at the International Telegraph Alphabet, No. 2 [continues at 17th March ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

********** LADYSMITH GETS "FOOD AND FRIENDS!" **********

1900 [28th February] Seeing is Believing [LXIX - The Cinema at War (The Relief of Ladysmith)]: [Continued from 18th February] With the Boers in full retreat from the Tugela River [=12th February] the honour of actually relieving Ladysmith falls to (yet another WW1 celebrity) [Sir] Hubert Gough [Wikipedia biography=>1914 (8th October)], who has been scouting ahead. Winston Churchill [1899 (15th November)<=26th September], who was in the relief column, describes the events ...

"... a messenger came back from Gough with the news that the last ridge between us and the town was unoccupied by the enemy, that he could see Ladysmith, and that there was, for the moment, a clear run in. Dundonald immediately determined to go on himself into the town with [two squadrons]. He invited me to accompany him, and without delay we started at a gallop. [...] Onward wildly, recklessly, up and down hill, over the boulders, through the shrub. [...] We turned the shoulder of a hill, and there before us lay the tin houses and dark trees we had come so far to see and save. [...] Now we were all on the flat. Brigadier, staff, and troops let their horses go. We raced through the thorn bushes by Intombi Spruit. Suddenly there was a challenge. ‘Halt, who goes there?’ ‘The Ladysmith Relief Column’, and thereat from out of trenches and rifle pits artfully concealed in the scrub a score of tattered men came running, cheering feebly ...” (Churchill, op. cit., p463).

Buller [=12th February] presides over a ceremonial liberation parade on 3rd March while Dickson [24th February<=17th May] obtains the raw footage for the eventual reel "Entry into Ladysmith" [MDB entry] [sub-thread continues at 13th March ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1 This phrase from Churchill (op. cit., Chapter 22).

********** "WAR FILMS AND WAR FEVER" **********

ASIDE - THE GOLDEN AGE OF JINGOISM: Now that the cameramen had arrived in force, and now that the British were beginning to get results, the showmen (directly) and the
government (indirectly) both had something to gain from the box-office popularity of the war, thus ...

"In Birmingham at the beginning of March (just after the relief of Ladysmith) the Curzon Hall was twice filled with audiences, 'patriotic and imperial', singing God Save the Queen,' and throughout cheered every scene and every animated photograph of the generals and of war episodes'. On 7 April a music hall journal reported about film shows: 'The fact is, there is such a demand for war subjects that [...] we now have portraits of our Generals galore, and it seems that the public cannot have too much of them. [...] In early May a lantern journal reported that the only word which could express the applause at films of Boer War was 'enthusiastic'. [...] The filmmaker, turned laboratory man, [George A. Smith [<=1899 (10th November)]] was asked about this time if there was a big demand for South African war films, and replied that: ‘... his hands were so full he hardly knew where to turn. For every film with any connection with the war the demand was enormous. President Kruger getting out of his carriage, scenes in Johannesburg, scenes of embarking and disembarking troops, of manoeuvres of cavalry and infantry, could not be developed fast enough.’" (Bottomore, op. cit., XI, p8).

And again ...

"War fever was also very apparent in places of entertainment, and [Toulmin (2006)] finds that the working class population was highly interested. Evidence suggests that only two months into the war patriotic excesses were not unusual in music halls, and one periodical reported the positive effect of the war on attendance [...] Boer War films were increasingly being screened through the winter of 1899 to 1900, though initially there was sometimes a lack of appropriate material, so showmen often used lantern slide images of Generals and the like to show between films. [...] Perhaps the height of enthusiasm for Boer War films was in the period of greatest British success in the war, between about March and June 1900. [...] There seems to have been very little dissent from this relentless patriotic celebration of the war in moving images. The only example I have seen of any real criticism [concerns] images of Boers being scorned. One visitor to a Charing Cross theatre noted that a film of Boer prisoners was: ‘... greeted with a tremendous storm of yells, hoots, jeers, hisses, etc., from the [...] office boys, the yahoos, and the brainless bar-crawlers who form the vast majority of the audience. He called this jeering of the humbled enemy despicable” (ibid., p7).

In another recent analysis Popple (2002) will argue that the cinema in 1900, "as the latest form of visual culture" drew - unavoidably - on the ...

"... representational traditions established by the printed image, the photograph, and theatrical, music hall, and fairground performance. Photographic and cinematic images were at the heart of this representational nexus, providing a new technological iconography of the war, a new form of evidence considered far more legitimate than that of the war correspondent or the special artist. The war itself straddled the end of the old and the beginning of the new century, and marked the end of a tradition dominated by the manual transcription of information and impressions. New media based predominantly on the technologies of the camera and the telegraph altered not only the speed with which the war could be covered but also the nature of its representation. The public's appetite for these new forms of imagery and their display at traditional sites such as the music hall or the fairground is hard to quantify, particularly when one attempts to read it within the context of a popular imperial war. The demand for visual representations of the war were doubtless magnified by the distance at which the war was fought and the guerrilla nature of its prosecution" (Popple, 2002, pp13-14)


1Section heading in Bottomore (2007, op. cit., XI, p6).

**RESEARCH ISSUE - THE GOLDEN AGE OF JINGOISM:** The extent to which the 1900 war fever, fuelled partly by cinematographic censored fact and box-office fiction,
1900  [7th March]  The Battle of Poplar Grove: Following Cronje’s [<=18th February] surrender at the Battle of Paardeberg [<=18th February] De Wet’s [18th February<=10th March] remaining Boers have fallen back to the drift at Poplar Grove [approximate coordinates], some 45 miles west of Bloemfontein [maplink at 1899 (12th October)], there to deny Lord Roberts [18th February<=10th March] an open approach to their capital. Roberts commits Kelly-Kenny’s [ditto] 6th Division and Tucker’s [ditto] 7th Division to the assault here, with French's [18th February<=1900 (30th January)] cavalry attempting yet another right-hook outflanking movement. Heavily outnumbered, the Boers wait until the last movement and then fall back toward higher ground at Driefontein [maplink at 10th March]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1900  [10th March]  The Battle of Driefontein: Having fallen back from Poplar Grove on 7th March De Wet’s [7th March<=31st March] remaining Boers have taken positions around Driefontein [approximate coordinates], some 30 miles west of Bloemfontein [ditto]. Again Lord Roberts [7th March<=12th May] commits Kelly-Kenny’s [ditto] 6th Division and Tucker’s [ditto] 7th Division to the assault.

CAMEO - 1ST BN, WELCH REGIMENT AT DRIEFONTEIN: As at Paardeberg [<=18th February] I/WR fought alongside 1st Bn Essex Regiment. Once again they employ rush-and-drop tactics, culminating in a successful bayonet charge. The battalion suffers some 140 casualties on the day.

The overall outcome of the battle is a British tactical victory, but with the usual asymmetrical casualty figures (424 British against about 100 Boers). [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1900  [13th March]  American Naval Expansion [X - The General Board of the Navy]: [Continued from 1st June 1898] Secretary of the Navy John Long [check him out] convenes a nine member General Board of the Navy [Wikipedia factsheet] with Admiral George Dewey [check him out] in command. The board is tasked with advising Long on "long-range naval strategy" and "ship characteristics" [sub-thread continues at 20th November 1906 ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1900  [13th March]  Seeing is Believing [LXX - The Cinema at War (The Entry into Bloemfontein)]: [Continued cinematographically from 28th February but militarily from 18th February] The final drive on the Orange Free State capital takes three days and is largely uncontested. Beevor [18th February<=27th May] records some of the ceremonial in the reel "Entry of the Scots Guards into Bloemfontein" [IMDB entry; YouTube it now], and Rosenthal [11th February<=12th May] subsequently adds "Coldstream Guards Leaving Bloemfontein" [IMDB entry] [sub-thread continues at 15th April ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1900  [16th March]  The Philippine-American War [II - The Taft Commission]  [Continued from 4th February 1899] The Second Philippine Commission [Wikipedia briefing] was established by President McKinley on 16th March 1900 under the chairmanship of Judge [President][1909-1913] William Taft [check him out]. Its job was to provide a civilian-style legislature to complement General Merritt’s military governorship. The commission will sit until 1916 under a variety of chairs [sub-thread continues at 17th April 1900 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]
1900 [17th March] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XXXIV - Wireless in the Royal Navy]:** [Continued from 27th February] [Sir] Henry Bradwardine Jackson [1899 (20th October)<=4th July] arranges for the in-other-respects obsolete light cruiser **HMS Thetis** [Wikipedia shipography=4th July] to be fitted out with a wireless-room provided by the **Marconi Company** [1899 (20th October)<=4th July]. She is then sent to the Indian Ocean to serve in the Second Anglo-Boer War [<=1899 (12th October)] as a floating wireless station¹ in and around Delagoa Bay [= modern Maputa, Mozambique], making her the first wireless-equipped warship to serve in a combat zone. She will be joined on station by **HMS Forte** [no substantive shipography], **HMS Magicienne** [<=1st January], and **HMS Raccoon** [Wikipedia shipography] once they have been similarly equipped. Around the same time the similarly equipped **HMS Canopus** [Wikipedia shipography=1914 (7th August)] is sent to the Mediterranean to continue wireless trials there [continues at 26th April ...], [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

¹**ASIDE:** Thetis took care of the long-distance wireless communications to the Admiralty in London, but was herself linked in to the Royal Engineers cable telegraph network ashore [<=1899 (12th October) [ASIDE]].

1900 [19th March] The football club **A.F.C. Ajax** [pronounce as "eye-yeaks" :=] [modern corporate website] is founded in Amsterdam. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1900 [31st March] **The Battle of Sanna’s Post:** This battle is fought as part of the post-Bloemfontein Orange Free State Campaign of the Second Boer War [<=12th October] between a Boer force under **De Wet** [10th March<=1st September] and (his younger brother) **Pieter D. de Wet** [Wikipedia biography] and a British cavalry and horse artillery column heading for Sanna’s Post/Korn Spruit [coordinates], some 20 miles west of Bloemfontein [maplink at 1899 (12th October)], commanded by **Robert G. Broadwood** [Wikipedia biography].

The Boers spring a successful dawn ambush, and in the ensuing firefight inflict 155 casualties on the British and capture 428 prisoners-of-war and capture 7 guns for the loss of only 8 casualties. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1900 [1st April] In recognition of the sacrifices made by Irishmen in the Second Boer War, the **Irish Guards Regiment** [modern regimental website] is formed. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

1900 [11th April] Duly impressed by its demonstrated capabilities, the U.S. Navy buys **John Holland**’s [1897 (17th May)<=?5th December] prototype submarine, commissioning her as **USS Holland.** [THREAD = THE WW1 SUBMARINE NAVIES]

********** SEEING SHOULD NOT BE BELIEVING **********

********** SEEING SHOULD NOT BE BELIEVING **********

********** SEEING SHOULD NOT BE BELIEVING **********

1900 [15th April] **Seeing is Believing [LXXI - Early Motion Pictures ("L’Homme Orchestre"):** [Continued from 13th March] The latest reel from **Méliès** [1899 (November)<=1902 (8th May)] is "L’Homme Orchestre" [in English as "One-Man Band"; IMDB entry; YouTube it now (very clever!)], a 90-second masterpiece of repeated exposure and stop tricks which allows M. Méliès himself to play the conductor and all six members of an orchestra. This is followed more or less immediately by a further box-office success with a historical re-enactment entitled "Jeanne d’Arc" [in English as "Joan of Arc"; IMDB entry; YouTube it now] [sub-thread continues at 12th May ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

¹**ASIDE:** The precise production date is lost. We show here the opening date of the 1900 Paris Expedition, which ran for six months and was particularly concerned with attracting the latest cinematographic manufacturers and demonstrations. Méliès will continue to produce until 1911. For his full filmography (highly informative) click here.
RESEARCH ISSUE - CONTINUITY AND THE STOP TRICK: [See firstly the comments for CONTINUITY ERRORS [=1899 (November)] The cognitive system was never intended to cope with trick photography, and routinely falls for stop trick transitions of the sort described above. Technically, however, stop tricks are difficult to carry off because they are often unacceptably "jumpy". It is therefore often easier to use quick cut-away-and-back edits to allow the stunt-double and similar substitutions to take place [YouTube some of the secrets].

1900 [17th April] The Philippine-American War [III - Another Hoar Speech]: [Continued from 16th March 1900] Eighteen months after his "vulgar empire" speech [see 2nd November 1898], Senator Hoar [see 2nd November 1898] is still harping on about the Constitutional limits of Expansionism, this time in a speech entitled "The Lust of Empire" [full text online]. Here is the nub of his rhetorical question [it's all one sentence, sorry, but we've opened it up a bit - Ed.]...

"But the question with which we now have to deal is whether Congress may conquer and may govern, without their consent and against their will, a foreign nation, a separate, distinct, and numerous people, a territory not hereafter to be populated by Americans, to be formed into American states and to take its part in fulfilling and executing the purposes for which the Constitution was framed, whether it may conquer, control, and govern this people, not for the general welfare, common defense, more perfect union, more blessed liberty of the people of the United States, but for some real or fancied benefit to be conferred against their desire upon the people so governed [...]."

Now, Mr. President, the question is whether the men who framed the Constitution, or the people who adopted it, meant to confer that power among the limited and restrained powers of the sovereign nation that they were creating [...]."

And the nub of his answer is that it is most certainly NOT what the Founding Fathers intended when they put the Constitution together. He phrases it thus...

"I declare not only that this is not among the express powers conferred upon the sovereignty they created, [...] but that it is a power [...] that our fathers and their descendants have ever loathed and abhorred - and that they believed that no sovereign on earth could rightfully exercise it and that no people on earth could rightfully confer it. They not only did not mean to confer it but they would have cut off their right hands, every one of them, sooner than set them to an instrument which should confer it."

Apart from some uneasy shuffling of backsides nothing changed, and Hoar died in office, a beaten man, in 1904 [sub-thread continues at 23rd March 1901 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** MARCONI'S MILESTONE WIRELESS PATENT, BRITISH **********

1900 [26th April] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XXXV - Frequency Modulation]: [Continued from 17th March] Guglielmo Marconi [1899 (22nd November) => 1901 (23rd February)] is granted British patent 7777 (of 1900) under the title "Improvements in Apparatus for Wireless Telegraphy". The essence of his invention is as follows...

"By combining within his apparatus two tuned circuits, one being a highly resonant closed circuit and the other an aerial circuit of good radiating characteristics, and weakly coupling
the two together, a successful result was obtained, with greater range and selectivity” (Simons, 1996 online, p49).

The commercial value of Marconi's system is that different wireless installations can henceforth tune their transmitters and receivers to different wavelengths, thus enabling them to operate simultaneously without interference one to the other. Around the same time Marconi is also in discussions with the Royal Navy for the first tranche of shipboard wireless room equipment [continues at ??th May ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

'ASIDE: Probably in truth not an invention at all but rather a consolidation of several earlier inventions, some in the public domain but others possibly not. The Marconi patents will therefore be the subject of intense patent litigation well into the 1940s.

1900 [1st May or thereabouts] The Hejaz Railway [I - Work Begins]: Authorised by Abdul Hamid II of Turkey [1877 (21st May)<=>1909 (31st March)] personally, and with German technical support, work begins on a railway to link Damascus to the holy city of Mecca [continues at 1908 (1st September) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1900 [12th May] Seeing is Believing [LXXII - The Cinema at War (The Occupation of Kroonstad)]: (Continued cinematographically from 15th April and militarily from 31st March) Lord Roberts [10th March<=>17th May] force-marches a British mounted column to occupy the railway town of Kroonstad [map, etc.], 100 miles north-east of Bloemfontein [maplink at 1899 (12th October)]. Rosenthal [13th March<=>27th May] is on hand to film the ensuing formalities, the material being used a month later in "The Surrender of Kroonstad to Lord Roberts" [IMDB entry] [sub-thread continues cinematographically and militarily at 17th May ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

ASIDE - MILITARY CENSORSHIP AND PROPAGANDA, 1900: Again we need to note the value of the moving picture to those in government responsible for "selling" a war to the population at large by emphasising good news. The flip side, of course, was that mechanisms had also to be in place to prevent bad news slipping through, thus ...

"This film would have been shot with Roberts' and Kitchener's cooperation, and it was perfect propaganda: the British commanders leading their army, with the humbled town officials seated in a wagon. [...] Censorship and regulation seemed to stalk Rosenthal throughout this campaign. [...] He was issued with an open pass which apparently enabled him to travel freely. But this did not mean, however, that he could film freely as well. [...] He later recalled that he had to give a complete description of the film before it could be despatched home: 'I had to make a report to the censor of what I had taken. [...] If it had been found that I had mis-stated the contents of the parcel I was, according to the terms of my licence, liable to be court-martialled, just like a soldier” (Bottomore, op. cit., IX, pp33-34).

1900 [??th May] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XXXVI - The Cuxhaven Station]: [Continued from 26th April] For about a year now Karl Ferdinand Braun [1899 (6th February)<=>24th September] and his assistants Jonathan Zenneck [1897 (15th February)<=>24th September] and Mathias Cantor [no convenient biography=>24th September], have been developing an experimental maritime transmission station at Cuxhaven [map, etc.]. The better to protect his intellectual property rights Braun henceforth conducts this research under the name of the Prof. Brauns Telegraphie G.m.b.H. [no convenient factsheet], or "Telebraun" for short [continues at 4th July ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1900 [17th May] Seeing is Believing [LXXIII - The Cinema at War (The Relief of Mafeking)]: [Continued cinematographically and militarily from 12th May] Following a gradual advance along the Cape Town-Kimberley-Bulawayo railway toward Vryburg [maplink at 1899 (12th
October) the time is finally right for [Sir] Bryan T. Mahon [Wikipedia biography] to lead a 2000-strong flying column to the relief of Mafeking. The news is well received back home...

"News of the relief reached London on the evening of 18 May, and the city was quickly transformed: cheering crowds appeared on the streets, flags were waving everywhere, people singing 'Rule Britannia' and 'God Save the Queen'" (Bottomore, op. cit., XI, p7).

Dickson [28th February=>$27th May] subsequently films Lord Roberts [12th May=>$27th May] congratulating Baden-Powell [1899 (13th October)=>1907 (7th August)] on a masterly defence. As it happens the exhibition circuit is also about to receive copies of a battle re-enactment reel entitled "Battle of Mafeking" [IMDB entry], filmed in April in New Jersey for the Edison Company [<=1898 (3rd July)]. Also, coincidentally, the R. W. Paul Company [18th February=>18th September] has just completed a light-hearted piece of anti-Boer mud-slinging entitled "Kruger's Dreams of Empire" [IMDB entry] [sub-thread continues at 28th May ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1900 [28th May or hereabouts] Seeing is Believing [LXXIV - The Cinema at War (Crossing the Vaal)]: [Continued from 17th May] Having consolidated a forward base at Kroonstad [<=12th May] Lord Roberts [27th May<=$28th May] now strikes northward along the Bloemfontein-Pretoria railway into the South African Republic. His attendant cameramen film the crossing of the Vaal River on or about 27th May. Beevor's [<=13th March] material subsequently appears as "Crossing the Vaal River" [IMDB entry] whilst Rosenthal's [12th May=>$28th May] subsequently appears as "Essex Regiment Crossing the Vaal" [IMDB entry] [sub-thread continues at 28th May ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1900 [28th May-5th June] Seeing is Believing [LXXV - The Cinema at War (Johannesburg and Johannesburg)]: [Continued from 27th May] Once across the Vaal Lord Roberts [27th May=>$11th June] advances on Johannesburg and Pretoria, occupying them on 31st May and 5th June, respectively. On 6th June both Dickson [17th May=>$1901] and Rosenthal [12th May=>$21st June] film the raising of the Union Jack for their rival sponsors. In fact the Warwick Trading Company [1899 (10th November)=>1901 (25th February)] now has two operatives with the column, namely Rosenthal and Hyman [<=18th February], and their output also includes "Entry of Troops into Pretoria" [IMDB entry] and "The 4.7-inch Naval Gun in Action" [IMDB entry]. Now, however, the nature of the campaign changes as the Boers break their field Kommandos down into smaller Guerrilla squadrons which the British eventually succeed in chasing down one at a time. As a result most of the camera teams are soon pulled out. Warwick, for example, replaces Rosenthal with Goldman [1899 (12th October)=>25th October], the former soon finding his way to China [<=14th June] [sub-thread continues at 14th June ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1900 [11th-12th June] The Battle of Diamond Hill/Donkerhoek: This is the last conventional battle of the Second Boer War. It is fought at Diamond Hill/Donkerhoek [coordinates], some ten miles east of Pretoria, between Louis Botha's [12th February=>$1901 (28th February)] Boer field army and the spearhead divisions of Lord Roberts' [28th May=>$1st September] invasion army. The Boers are testing Roberts' ability to hold on to Pretoria. As usual their tactics are to hold the heights for a day and then to disengage after nightfall having inflicted disproportionate casualties (160 British against 50 Boer). [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]
Seeing is Believing [LXXVI - The Cinema at War (The Boxer Rebellion - Overview)]: [Continued from 28th May] Just as the flow of footage from the South African war is about to dry up, a new war breaks out in the Far East. This 15-month anti-Western popular uprising is an attempt to drive all things foreign out of China, including Christianity and its missionaries. Westerners seek sanctuary in the embassy quarter in Beijing, where they manage to survive a two-month-long siege by "Boxer" insurgents before relief arrives. The relief effort will involve an emergency Eight Nations Alliance [Wikipedia factsheet] consisting of those countries whose nationals are under specific threat, that is to say, Austria-Hungary, Britain, France, Germany, Italy, Japan, Russia, and the United States. The cinema industry reacts quickly with its by-now customary two-edged strategy of (1) filming such actualities as it reasonably can, and (2) making the rest up. The cameramen include Rosenthal [28th May<=>21st September] and C. Fred Ackerman [no convenient biography=>5th August].

CAMEO - SIR ERNEST HATCH'S FOOTAGE: It so happened that in the months prior to the uprising the British politician Sir Ernest F. G. Hatch, 1st Baronet [Wikipedia biography] had passed through the region as a cinematographic tourist, and had just returned to Britain with some 20 reels of pre-rebellion Chinese life. Although these reels contain no war-related footage Hatch's timing is superb and his material is soon on general release both in its own right and also woven into other productions as stock footage. For the fuller story see Bottomore (op. cit., Chapter 12).

It is the fakers who get product to market first, taking as their theme a spate of attacks over the preceding months on Western missionary stations and places of worship. Amongst the most popular works at the box-office are the Mitchell and Kenyon Company's [1899 (12th October)<=>1900 (14th July)] "Attack on a Mission Station" [IMDB entry], the Williamson Company's [1896 (November)<=>1901 (15th October)] "Attack on a China Mission" [IMDB entry; YouTube it now], and "Massacre of Christians by the Chinese" [IMDB entry] [sub-thread continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1ASIDE: We use the word "insurgent" with a little unease because it seems to imply an outside intervention against indigenous people, rather than an indigenous struggle against non-indigenous people (the Boxer insurgents, remember, were indigenous Chinese trying to drive Westerners from their country). Be that as it may, this is the current usage of the word - simply Google on <insurgency in> and you will be given a list of 21st Century insurgencies around the world to choose from, all by indigenous peoples against outsiders of some sort.

RECOMMENDED READING: We recommend the paper entitled "The China Relief Expedition" (Leonhard, (undated online)).

WAR VIDEO: Hence the name of the 1963 Nicholas Ray/Guy Green movie "55 Days at Peking" [IMDB entry].
port large enough to support its relief effort an Eight Nations fleet bombards and then
storms the Taku coastal forts protecting the approaches to the port of Tientsin/Tianjin.
Sensing another "Santiago Bay" [<=1898 (3rd July)], Siegmund Lubin's [[Wikipedia biography] => 14th July] re-enactment studio immediately launches a Liliputian fleet of its own and soon has "Bombardment of Taku Forts" [[MDB entry; Library of Congress video] out on the streets [sub-thread continues at 14th July ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1900 [20th June] German Naval Expansion [VIII - The Second Fleet Law]: [Continued from 1st January] Taking full advantage of the German public's indignation over the Bundesrath Incident earlier in the year [<=1st January] Alfred von Tirpitz [1898 (30th April) <=1914 (14th August; 2400hrs)] drafts a proposal for doubling the eventual size of the German battlefleet from 19 to 38 capital ships by 1917. The authorised number of torpedo boats doubles from 72 to 144 [continues at 1904 (21st October) ...], [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES] [THREAD = WW1 WAR FEVER]

1900 [20th-21st June] The Assassination of von Ketteler: At the height of the rioting and massacres a Boxer crowd assassinates Germany's Ambassador to China Clemens von Ketteler [[Wikipedia biography] on the streets of Beijing. Kaiser Wilhelm II [1899 (21st November) <= 27th July] responds to the killing by ordering his Foreign Secretary Bernhard von Bülow [1897 (26th June) <= 17th October] to mount a Strafexpedition [= punishment expedition] and to see to it that Beijing is "razed to the ground" (Bottomore, 2007). On 21st June the Dowager Empress Ci Xi [[Wikipedia biography] => 5th August] declares war on the intruding states. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1900 [2nd July] Ferdinand von Zeppelin [1898 (?7th January) <= 1906 (17th January)] oversees the inaugural flight of his first airship, the LZ1 [1898 (?7th January) <=scrapped 1901]. The flight lasts 17 minutes, reaches a height of 1300 feet, and carries a crew of five persons. Two further flights will take place in October, but the vessel will then have to be dismantled for lack of funding. [THREAD = WW1 AVIATION]

1900 [4th July] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XXXVII - Wireless in the Royal Navy]: [Continued from ?7th May] Impressed by the trials aboard HMS Thetis [<=17th March] [Sir]1906 Henry Bradwardine Jackson [17th March] <= 1902 (21st January)] the NOW formally agrees a 14-year contract1 with the Marconi Company [17th March <= 1901 (23rd January)] to equip and to maintain wireless-rooms aboard a further 26 warships, as well as for a network of six shore stations to stay in touch with them [continues at 24th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1ASIDE - PARLIAMENT AND THE MARCONI CONTRACTS: The Marconi contracts with the Royal Navy will become politically highly contentious once Parliament gets involved in considering how they should be renewed. We shall be covering this debate in due course [=1912 (11th October) and follow the onward pointers].

1900 [5th July] The Thames Ironworks Football Club [<=1885 (15th June)] is rebadged as West Ham United Football Club [modern corporate website]. [THREAD = THE WW1 WORKING CLASS SOLDIER]

1900 [5th July] The British Parliament approves an Act establishing the component states of Australia as the Confederation of Australia, to become effective the following year [=> 1901 (1st January)]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1900 [13th July] The Battle of Tientsin: The victory at Taku [<=16th June] had only captured the port of Tientsin/Tianjin, and now the Eight Nations coalition forces move on the Boxer stronghold in the old walled city itself, some 20 miles to the northwest. The
attack is commanded by the British and involves British, American, French, Japanese, German, and Russian troops.

**CAMEO - 2ND BN ROYAL WELCH FUSILIERS AT TIENTSIN, 13TH JULY 1900:**
In the assault on Tientsin 2/RWF is the only British line regiment involved in the fighting and provided left flank support to a Japanese assault on the city’s southern gate. The battalion suffered five killed and 19 wounded (RWF Museum factsheet).

1900 (14th July) **Seeing is Believing [LXXIX - The Cinema at War (The Boxer Rebellion Fakes)]:** [Continued from 16th June] In America Lubin (<=16th June) now starts to deliver a series of quite gory re-enactment reels, such as "Beheading a Chinese Prisoner" [IMDB entry; probably part of this YouTube compilation] and Amet [1898 (3rd July)] adds "Execution of Six Boxers" [no IMDB entry]. In France Pathé Frères [1896 (28th September)<=1903 (2nd August)] comes up with "An Execution in Peking" [no IMDB entry]. And in Britain the Mitchell and Kenyon Company [14th June<=1901 (25th February)] adds "Attempted Capture of an English Nurse and Children" [IMDB entry; probably part of this YouTube compilation] [sub-thread continues at 17th July ...].

1900 (17th July) **Seeing is Believing [LXXX - The Cinema at War (The Boxer Rebellion - The Allied Landings)]:** [Continued from 14th July] Duly recorded on film the Eight Nations expeditionary force - now with around 19,000 troops either on the ground or shortly due to arrive - starts to fight its way inland from Tientsin/Tianjin en route for Beijing [sub-thread continues at 27th July ...].


1900 (19th July) **The first line of the Paris Métro** [Wikipedia factsheet] opens for passengers. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1900 (23rd July) **The Russians Invade Manchuria:** Keen to open a second front against the Chinese, Russian troops cross the Amur River at Aigun, turning southward to threaten Mukden/Shenyang [map, etc.].

**GEOPOLITICAL ASIDE - RUSSIA AND MANCHURIA:** Russia had already forced the unequal Treaty of Aigun [Wikipedia factsheet] on the Chinese in 1858, transferring 230,000 square miles of southern Yakutsk to Russian ownership. The southern border of this new territory is the Amur River [map, etc.], and the Chinese province of Manchuria stretches from east to west to the south of that river. The comparatively recently established Russian stronghold at Vladivostok [map, etc.] is at the southernmost extremity of these new acquisitions, close to the borders with modern North Korea and just across the Sea of Japan from Japan. The recently completed Far Eastern section of the Trans-Siberian Railway [Wikipedia factsheet] hugs the border for its final 1000 miles.

The Russian invasion encounters little substantive resistance and Mukden (500 miles to the south) is occupied on 1st October. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** THE GERMANS STYLE THEMSELVES "HUNS" **********

1900 (27th July) **Seeing is Believing [LXXXI - The Cinema at War (Enter the Kaiser):** [Continued from 17th July] Kaiser Wilhelm II [20th June<=25th September] delivers a speech [clickable links below] to troops heading off for service in China, and exhorts them in very plain
language to behave when they get there as did the Hun hordes of old, that is to say, to take no prisoners.

**ASIDE:** Non-native English speakers should note that the phrase "to take no prisoners" has both original-literal and everyday-figurative usages. The literal usage is that in combat no act of surrender is to be respected, that is to say, any enemy combatant who lays down his weapon, raises his hands, and calls Mercy, is to be shot or bayoneted nonetheless, despite being unarmed and having ceased to resist. In everyday English the word is used figuratively to refer to any more than normally single-minded pursuit of a non-combat objective, as in a rougher-than-normal football game, say, or a more-than-routinely dishonest stock-market manoeuvre.

**DOUBLE ASIDE:** We first raised the problems of the appropriate treatment of prisoners-of-war in the entry for the Battle of Gilboa [<=1007 BCE]. The persons least likely to be taken alive seem to have been snipers [=>1938 (Dunn)].

The British press will note the Kaiser's words carefully, and will resurrect them - along with all their unpalatable implications - when short of newspaper propaganda taglines once WW1 gets under way. Here is Bottomore (2007) on the cinematographic aspects of the send-off itself ...

"... as one ship-load set off for China from the port of Bremerhaven, it was filmed by the pioneer film cameraman, Guido Seeber [Wikipedia biography]. The film survives under the title *Ausfahrt der sächsischen China-Krieger zu Schiff aus Bremerhaven* [IMDB entry]. [...] The film is of particular interest because the event itself (or possibly an embarkation some days earlier) has become so notorious. This is not so much because of the troop departure itself, as for the speech which the Kaiser delivered on the occasion, 27 July 1900. In words which were to haunt him, Wilhelm reminded his men of the ferocity of the Huns under Attila, implying that his modern warriors should emulate their ferocity, he exhorted his men to take no prisoners, and to build such a fearsome reputation that no Chinaman would ever again dare to even squint at a German. In the event, the German troops in China were to be every bit as violent as the Kaiser might have envisaged" (Bottomore, op. cit., XII, pp5-6).

**CAUTION:** Take care, for with highly sensitive speeches such as this there can exist a number of versions of "what was actually said", including ...

1. Possibly notes from Foreign Office advisors, a prepared script, and an official ante-hoc Foreign Office communiqué (possibly with an official English translation).
2. The exact words as spoken on the day (in German, of course) [full text online; YouTube it now], which may or not match the prepared script. The YouTube audio includes [at around the 108-second mark] the words "Pardon wird nicht gegeben. Gefangene werden nicht gemacht", clearly enunciated and stressed for rhetorical effect, and these two sentences do indeed translate as: "Pardon will not be given. Prisoners will not be taken".
3. German news reporting of the speech, which may or may not contain transcription errors, and may indeed be prepared from (1) rather than (2).
4. English news reporting of the speech, which may or may not additionally contain translation errors and accidental or deliberate mis-interpretations or gratuitous expansions.
5. An official post-hoc Foreign Office communiqué (possibly with an official English translation), followed - perhaps many years later - by deliberately corrected "airbrushings" of (2) and (5).

For a fuller telling of the story we recommend Fuchs (1999 online).

A month or so later¹ the commander of the German Strafexpedition [=20th June] Alfred von Waldersee [Wikipedia biography] is filmed departing Berlin, the material appearing under the Deutsche Mutoskop und Biograph's [IMDB factsheet] title "Abreise des Grafen Waldersee nach China" [no IMDB entry; German Early Cinema Database entry] [sub-thread...
continues at 14th August ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = WW1 WAR FEVER]

**ASIDE:** The University of Cologne entry for this reel gives a being-advertised date of 29th August 1900, but the footage is probably the same as that released in the U.S. in November 1902 as "Field-Marshal Count von Waldersee" [IMDB entry].

1900 [5th-15th August] **Seeing is Believing** [LXXXII - The Cinema at War (Beijing Relieved): [Continued from 17th July] The Eight Nations expeditionary force fights breakthrough battles at Pei-Tsong/Beicang [map, etc.] on 5th August and at Yang-Tsun/Yangcun [map, etc.] on 6th August. The Russian contingent then stages an attack on the Outer City at Beijing on 10th August, but is driven back. A more coordinated attack on 14th August succeeds in pushing through to the beleaguered Embassy Quarter, raising the siege. Finally on 15th August the U.S. 6th Cavalry breaks through into the Inner City to bring Beijing as a whole under international control. **Empress Ci Xi** [20th June<=>22nd October] and her ministers flee inland. **Ackerman** [14th June<=>25th September] will arrange a re-run of the decisive attack a few days later, the material eventually appearing as "6th Cavalry Assaulting South Gate of Pekin" [IMDB entry]. Two Japanese cameramen are embedded with their Fifth Division and their material will be released on 12th October as a documentary compilation entitled "Grand Motion Picture on the Boxer Rebellion" [no IMDB entry] (Bottomore, 2007). German troops are present, but not yet at full strength [=>25th September]. The rebellion is not over, however, and there follows a period of bloody police actions to widen the corridor back to Tientsin/Tianjin and to chase down Boxer strongholds in the provinces [sub-thread continues at 1st September ...], [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

****** "A MOMENT LATER HE'S GRABBED A PITCHFORK AND IS PLAYING JOHNNY FARMER"******

1900 [1st September] **The South African Concentration Camps** [I - The Maxwell Camps]: [New sub-thread] With **Kruger** [1899 (12th October)<=>dies in exile in Switzerland 1904 (14th July)] in self-imposed exile in Europe, strong Boer guerrilla units commanded by the likes of De La Rey [<=1899 (11th December)], **De Wet** [31st March<=>1901 (7th August)], and **James B. M. Hertzog** [Wikipedia biography] are presently nibbling away at British lines of communication. **Lord Roberts** [11th June<=>20th November] responds (a) by releasing some of his line infantry battalions to return to Britain, and (b) by complementing his cavalry with specially trained mounted infantry. The Boers, however, are very good at this game of cat-and-mouse and British successes are few and far between. The British government respond by having the local governor in Pretoria **[Sir] John G. Maxwell** [Wikipedia biography: reappears in Dublin at the Easter Rising =>1916 (24th April)] set up "camps for burghers who voluntarily surrender". The government also keeps the British public on-side by encouraging symbolic patriotism in every aspect of life ...

************ "THE WAR IN TOYLAND"************

************ "THE WAR IN TOYLAND"************

************ "THE WAR IN TOYLAND"************

**ASIDE - THE RADICALISATION OF CHILDREN:** Popple (op. cit.) rather soberingly draws our attention to the flood of pro-war artefacts appearing in everyday life, thus ...

"[The soap and tobacco industries] made heavy use of war subjects and military personalities to advertise their products and promote their patriotic credentials. Popular magazines were awash with war-orientated imagery, much of it meant for public display. Campaign maps, colour lithographs, special supplements, serialised commentaries [etc.] were frequent additions [...], as well as novelty articles touching on some of the more bizarre displays of patriotic fervour. One,

This phrase from a BBC radio retrospective [broadcast 22nd December 2015] of the War in Afghanistan [2001 - ongoing], concerning the ability of the modern Taliban to be fighters one minute and farmers the next.


1900 [18th September] *Seeing is Believing [LXXXIII - The Cinema at War ("Army Life")]:* [Continued from 1st September] The latest offering from the R. W. Paul Company [17th May<=1902 (31st May)] is "Army Life" [IMDB entry; YouTube it now], a two-hour-long compilation (only fragments of which will survive) of scenes of army life from recruitment and training to demobilisation [sub-thread continues at 21st September ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1900 [21st September] *Seeing is Believing [LXXXIV - The Cinema at War (The Russians at Port Arthur)]:* [Continued from 18th September] Rosenthal [14th June<=17th October] risks imprisonment by the Russians for surreptitiously filming dockyard facilities and fortifications at their base at Port Arthur/Lushun [map, etc.], 100 miles east of Tientsin/Tianjin across Bohai Bay, this footage subsequently appearing as "Russian Stronghold in the Far East" [IMDB entry] [sub-thread continues at 25th September ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS][THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1900 [24th September] *Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XXXVIII - The Cuxhaven Transmissions]:* [Continued from 4th July] Karl Ferdinand Braun [??th May<=1901 (5th August)], Jonathan Zenneck [<=??th May], and Mathias Cantor [<=??th May] successfully increase the operating range of their experimental Cuxhaven transmitting station to connect with Helgoland Island some 62km away [continues at 20th December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1900 [25th September] *Seeing is Believing [LXXXV - The Cinema at War (Von Waldersee Arrives at Tientsin)]:* [Continued from 21st September] Von Waldersee [27th July<=17th October] disembarks at Tientsin/Tianjin. Bottomore (2007) suggests that Ackerman [<=14th June] - who had only recently arrived himself, and who was operating with the official sponsorship of both the American and German military commands (in the latter case, with the personal approval of Kaiser Wilhelm II [27th July<=17th October]) - would likely have filmed the disembarkation [Sub-thread continues at 1st October ...] [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS][THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** "THE KHAKI ELECTION" **********


1900 [1st October] *Seeing is Believing [LXXXVI - The Cinema at War (Noble)]:* [Continued from 25th September] C. Rider Noble [1st September<=1903 (2nd August)] records the departure for home of the 2nd Royal Canadian Regiment [<=18th February] [sub-thread continues at 17th October]
1900 [16th October] **John Browning** [1899 <=> 1906] patents the mechanism for an "autoloading rifle". It will be produced in small numbers by Fabrique Nationale in Belgium under the identifier **FN Browning Model 1900 Sporting Rifle** [Remington Society factsheet => 1906]. Browning also produces the **FN Browning Model 1900 Pistol** [Wikipedia factsheet].

**ASIDE - THE FN BROWNING M1900 PISTOL IN WWI**: This is the model used to assassinate Archduke Franz Ferdinand of Austria => 1914 (28th June).

* ********** THE GERMANS GET A YOUNGER CHANCELLOR **********

1900 [17th October] Nominated by **Kaiser Wilhelm II** [27th July <=> 1903 (27th May)], Bernhard von Bülow [20th June <=> 1905 (31st March)] replaces Prince Chlodwig of Hohenlohe-Schillingsfürst [= 1894 (26th October)] (retiring at 81 years of age) as Reichskanzler und preussischer Ministerpräsident [= Chancellor (of Germany) and Prime Minister of Prussia]. Von Bülow will now famously pursue a Drohpolitik, a policy of menace [drohen = "to threaten"].

**ASIDE - THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS**

1900 [17th October] **Seeing is Believing [LXXXVII - The Cinema at War (Von Waldersee Enters Beijing)]:** [Continued from 1st October] **Rosenthal** [<= 21st September] films von Waldersee's [<= 25th September] ceremonial entry into Beijing, this material subsequently being catalogued at "Entry into Pekin of Count von Waldersee" [IMDB entry] [sub-thread continues at 20th November ...].

**ASIDE - THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD**

1900 [22nd October, on and off for three years] **The Penrhyn Quarry Strike**: This extended strike begins when the 2000 workers at the Penrhyn Slate Quarry [map, etc.], Bethesda, North Wales, down tools in protest against management orders not to collect union subscriptions on site. It then degenerates into an exercise in union-breaking and the confrontation of strikers and "scabs" [= standard English slang for workers who return to work while their fellow workers remain out on strike, thereby making martyrs of themselves in the truest sense], and their wives and children. The strike is noteworthy in the present context for submitting scabs to precisely the same verbal and physical abuse, and occasionally even murder, to which WW1 conscientious objectors will be submitted not a generation later.

**ASIDE - THE WW1 WORKING CLASS SOLDIER**

**ASIDE - WW1 PACIFISM AND CONSCIENTIOUS OBJECTION**
1900 [?]th December] The British Admiralty signs a contract for its own John Holland submarine [<=1897 (17th May)], to be built under licence from Holland's Electric Boat Company by the Naval Construction and Armaments Company [1897<=1901 (2nd October)], Barrow. [THREAD = THE WW1 SUBMARINE NAVIES]

1900 [20th December] The South African Concentration Camps [II - Kitchener Tightens the Screws]: [Continued from 1st September] Lord Kitchener [20th November<=1901 (28th February)] authorises a more proactive campaign of driving Boer families from their lands and housing them instead in his nascent network of concentration camps. The thinking behind this ruling can be seen in the following 2009 analysis ...

"The original camps for surrendered farmers had been expanded, because Kitchener said in a 20 December 1900 cable to [the recently appointed Secretary of State for War Sir William St. John Brodrick [Wikipedia biography>=1901 (25th February)]]: 'Every farm is [...] an intelligence agency and a supply depot so that it is almost impossible to surround or catch them'. The inhabitants of these farms were largely women and children, most men being out on commando. [...] So Kitchener saw himself as solving a military problem by deporting women from their farms [...] to stop them from spying for the Boers" (source).

However it will not be long before the poor conditions in the camps become a concern for humanitarian campaigners back home [sub-thread continues at 1901 (30th January) ...], [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS][THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

RECOMMENDED READING: Britain's concentration camps were mentioned repeatedly in Parliament over the ensuing six months. A list of the camps, showing the numbers "confined", was published on 22nd April 1901 (Hansard). The nub of the debates was whether women - even suspected spies - deserved to be treated as prisoners-of-war.

********** THE ELECTRIC KEYBOARD IS BORN **********

1900 [20th December] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XXXIX - Duddell's Musical Arc]: [Continued from 24th September] Having noted that electric arc lamps [<=1809 (Sir Humphrey Davy)] are prone to buzz and hum the British engineer William Duddell1 [Wikipedia biography>=1902 (9th September [ASIDE])] discovers that by adding a "shunt2 resonant3 circuit" between the positive and negative terminals thereof he is able to obtain quite pure audible tones at the resonant frequency of the shunt concerned. By then shunting a number of different resonant frequencies he is able to bring them in one by one and play a tune. He describes this arrangement as a "musical arc" [continues at 1901 (23rd January) ...], [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1ASIDE: Duddell is presently a lecturer in electrical engineering at the City and Guilds Institute, London, and over the coming decade will become one of the world's leading authorities on the use of cathode ray oscillography for investigating very rapid events. His technical reputation will get him invited to be a technical advisor to the British and American governments during WW1. He will die - some say of overwork - on 4th November 1917. His academic obituary (Thomson, 1918) will explain his largely undocumented [i.e., top secret] contribution to the war effort this way: "When war broke out he threw all his energies into developing applications of science to military needs" (p184).


2ASIDE - SHUNT: See definition at 1892 (22nd March [ASIDE]).

3ASIDE - RESONANCE (WAVE): For an object or circuit or system to "resonate" in the scientific sense is for a co-periodic [= same oscillatory speed] external energy source to excite its natural physical ability to oscillate at a particular frequency [just as a playground swing will only swing at its own pace or a tuning fork always sounds a particular tone], thereby exciting those oscillations with maximum speed and efficiency.
Berliner Psychologische Institut and relocated into larger premises at 95-96 Dorotheenstraße. Over the coming years the Institute will establish a world-wide reputation for experimentation into human perception, especially auditory perception. Amongst those who will join the faculty are Hans Rupp [no convenient biography=>1914 (1st August)], Wolfgang Köhler [Wikipedia biography], Friedrich Schumann [Wikipedia biography], and the phoneticist-audiologist Erich Moritz von Hornbostel [Wikipedia biography]=>1914 (1st August) [continues at 1914 (1st August) ...].

1ASIDE - ACOUSTICS IN WW1: We shall be closely monitoring developments in this area because in 1914 the technology was quickly converted to military purposes in such application areas as the detection of enemy aircraft, the location of enemy artillery batteries, and the fight against enemy tunnelling companies.

Classic of pacifist literature

1901 The British author John A. Hobson [no convenient biography] publishes "The Psychology of Jingoism" [Kindle edition], in which he defines jingoism as "that inverted patriotism whereby the love of one's own nation is transformed into the hatred of another nation". Much more on this in due course!! [THREAD = WW1 PACIFISM AND CONSCIENTIOUS OBJECTION]
gun - the MG08/15 - will be developed in the light of WW1 combat experience, and will contribute greatly to the German victory on the Chemin des Dames [=>1917 (16th April)]. [THREAD = WW1 MACHINE GUNS]

1901 W.D. and H.O. Wills [<=1895] is reincorporated as Imperial Tobacco [modern corporate website]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1901 Computerised Naval Fire Control [I - Enter Arthur Pollen]: After informal technical advice from the physicist Sir William Thomson, 1st Baron Kelvin [1882 (25th August)<=y. 1907 (17th December)], the British engineer Arthur H. Pollen [Wikipedia biography=>1905] begins work on a computer-assisted naval gunnery control system. He is assisted by the mechanical engineer Harold Isherwood [no convenient biography] of the Linotype Company [continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE CONTROL]

1901 Computerised Naval Fire Control [II - Enter Frederic Dreyer]: [Continued from preceding entry] A Royal Navy lieutenant named Frederic C. Dreyer [Wikipedia biography=>1903] passes out top of class in his advanced gunnery and torpedo warfare course at the Royal Naval College, Greenwich. His scholarship gets him posted to the gunnery school at Sheerness [continues at 1902 ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE CONTROL]

********** MAJOR WW1 WEAPON **********

===== THE FLAMETHROWER =====

1901 The German military engineer Richard Fiedler [Wikipedia biography] develops the "Flammenwerfer" [= “flame thrower"], a device for projecting burning petrochemicals from a nozzle [see one at work]. The German Army will have trained up and equipped 12 specialist companies in the new weapon by 1911. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

1901 [1st January] [Continued from 1900 (5th July)] The Commonwealth of Australia formally comes into being. The new nation's first Prime Minister is [Sir]1902 Edmund Barton [Wikipedia biography]. Troops already engaged in the Second Boer War [<=1899 (12th October)] now have re-swear allegiance to Australia as a whole (rather than to their separate states as hitherto). [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** HISTORICALLY SIGNIFICANT NEUROPSYCHOLOGY **********

1901 [2nd January] Locating Brain Function [VII - Freud (1901)]: [Continued from 1899 (4th November)] Sigmund Freud [1899 (4th November)<=1905 (1st January)] publishes "Die Psychopathologies des Alltagsebens" [in English (1914) as "The Psychopathology of Everyday Life"], in which he profiles a number of ways in which repressed mental content can induce minor everyday errors such as using the wrong word, forgetting an appointment or duty, causing an injury, etc. His point is that "unwelcome mental content" might well be "pushed away from consciousness" but is nevertheless "not robbed of all capacity to express itself" (1914 Translation, p214) [continues at 1905 ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

********** WIRELESS OVER THE HORIZON **********

1901 [23rd January] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XL - Wireless Goes Long-Distance]: [Continued from 1900 (20th December)] The Marconi Company’s [1900 (4th July)<=9th March] Lizard Head Wireless Station [=>12th December (ASIDE)] receives a signal
from a sister station at St. Catherine’s, Isle of Wight, nearly 200 miles to the east, and therefore significantly below the horizon [continues at 23rd February ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

**ASIDE - THE "SKYWAVE PROPAGATION" OF HIGH FREQUENCY WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS:** The secret of long-distance wireless communication is to "bounce" your transmission off the underside of the upper reaches of Earth's atmosphere, (specifically, the "ionosphere" [Wikipedia factsheet]), which acts as a reflector of sorts for electromagnetic waves of an appropriately high frequency.

1901 [30th January] **The South African Concentration Camps [III - The Sweepings Begin in Earnest]:** [Continued from 1900 (20th December)] **Sir John French** (1900 (7th March)<=1903 (10th March)) conducts a sweep into the south-eastern Transvaal which nets a large number of homesteaders for the new concentration camps. Where the woman in question is married to a serving guerrilla the family is put on reduced rations [sub-thread continues at 25th February ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = TOTAL WAR]

1901 [2nd February] **Seeing is Believing [XC - Early Motion Pictures (Hepworth Studios)]:** [Continued from 1900] **Hepworth Studios** (1900 (24th January)<=1905 (3rd July)) cover the state funeral of **Queen Victoria** (=1899 (21st November)) with multiple cameras. They then burn the midnight oil editing together "Funeral of Queen Victoria" [IMDB entry: YouTube it now] a 15-minute documentary tribute, and running off enough prints to hit the projection houses in force the next day [sub-thread continues at 15th March ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** MARCONI'S MILESTONE WIRELESS PATENT, U.S. **********
********** MARCONI'S MILESTONE WIRELESS PATENT, U.S. **********
********** MARCONI'S MILESTONE WIRELESS PATENT, U.S. **********

1901 [23rd February] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XLI - Frequency Modulation]:** [Continued from 23rd January] **Guglielmo Marconi** (1900 (26th April)<=1909 (10th December)) now crossfiles his British patent 7777 (=1900 (26th April)) for a U.S. patent (eventually granted on 11th June 1901 as U.S. Patent 676332) under the title "Apparatus for Wireless Telegraphy" [continues at 1st March ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1901 [25th/27th February] **The South African Concentration Camps [IV - Conditions Cause Concern]:** [Continued from 30th January] Concerns are being widespread in Britain as to the legality, morality, and basic wisdom of the concentration camp system (as we have already seen the camps began innocently enough six months previously [=1900 (1st September)]) but then became more overtly militarised following **Lord Kitchener**'s [1900 (20th December)<=28th February] decision to regard civilians not already confined to the camps as militarily hostile). On 25th February Secretary of State for War **Brodrick** [1900 (20th December)<=28th February] is asked in Parliament where the concentration camps are and how many people are confined in each. He replies that a full report has been called for. He is then further engaged on the issue of whether or not the inmates are prisoners-of-war, thus ... "[**John Dillon** [Wikipedia biography=>1914 (31st August)] (Irish Parliamentary Party)] Will the right hon. Gentleman state whether the women and children in these laagers are at liberty to leave them? Are they prisoners or are they free?**

MR. BRODRICK They are not prisoners of war.

MR. DILLON Are they free to leave the laagers, or are they guarded by sentries with bayonets?
MR. BRODRICK They come to these laagers for protection.

MR. DILLON Will the right hon. Gentleman assure us that no persons are inside these camps who have not come there for protection - that they have not been driven there?

MR. BRODRICK I have given the House all the information I can. These camps are voluntary camps formed for protection. Those who come may go.” (Hansard, 89:1021-1022).

The Secretary of State's closing assertion may possibly have been formally true but, with their farms laid waste, few of the inmates of the camps actually had anywhere to go to! As a body, therefore, the Boer women and children were indeed de facto prisoners-of-war. In South Africa, meanwhile, the welfare campaigner Emily Hobhouse [Wikipedia biography] has been inspecting the camps since 24th January and as her initial reports gradually become available the British Liberal and Irish Parties (both centrist) begin to bring the Conservative government under increasing political pressure on the matter [see, for example, the entry for 22nd April]. The Government responds on 27th February by instructing that the policy of keeping the families of serving Boer soldiers on reduced rations be reversed. It also more consistently follows the explanatory narrative that everything is the enemy's fault, thus ...

"If the British were going to imprison the Boer women and their children, they were going to have to do it within a discourse consistent with nineteenth-century ideology about gender relations: Brodrick structured it around the idea of 'protection'. By establishing the camps, the argument ran, British men were adopting the duties shirked by the unmanly Boers on commando who had 'deserted' their families, leaving them to starve" (source).

Britain's fledgling cinema industry unwittingly [we have been unable to demonstrate otherwise - Ed.] joins the debate by anticipating the government's 1902 argument [=>1902 (4th March)] that fewer Boers would have died had they been less averse to soap and water in their own protection2 [sub-thread continues at 28th February ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = TOTAL WAR]

1ASIDE: The war correspondent R. H. Edgar Wallace [Wikipedia biography] was far less forgiving of Boer womanhood, seeing them as combatants in all but dress. Wallace will play a similar (and presumably well-paid) role in Britain's 1914 propaganda offensive against the Germans [=>1914 (2nd September)].

2ASIDE: The "smelly Boers" line of argument will be heavily emphasised in the Fawcett Commission's whitewash report [=>1902 (4th March)]. However the Mitchell and Kenyon Company [1900 (14th July)<=>6th September] is already distributing a reel entitled "Washing a Boer Prisoner in a Camp" [IMDB entry] and in April 1901 the Warwick Trading Company [<=1900 (28th May)] will re-release an 1899 farmyard reel entitled "Feeding the Pigs" [IMDB entry] under the new title "Feeding the Boers".

1901 [28th February] The South African Concentration Camps [V - The Middelburg Conference]: [Continued from 25th February] Lord Kitchener [25th February<=>14th June] and Louis Botha [1900 (11th June)<=>1910 (31st May)] hold a preliminary peace conference. A number of matters arising are then discussed with the respective governments and on 7th March the British offer the Boers the following in exchange for their disarming ...

(1) amnesty for serving Boers and repatriation of Boer prisoners-of-war.

(2) a new civil administration, initially British but, "as soon as circumstances permit", self-governing.

(3) financial assistance for distressed farmers willing to take an oath of allegiance to (2).
The feeling in the Boer camp, however, is that their guerrilla forces are still holding their own militarily, and on 16th March they formally decline the offer. In the House of Commons, meanwhile, Secretary of State for War Brodrick [25th February<=>22nd April] extends his answer of 25th February by adding that Kitchener has informed him "that a sufficient allowance [of rations] is being given to all families in camp, and that they are satisfied and comfortable (Hansard, 90:180). Again on 5th March that "Lord Kitchener is taking all possible steps to secure the humane treatment of refugees" (Hansard, 90:557). [sub-thread continues at 1st March ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = TOTAL WAR]


1901 [1st March] The South African Concentration Camps [VI - The Camps Change Hands]: [Continued from 28th February] On 1st March, the recently appointed "Administrator" of the occupied Boer republics Sir Alfred Milner [1899 (30th May)<=>22nd April] formally assumes responsibility for Britain's rapidly filling network of camps [sub-thread continues at 22nd April ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = TOTAL WAR]

1901 [2nd March] Aged 66 years and ready to retire Andrew Carnegie [<=1892 (30th June)] does a deal with John P. Morgan [1st March<=>1902] which sees his Carnegie Steel Company [<=1892 (30th June)] and two similar companies merged as the United States Steel Corporation [Wikipedia factsheet]. Carnegie nets a personal fortune of USD226 million. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]

1901 [9th March] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XLIII - The Arco-Slaby System]: [Continued from 1st March] Georg von Arco [1897 (27th August)<=>1903 (27th May)] and Adolf Slaby [1897 (27th August)<=>1903 (27th May)] have an article published in Scientific American in which the results of four years experimentation in wireless technology are summarised. The resulting system is considerably lighter and more easily transported than comparable equipment from the Marconi Company [23rd January<=>12th December] [continues at 3rd June ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1901 [23rd March] The Philippine-American War [IV - Aguinaldo Captured] [Continued from 17th April 1900] Having been hunted by America's best for over two years, President[UNTIL TODAY] Aguinaldo is finally run to ground at a village named Palanan [Google maps] on the north-eastern coast of Luzon. A cleverly contrived government sting operation manages to insert an assault company inside Aguinaldo’s compound before revealing themselves, getting the drop on the Presidential bodyguard and effecting the arrest. For a fuller telling of the story see Dumindin (2006? [full text online] - good detail, well told) [sub-thread continues at 19th April 1901 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1901 [28th March] Russia and Manchuria: The global implications of Russia's ongoing annexation of large areas of north-eastern Manchuria [<=1900 (23rd July)] are debated at length in the British Parliament. The central area of concern is as follows ...
portion of China. [...] Indeed, I venture to say that our position in China, and the encroachment of other Powers in that country, constitute at this moment a far graver crisis and are of infinitely more importance to this country than the South African question has ever presented. However great the mistakes that have been made in South Africa by the government - and they have been truly colossal - [...] the position in that country was never out of control. The war in South Africa has cost us five times as much money as was necessary, and ten times as many human lives as were necessary, but we have never lost control of the position [...] This same cannot be said in regard to the Far East. We are there in the presence of the greatest possible danger [...]. When Russia once obtains political and military control in Manchuria, and when the Trans-Siberian railway is completed, by which Russia can throw immense stores of munitions and hundreds of thousands of troops into Manchuria, we shall find ourselves in presence of that force majeure which it will be impossible to deal with. [...] It is not only the question of China that is at stake; it is the question of the future of Asia, and with Asia goes our Indian Empire. [...] The time has come for plain speaking in this matter. Russia respects nothing but force” (Hansard, 92:163-196).

Britain's response to this call for action was (a) to intensify its operations on China's southern border [=>21st June] and (b) to develop a closer military relationship with Japan [=>1902 (30th January)]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


**ASIDE - SMS KRONPRINZ WILHELM IN WW1:** Between September 1914 and March 1915 the **Kronprinz Wilhelm** will have a brief but successful period as a commerce raider [=>1914 (4th September)]. She was then interned in the neutral U.S.A. until their entry into the war in 1917, whereupon she was rebadged as USS **Von Steuben**, and served the remainder of the war as such.

1901 [1st April] **The Switch from Coal to Oil [VII - Talbot Trial Abandoned]:** [Continued from 3rd March 1898] **George Melville** abandons the USS **Talbot** trials, and transfers the experimentation to workshops on dry land [possibly at the Brooklyn Navy Yard]. The Navy Department also sets up the Naval Liquid Fuel Board to monitor progress [sub-thread continues at 10th January 1902 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1901 [4th April] **The RMS Celtic** [Wikipedia shipography=>scrapped following grounding 1928-1933] is launched at Harland and Wolff [1899 (14th January) <=> 1906 (20th September)], Belfast, for service with the White Star Line [1899 (23rd November) <=> 1902 (1st October)]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

**ASIDE - RMS CELTIC IN WW1:** **Celtic** served as an armed merchant cruiser until January 1916, then as a troopship.

1901 [19th April] **The Philippine-American War [V - Aguinaldo Captured]:** [Continued from 23rd March 1901] After a month of interrogation **Emilio Aguinaldo** acknowledges American sovereignty over the Philippines and retires into obscurity for the time being. Other rebel commanders fight on [sub-thread continues at 13th January 1902 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1901 [22nd April] **The South African Concentration Camps [VII - Mortality Statistics (Official Figures Requested)]:** [Continued from 1st March] Secretary of State for War **Brodrick** [28th February <=> 2nd May] is quizzed in Parliament as to conditions in the South African "camps of concentration".
**ASIDE - MORTALITY STATISTICS IN PARLIAMENT:** Mortality statistics and other public health issues appear frequently in the Parliamentary record, especially in times of epidemic, and it is not always easy to separate out genuine concerns as to proper emergency governance from the opportunistic scoring of party political points. Certainly the concentration camps debate is at this point in time becoming distinctly party political in nature.

Brodrick replies as follows ...

"The nature of the shelter varies according to the locality, solid buildings being used where possible. All refugees were placed on the same scale of rations on 27th February. Every provision has been made for medical attendance, and the education of the children is being conducted in sheds or marquees according to the accommodation. [Sir Alfred Milner [1st March<=7th December]] is giving his personal attention to improving the conditions of life in these camps. Records of births and deaths are preserved, and I have telegraphed for figures” (Hansard, 92:895-897).

Brodrick then promises to pass on the figures for Orange River Colony as soon as he receives them from the authorities there. In the field meanwhile a number of Britain's future WW1 commanders¹ are learning their trades and the construction of the 8000 blockhouses needed to protect Britain's lines of communication in South Africa is proceeding apace [sub-thread continues at 2nd May ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = TOTAL WAR]

¹**ASIDE:** We have already pointed to the pre-WW1 experiences of Lord Kitchener, Winston Churchill, Sir John French, Haig, Hamilton, Smith-Dorrien, Gough, and Mahon, all holders of high office in WW1. Other names to conjure with in this respect are Plumer, Rawlinson, and Byng.

1901 [2nd/7th May] The South African Concentration Camps [VIII - Mortality Statistics (Numbers Start to Trickle Through)]: [Continued from 22nd April] Asked again for mortality statistics Secretary of State for War Brodrick [22nd April<=14th June] replies as follows ...

"Lord Kitchener has not yet been able to forward the necessary information as regards the Orange River Colony [no longer the Orange Free State since its annexation - Ed.], but for the Transvaal the numbers are 2840 men, 6083 women, and 14,251 children - and the deaths since the 1st January amount to 284” (Hansard, 93:407-408).

On 7th May he further reports the deaths of 41 men, 80 women, and 261 children in the Orange River Colony but still has no comparable figures for Natal or Cape Colony [sub-thread continues at 14th June ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = TOTAL WAR]

1901 [28th May] The British mining entrepreneur William Knox d'Arcy [Wikipedia biography] concludes an oil prospecting agreement with the Iranian government, and hires the oil engineer George B. Reynolds [no convenient biography] to oversee the drilling [continues at 1908 (26th May) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** FIRST WIRELESS VOICE TRANSMISSION **********
********** FIRST WIRELESS VOICE TRANSMISSION **********
********** FIRST WIRELESS VOICE TRANSMISSION **********

1901 [3rd June] Wireless Telegraphy, Telegraphy¹, and Broadcasting [XLIV - Wireless Telephony Demonstrated]: [Continued from 9th March] The Brazilian priest-engineer Roberto Landell de Moura [Wikipedia biography] publically demonstrates the transmission of a voice signal five miles across São Paolo, Brazil [continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]
ASIDE - WIRELESS TELEPHONY: Note that we have now introduced wireless telephony alongside telegraphy, but not yet "broadcasting". For broadcasting there is no single intended recipient of the transmission in question, all recipients need a receiver, and the technology used must at least closely approximate to a continuous wave system, that is to say, one where the continuity of human voice is not degraded in transit.

1901 [3rd June] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XLV - The Lodge-Muirhead Wireless Syndicate]: [Continued from preceding entry] [Sir] Oliver J. Lodge [1897 (11th May)<=>1902 (14th June)] and Alexander Muirhead [1897 (11th May)<=>1902 (14th June)] file for a British patent (eventually granted on 3rd September 1902 as G.B. Patent 11348 of 1901) under the title "Improvements in Syntonic Space Telegraphy". Around the same time Lodge and Muirhead formalise their five-year-long technical collaboration by setting up the Lodge-Muirhead Wireless Syndicate. The new enterprise gradually expands the Muirhead family business at Elmer's End, South London to cope with the increased demand [continues at 5th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1901 [14th June] The South African Concentration Camps [IX - Mortality Statistics (The Accusation of "Barbarism")]): [Continued from 2nd May] In the House of Commons Secretary of State for War Brodrick [2nd May<=>17th June] is unable fully to explain the status and treatment of native South Africans during the ongoing clearance operations. At an after-dinner speech later in the day the Opposition leader Sir Henry Campbell-Bannerman [1900 (26th September)<=>22nd December] vehemently attacks Lord Kitchener's [28th February<=>7th August] fundamental policy for managing the Boer civilian population, thus ...

"What is that policy? That now that we had got the men we had been fighting against down, we should punish them as severely as possible, devastate their country, burn their homes, break up their very instruments of agriculture. It is that we should sweep [...] the women and children into camps ... in some of which the death-rate has risen so high as 430 in the thousand. [...] A phrase often used is hat 'war is war', but when one comes to ask about it one is told that no war is going on, that is is not war. When is a war not a war? When it is carried on by methods of barbarism in South Africa" (Wikiquote).

This line of argument will be taken up in Parliament by Campbell-Bannerman's Liberal Party colleague Lloyd George [1890 (13th April)<=>17th June] three days later [sub-thread continues at 17th June ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = TOTAL WAR]

1901 [17th June] The South African Concentration Camps [X - Mortality Statistics (Measles in Johannesburg Camp)]: [Continued from 14th June] Secretary of State for War Brodrick [14th June<=>16th July] briefs the House on recent events in the camp at Johannesburg, thus ...

"The deaths at Johannesburg camp from the 1st to the 31st May amounted to six men, six women, and 68 children, and are accounted for by an epidemic of measles. There is an experienced medical officer in charge, assisted by a qualified matron and a large staff of nurses" (Hansard, 95:540-543).

Later in the day an Adjournment Debate on "Mortality in Camps of Detention" is opened with a statement by Lloyd George [14th June<=>18th October] detailing the Liberal Party's accusations of mismanagement in Britain's network of South African concentration camps. Here is an indicative extract from that statement ...

"The facts revealed by [Brodrick], which have come straight from Lord Kitchener, show that there was a state of things at Johannesburg which the Government were afraid to exhibit.
Emily Hobhouse [25th February<=16th July] has made some reports as to what was taking place in the best of these camps - the best equipped and the longest established - and they are sufficiently deplorable. These were camps, not of fighting men, every one of whom would pass a physical test, but of women, many of whom were in a weak condition, and of children. [...] We are told that war is war [...] but we know perfectly well that this is the result of a deliberate policy. [...] The military authorities knew perfectly well it was to be done, and they had ample time to provide for it" (Hansard, 95:573-629).

Brodrick responds by placing some of the responsibility on the Boers themselves, thus ...

"... but my desire is to show that a large number of those individuals who are now in the camps would not be there if we could have induced the enemy to recognise their own responsibilities in the matter. I would say that a large number of these refugees are now in camp, not owing to any wish of the Government, but owing to the action of their own friends" (ibid.)

This debate also includes early mention of Hobhouse's recently published "Report of a Visit to the Camps [etc.]" [full text online] [sub-thread continues at 16th July ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = TOTAL WAR]

1ASIDE: This Report is dated simply "June 1901", but 17th June seems to be its first mention in Parliament. The work contains many critical observations, most of which concern poor sanitation and overcrowding encouraging endemic disease and high infant mortality. For the detailed criticisms and Hobhouse's recommendations as to remediation see the full text, pp13-15. For the remainder of the year the camp population increases gradually from around 90,000 to around 120,000, while the monthly death toll rises from around 1000 to around 3000. RECOMMENDED READING: The Hansard 95:573-629 debate runs to 19 pages of dense transcript but is well worth a look because it provides an excellent example of how, in "protecting" a civil population, non-combatants so easily suffer a greater casualty rate than those actually in the front line.

1901 [21st June] Tibet [I - The Initial Concern]: In a debate in Parliament the Foreign Office is asked whether it is aware that Thubten Gyatso, 13th Dalai Lama of Tibet [Wikipedia biography=>1903 (1st December)] has sent embassy to Nicholas II of Russia [1894 (1st November)<=1904 (8th February)] apparently seeking Russian protection against British adventurism on the Sikkim-Tibet border. The Under Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs, James Gascoyne-Cecil, [4th Marquess of Salisbury] [1893 [a.k.a. "Lord Cranborne"] [Wikipedia biography=>1902 (15th May)] replies that this is indeed how things have been reported in the Russian press, but that independent confirmation is awaited. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1901 [16th/22nd July] The South African Concentration Camps [XI - The Fawcett Committee Formed]: [Continued from 17th June] In an attempt to buy itself time (for there is little doubt as to what the findings are going to be) Secretary of State for War Brodrick [<=17th June] announces the composition of a "Concentration Camp Committee of English Lady Visitors" in the House of Commons on 22nd June. It will be headed by the politically acceptable Millicent G. Fawcett [Wikipedia biography=>12th December]. Hobhouse [<=17th June] is deliberately side-lined for lacking the right sort of "impartiality" [sub-thread continues at 7th August ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = TOTAL WAR] [THREAD = HOW TO START A WAR]

********** BRITISH TRADE UNIONS LOSE A FUNDAMENTAL RIGHT **********

1901 [22nd July] In the case of The Taff Vale Railway Company versus The Amalgamated Society of Railway Servants [Wikipedia factsheet] the British House of Lords rules in favour of the plaintiff and awards £23,000 damages, plus costs. At issue is the right of workers to withdraw their labour without becoming liable for the losses incurred as a result by
their employer. The liberally minded in Britain are appalled, but the decision will be reversed in 1906 [continues at 1906 (28th March ...)]. [THREAD = THE WW1 WORKING CLASS SOLDIER]


1901 [7th August] The South African Concentration Camps [XII - Another Kitchener Ruling]: [Continued from 16th July] In a proclamation delivered to De Wet [1900 (1st September) <= 1902 (15th May)] in person, Lord Kitchener [28th February <= 1st December] rules that Boers still under arms have until 15th September to surrender or else (a) be banished, and (b) have their lands sold in absentia to pay for the upkeep of their dependents in the concentration camps [sub-thread continues at 18th October ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = TOTAL WAR]

**RECOMMENDED READING:** Kitchener's thinking in this is clearly set out in said communication - check it out.

1901 [7th August or hereabouts] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XLVII - The Wardenclyffe Transmitter]: [Continued from 5th August] Nikola Tesla [<= 1st March] starts work on the Wardenclyffe Tower [Wikipedia factsheet], a proposed wireless station at Shoreham, Long Island. Tests will begin on 15th July 1903 but the equipment - basically a gigantic Tesla Coil [<= 1891 (20th May [ASIDE]) - has never been given Tesla's undivided technical attention and never performs to specification. The project will be abandoned by its backers in July 1904, after which Tesla indulges in a number of late-career get-rich-quick projects. However none of these schemes work either, and he will be declared bankrupt in 1916. The Wardenclyffe Tower will be demolished in July 1917. As of 2012 local industrial heritage workers are developing a Tesla Science Centre [Wikipedia factsheet; project website] on the site [continues at 28th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]


1901 [6th September or hereabouts] Seeing is Believing [XCI - The Cinema at War (South Africa Again)]: [Continued from 2nd February] Today's edition of The Showman (reproduced as Plate 1 in Poppel, op. cit.) carries an advertisement for the Mitchell and Kenyon Company's [<= 25th February] "New Series of Boer War Films", describing them as "Startling, Realistic, Pathetic". C. Rider Noble [1899 (12th October) <= 1st October] meanwhile, summarises British frustration in a light-hearted reel entitled "In Pursuit of De Wet" [IMDB entry] [sub-thread continues at 27th September ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [RESEARCH ISSUE - PROPAGANDA BY RIDICULE: Compare British Pathé's (1940) cartoon "Run, Adolf, Run" [YouTube it now] and Movietone News's (1942) irreverent remix of the "Lambeth Walk" [YouTube it now] (targeting Hitler and the Nazi SS, respectively).]

1901 [7th September] The "Boxer Protocol" Signed: After months of diplomatic negotiations Empress Ci Xi [1900 (22nd October) <= 1902 (30th January)] is persuaded to disown the Boxer movement and to allow the Eight Nations' police actions to continue without
interference from her Imperial Army. She also agrees to pay war reparations of (roughly converted) 15,000 tons of silver over 40 years. Russia agrees to withdraw from Manchuria, but only once her railway is secure. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1901 [21st September] The Russians Defend their Railway: The Russian occupation of Manchuria is now extended eastward to include Jilin Province [map, etc.], professedly to protect the rail link to Vladivostok. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1901 [27th September] Seeing is Believing [XCII - The Cinema at War (South Africa Again)]: [Continued from 6th September; browsers are reminded that since 25th February (=q.v.) the religious, intellectual, and political left and centre-left in Britain have been campaigning against what they regard as the "barbarism" inherent in Britain's concentration camp policy against the wives and children of the Boer field forces] Today's edition of The Showman carries an advertisement for the Gaumont Company's [1895 (10th August)<=1902 (31st May)] "Boer Atrocity" [unable to locate IMDB entry], storyboarding it as follows ... "The scene is laid at a Transvaal mine, guarded by a sentinel, a Boer commandant being seen in the foreground. Three more Boers appear with a British prisoner, and on finding, on his person, a Union Jack, get furious, and after a struggle to recover it, the 'Tommy' is shot. The Boers then disperse with the exception of the sentinel, Another 'Tommy', hearing the sound of the shot, crawls up to his dead comrade and covers him with the British flag, which movement catches the eye of the Boer sentinel, who, however, is not quick enough for the Britisher, who fires with deadly effect, which arouses other Boers around; so, quick as a thought, he explodes a box of dynamite […]. When the smoke disperses a scene of devastation is seen, which gradually is replaced by a set piece representing Britannia with a giant Union Jack in the background, which is raised, disclosing the British fleet steaming on the ocean" (reproduced in Bottomore, 2007, X, pp17-18)

As we shall be seeing in due course, the opening weeks of WW1 will see the science of atrocity allegation taken to new heights [=>1914 (5th August) and follow the dedicated sub-thread] [sub-thread continues at 15th October ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


********** TWO R.F. WAVES BETTER THAN ONE **********
********** TWO R.F. WAVES BETTER THAN ONE **********
********** TWO R.F. WAVES BETTER THAN ONE **********

1901 [28th September] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XLVIII - The Heterodyne Receiver]: [Continued from 7th August] The Canadian physicist Reginald A. Fessenden [Wikipedia biography] files for a U.S. Patent (eventually granted on 12th August 1902 as U.S. Patent 706747) under the title "Apparatus for Signalling by Electromagnetic Waves". What he has developed is the "heterodyne receiver" [Wikipedia factsheet], a device which works by generating two oscillatory waves and by then superimposing them to create a third1. The nature of the underlying physics is that when two R.F. waves are allowed to "interfere" with each other in this way the new wave - known as the "beat" - has a frequency which is the difference between the two original waves. Fessenden's stroke of genius then lay in arranging for the two R.F. waves to differ by a frequency in the audible spectrum (say, 1000Hz). It remains then only to add a loudspeaker device to the beating circuit for the inaudible-but-transmittable radio frequencies to have been converted into audible-but-in-itself-
untransmissible sound [continues at 30th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

\[\text{\textbf{ASIDE - WAVE INTERFERENCE AND "BEATS"}}\]: Readers unfamiliar with the phenomenon of "beats" when two waves (electromagnetic, structural, fluid, or for that matter even Mexican) are superimposed will find a helpful illustrated tutorial at click here.

********** HISTORY'S FIRST SEMICONDUCTOR PATENT**********
********** HISTORY'S FIRST SEMICONDUCTOR PATENT**********
********** HISTORY'S FIRST SEMICONDUCTOR PATENT**********

1901 [30th September] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XLIX - Bose's "Sensitive Substances"]: [Continued from 7th August] Jagadish Chandra Bose [1899 (27th April)<=1902] files for a U.S. Patent (eventually granted on 29th March 1904 as U.S. Patent 755840) under the title "Detector for Electrical Disturbances". The equipment in question is Bose's use of carefully mounted galena crystals [c.f., <=1874] in a Hertzian wave detector to compete with the now widely used Branly-Lodge Coherer [<=1890 (20th November)]. This comes after years of painstaking laboratory evaluation of different crystals and different techniques for mounting them [continues at 12th December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

\[\text{\textbf{ASIDE:}}\] Bose did not actually use the term "semiconductor" (nor was it yet in common usage in this context). He was intent upon using "sensitive substances" in "coherers". For a fuller discussion see Aggarwal (2006 online).

1901 [1st October] Upon the death of Abdur Rahman Khan of Afghanistan [<=1880 (1st September) his titles pass to his oldest son Habibullah Khan [Wikipedia biography] 1915 (17th April)], who runs his country as a fiercely independent unaligned state for the next 18 years. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


1901 [15th October] Seeing is Believing [XCIII - Early Motion Pictures ("Fire" and "Stop Thief")]: [Continued from 27th September] The latest releases from the Williamson Company [1900 (14th June)<=1902 (8th May)] are "Fire" [IMDb entry] and "Stop Thief" [IMDb entry]. Both works will be noted by cinema historians of the future for their technical innovations [Wikipedia factsheets] [sub-thread continues at 1902 (8th May) ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

********** CHAMBERLAIN BLAMED FOR THE WAR**********

1901 [18th October] The South African Concentration Camps [XIII - Mortality Statistics (Lloyd George Speaks Out)]: [Continued from 7th August] Following his party leader's attack on the "barbarism" with which Britain has been treating enemy civilians [<=14th June] Lloyd George [1890 (13th April)<=1904] reflects in a non-Parliamentary speech that Britain has unwisely raised "a barrier of dead children's bodies between the British and the Boer races in South Africa. Who was responsible for this? Who but Mr. Joseph Chamberlain, who had caused the war in the Transvaal" [source] [sub-thread continues at 17th June ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = TOTAL WAR]

********** THE WATERSHED**********
********** THE WATERSHED**********
********** THE WATERSHED**********

********** BRITAIN GIVES UP ON A GERMAN ALLIANCE**********
********** AND CULTIVATES FRANCE INSTEAD**********
1901 [25th October] After several years of trying to broker an Anglo-German Alliance of some sort [<=1899 (21st November)], and in the face of sustained German criticism of Britain's motivation, strategy, and tactics in the ongoing Second Boer War, Colonial Secretary Joseph Chamberlain [1899 (21st November)<=>7th December] allows himself (deliberately, we must surmise) to insult the Germans, by accusing their armies of atrocity and misconduct against the French during the Franco-Prussian War [<=1870 (19th July)]. The German press responds with fury, and things go progressively downhill from here to 1914. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

RESEARCH ISSUE - THE NEUROPSYCHOLOGY OF INSULT AND GRUDGE:
There is nowadays [January 2016] a reasonably well-established neuropsychology of human emotional grudge-bearing. Click here for a Wikipedia factsheet outlining the role of the neuroanatomical structures known as the amygdalae in cross-referencing short-term emotional experience to longer-term (and in itself unemotional) episodic memory. Then, for some of the specifics, try Marzluff et al (2010 online) - fascinating!

1901 [1st November] Sir Garnet Wolseley, 1st Viscount Wolseley [1885 (26th January)<=>d. 1913 (26th March)] is appointed Commander-in-Chief of the Forces, a position he will hold for more than five years. [THREAD = THE WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

1901 [1st/10th December] The South African Concentration Camps [XIV - Kitchener Offers to Empty the Camps]: [Continued from 18th October] In a meaningless (for it is from the outset unworkable) gesture Lord Kitchener [7th August<=>7th December] offers to release the concentration camp population back to the Boers. Lacking the necessary wherewithal the Boers have no alternative but to turn the offer down [sub-thread continues at 7th December ...], [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = TOTAL WAR]

1901 [7th/8th December] The South African Concentration Camps [XV - Mortality Statistics (Lord Milner Apportions Blame)]: [Continued from 1st December] On 7th December Lord Milner [22nd April<=>1902 (1st July)] confesses in correspondence with Colonial Secretary Joseph Chamberlain [25th October<=>1902 (15th May [ASIDES])] that the death-rate in the South African camps is "no doubt a condemnation of the camp system", and that "the whole thing, I now think, has been a mistake" (source). On the following day, in correspondence with the politician Richard Haldane [1st Viscount Haldane] [Wikipedia biography=>1905 (10th December)] he implicitly blames Lord Kitchener [1st December<=>1902 (4th March)] for the "sad fiasco", adding ...

"We attempted an impossibility - and certainly I should never have touched the thing if, when the 'concentration' first began, I could have foreseen that the soldiers meant to sweep the whole population of the country higgledy piggledy into a couple of dozen camps ...” (ibid.)

[sub-thread continues at 12th December ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = TOTAL WAR]

1901 [12th December] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [L - Wireless Goes Intercontinental]: [Continued from 30th September] The Marconi Company [9th March<=>1902 (22nd March)] successfully transmits across the North Atlantic between Poldhu1, Cornwall, and St. Johns, Newfoundland. Early in the New Year the company will take on a young electrical engineer named Henry J. Round [Wikipedia biography=>1913 (9th December)], of whom more later. Over the next five years other coastal stations follow
at Dover, the Isles of Scilly, Portland, Spurn Head, St. Anne's Head, Roche Point, and Bere Island [map, etc.][continues at 23rd December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1ASIDE: For further technical details see Aggarwal (op. cit.). Marconi had erected two installations at Poldhu, namely a master station on the downs [map, etc.] and a cliff-top-out-station further out on Lizard Head [map, etc.]. These were administratively one and the same, however, and are referred to in the literature as either "Poldhu" or "the Lizard", both being both. However it so happened that these Marconi resources were some 25 miles east of the older intercontinental cable telegraphy station at Porthcurno [map, etc.]. No love seems to have been lost between the two technologies. In fact, being marketplace rivals, the Porthcurno people were reportedly among the first to eavesdrop on their more modern neighbours [=1902 (4th June)]. For a fuller history we recommend Lee (2012 online). There is a wireless telegraphy heritage museum at Poldhu [heritage museum website] and a cable telegraphy heritage museum at Porthcurno [heritage museum website] but we have no evidence that they have ever come to blows.

1901 [12th December] The South African Concentration Camps [XVI - The Fawcett Report Withheld]: [Continued from 7th December] Having been five months in the preparation the Fawcett Report [16th July <=>1902 (4th March)] is not immediately released for publication [sub-thread continues at 22nd December ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS][THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD][THREAD = TOTAL WAR]

********** AN UNWELCOME SERMON **********

1901 [22nd December] The South African Concentration Camps [XVII - Aked Dares to Criticise]: [Continued from 12th December] The Nottingham-born priest and "courageous crusader against social evils" (reference text) Charles F. Aked [no convenient biography, but the reference text above is useful] tells his Liverpool congregation some unwelcome truths ...

"Great Britain cannot win the battles without resorting to the last despicable cowardice of the most loathsome cur on earth - the act of striking a brave man's heart through his wife's honour and his child's life. The cowardly war has been conducted by methods of barbarism ... the concentration camps have been Murder Camps" (source).

The message does not go down well and - unlike Campbell-Bannerman [14th June <=>1905 (10th December)], who had said much the same six months earlier - Aked is nearly lynched for his impertinence [sub-thread continues at 1902 (4th March) ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS][THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD][THREAD = TOTAL WAR]

********** CLASSIC OF PRO-WAR LITERATURE **********

1901 [22nd December] The publishers start taking orders for Alfred E.W. Mason's [Wikipedia biography] novel "The Four Feathers" [Wikipedia factsheet and plot], in which much is made of the long-standing English practice of presenting someone with a white feather as an accusation of (chicken-)cowardice. [THREAD = THE DUTY TO KILL][THREAD = WW1 PACIFISM AND CONSCIENTIOUS OBJECTION][THREAD = THE WW1 MIDDLE CLASS SOLDIER]

1901 [23rd December-1903 (16th February)] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LI - The Shoemaker System]: [Continued from 12th December] The American engineer Harry Shoemaker [Wikipedia biography] files for a U.S. patent (eventually granted on 6th January 1903 as U.S. Patent 717767) under the title "Multiplex Wireless Signalling System". Related patents are filed on 12th May 1902 (U.S. Patent 717769 granted on 6th January 1903), on 11th June 1902 (U.S. Patent 754904 granted on 15th March 1904), and on 9th August 1902 (U.S. Patent 756718 granted on 5th April 1904), all under the title "Wireless Signalling System", and on 16th February 1903 (U.S. Patent 824676 granted on 26th June 1906) under the title "Wireless Telegraph System". The combined claim for originality is the sensitivity of the receiver and the build quality and attention to detail overall [continues at 1902 ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]
1902 The German War Ministry approves deployment of the **150mm sFH02 Heavy Field Howitzer** [Wikipedia factsheet]. The weapon fires a 40kg shell with a muzzle velocity of 325 mps, giving it a range of four miles or so. 416 of the weapons will be available for service when war begins. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

1902 **Abdulla and Company** [no convenient factsheet] bring a new range of expensive cigarettes onto the market. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD][THREAD = THE WW1 MIDDLE CLASS SOLDIER]

**ASIDE - ABDULLAS IN WW1:** David Jones later recalled that Abdullas were generally regarded by the lower ranks as "immaculate" ("In Parenthesis", p72), and that they came - like water in the wilderness - but rarely "out of the earth"; his section used to have to make do with Lambert and Butler's Trumpeters (or go without).

1902 A consortium of Italian businessmen buys the **SS Republic** [=1871 (4th July)], renames her **SS Citta di Napoli** [=scraped 1910], and has her refitted to carry predominantly steerage class passengers. For the next five years she will service the Italy-U.S. emigration market. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1902 **Carl Jung** [1900<=1903] publishes "*Zur Psychologie und Pathologie sogenannter Okkulter Phänomene*" [in English as "On the Psychology and Pathology of So-Called Occult Phenomena"] [full German text online]. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1902 **Vickers, Sons, and Maxim Limited** [1901 (2nd October)<=1911 (28th March)] buys a half stake in **John Brown and Company** [1899 (1st June)<=1905 (??th July)], Clydebank. Around the same time **Guest, Keen, and Company** [=1900 (19th July)] merges with **Nettlefold Brothers' Screw Company** [=1878 (1st March)] and **Crawshay Brothers (Cyfarthfa) Limited** [=1879 (10th May)<=1910] to form **Guest, Keen, and Nettlefolds Limited** [modern corporate website]. Around the same time **Armstrong, Whitworth, and Company** [=1897<=1905 (??th July)] diversify into the expanding market for cars and trucks. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]

1902 Aware of the inadequacies of its existing **Mekometer** rangefinding system [no convenient factsheet, but see ASIDE below], which requires a two-man crew and follow-up calculation, the British Army holds competitive trials of the **Barr and Stroud** [1888<=1905 (27th May)], **Marindin** [1901<=1907], and **Forbes** [=1901] equipment. They decide in favour of the Marindin system. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

**ASIDE:** The history of these trials is told in detail by Sambrook (2005 online).

1902 **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting** [LII - Pickard's Crystal Diode Rectifier]: [Continued from 1901 (23rd December)] Aware of **Karl Ferdinand Braun**'s [1901 (5th August)<=1903 (27th May)] historic paper on the rectifying properties of **galena crystals** [=1874], and rightly suspecting that there is money to be made from better understanding the electrical behaviour of crystals in general, the **American Telephone and Telegraph Company** [=1893 (8th May)] places the engineer **Greenleaf W. Pickard** [Wikipedia biography] in charge of a major research programme, much along the lines of that carried out by **Jagadish Chandra Bose** [=1901 (30th September)], only with far greater
resources to throw at the problem [continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1902 Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LIII - The Creed Teleprinter]: [Continued from preceding entry] The British Post Office places an order with the Canadian-born Glasgow-based inventor Frederick George Creed [Wikipedia biography] for a consignment of 12 "keyboard perforators". These machines combine a standard typewriter keyboard with a ticker tape reader and a Morse Code hole punch. As messages are typed in on the keyboard each character is punched as its Morse equivalent. This is all done "off line", that is to say as a routine office task, rather than "on line" [continues at 22nd March ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

ASIDE - "OFF LINE" PREPARATION: In industry and computing an "off line" process is one which does not occupy any of the installation's time-critical resources. With telecommunications systems the most important resource is, naturally enough, the communication channel itself. It is therefore good business sense to run that channel at the highest possible transmission speed with the minimum possible dead time. With the Creed system, for example, only when a prepared tape is ready is it passed to the telegraph operator for transmission. Other companies were quick to follow suit - see Krum's Printing Telegraph [=1904 (6th October)] and Siemens' Schneltelegraph [=1905 (30th June)]. To see how a Cold War teleprinter room was organised we recommend a visit to the decommissioned military command and control bunker at Kelvedon Hatch, Essex [see museum website at http://www.secretnuclearbunker.com/ (sadly the Virtual Tour does not include the Comms Room)].

1902 Ludwig Borchardt [=1895] organises excavations at the Pyramid of Sahu-Re [map, etc.], el-Amarna [map, etc.], and Heliopolis [map, etc.]. [THREAD = PRE-WW1 INTELLECTUAL RIVALRY]

1902 Computerised Naval Fire Control [III - Enter John Dumaresq]: [Continues from 1901] The Australian-born British naval gunnery researcher John S. Dumaresq [Wikipedia biography] starts a technical collaboration with Elliott Brothers [1894 (30th March) => 1911 (??th May)] to build analog computing devices to assist the Royal Navy's gunnery officers compute target ranges, speeds, and offsets. At the heart of the resulting system is a device known formally as the "Elliott Brothers Mark 1 Dumaresq" [Wikipedia factsheet], which upon being fed with the estimated course and speed of a target ship and the known course and speed of your own ship returns "range rate" and "Dumaresq deflection" [see insets below] [continues at 1903]. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE CONTROL]

ASIDE - COMPONENTS OF VECTORS: Readers unfamiliar with the resolution of two-dimensional vectors into their vertical and horizontal "components" may like to browse for <tangential velocity> and <perpendicular velocity> before proceeding. Readers who are then still none the wiser will at least understand why Dumaresq wanted a computer to do the job.

ASIDE - "DEFLECTION SHOOTING": See the Companion Resource (Section 2).

KEY BALLISTICS VOCABULARY - RANGE RATE AND DUMARESQ DEFLECTION: If the target ship B is moving relative to firing ship A then its range rate is the component of the relative movement vector along the AB initial sighting line, whilst the Dumaresq deflection is the component of that same vector to the left or right of said line. Both movement components need to be compensated for when elevating and training (respectively) your guns.

1902 Noting its safety, stability, and ease of handling prior to use, the German Army adopts TNT [=1837] as its standard artillery explosive, in preference to picric acid [=1888]. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]
1902 [10th January] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LIV - The De Forest Telegraphy Company]:** [Continued from 1902] The American engineer Lee de Forest [Wikipedia biography] forms the De Forest Wireless Telegraph Company [no convenient factsheet] later in the year (24th December) he files for a U.S. Patent (eventually granted 5th January 1904 as U.S. Patent 748597) under the title "Wireless Signalling Device". The novelty lies in his use of "secondary antennae" - a series of vertical conductors set parabolically in the ground with the primary antenna at their geometrical focus - to give the transmissions directionality along the axis of symmetricality [continues at 22nd March ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1902 [10th January] **The Switch from Coal to Oil [VIII - The Beaumont Strike]:** [Continued from 1902] Experimental drillings near Beaumont, TX, strike oil, triggering the Texas Oil Boom [Wikipedia briefing] and thereby making an all-oil U.S. Navy a virtual certainty [sub-thread continues at 22nd January 1902 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

"It may be necessary to kill half the Filipinos in order that the remaining half of the population may be advanced to a higher plane of life" (General Shafter).

1902 [13th January] **The Philippine-American War [VI - Atrocity]:** [Continued from 1902] The American national conscience (that is to say, a few wishy-washy Congressmen and some lefty academics and writers), having made its voices heard in the aftermath of the Cuban adventure [see 2nd November 1898ff], was, toward the end of the Philippine war, further appalled by reports of battlefield atrocities at the hands of American servicemen or those under their direct command. This, from the usually carefully sanitised Wikipedia, will serve as illustration enough ...

'A soldier from New York: "The town of Titaia was surrendered to us a few days ago, and two companies occupy the same. Last night one of our boys was found shot and his stomach cut open. Immediately orders were received from General Wheaton to burn the town and kill every native in sight: which was done to a finish. About 1,000 men, women and children were reported killed. I am probably growing hard-hearted, for I am in my glory when I can sight my gun on some dark skin and pull the trigger."

As a comparison, Himmler is estimated to have killed 5000 in reprisal for the killing of Obergruppenführer Reinhard Heydrich in Prague in 1942 [sub-thread continues at 4th July 1902 ...]. [THREAD = WW1 REPRISALS AND ATROCITIES]

1902 [20th January or thereabouts] **The Rise of Herbert Hoover [IV - The Great Fingall Consolidated Fraud of 1902]:** [Continued from 1902] Hoover's next move takes him back to Western Australia, where he becomes resident manager for BMC, who are presently maintaining some 25 mines in the territory. The one with the greatest potential for promotion is Great Fingall Consolidated Mine, situated on the rich "Day Dawn Reef" [Wikipedia briefing], and producing about 6000 oz. of gold per month. Now it will later emerge that BMC's company secretary in London, one Anthony Rowe, knowing in advance what the latest management reports were going to say, has been insider dealing Great Fingall shares "for several years". (Indeed he appears to have re-invested his profits by buying into the BMC partnership.) No doubt he does the same in February 1902 when Hoover starts cabling "extremely optimistic reports" on the mine, which Rowe circularises in BMC's marketing material.
ASIDE: Nobody knows for certain whether Hoover also dabbled in insider dealing on this occasion, but we shall proceed on the assumption that he did.

However by Autumn 1902 Rowe's losses in other speculative dealings lead to his forging Great Fingall share certificates as security for emergency loans. Then, as his accumulated frauds - estimated at £140,000 in all - start to come to light in December 1902 he absconds to Canada. On 8th January 1903 the Great Fingall shareholders convene an "Indignation" meeting, and BMC promises to make good Rowe's thefts, although it is noted at the next shareholders’ meeting 23rd April 1903 that none of January's promises have been acted upon. Action is also taken against Hoover for what claimants assert is a debt he guaranteed jointly with Rowe. When the case comes to Court 19th May 1903 the judgement goes against Hoover, despite his being defended by Sir Rufus Isaacs [check him out]. Hoover appeals the judgement and on 18th November 1903 the original ruling is reversed for insufficient proof of the joint liability. Rowe is extradited from Toronto 17th September 1903 and sentenced 18th December 1903 to ten years' imprisonment. Hoover buys his one sixth share in the partnership, bringing his personal holding in BMC up to one third.

1902 [22nd January] The Switch from Coal to Oil [IX - Melville Finally Cracks It]: [Continued from 10th January 1902] Informed by his workshop research George Melville comes to the conclusion that successful oil firing requires not just a particular type of oil, but also a number of particular features to the boiler. The key problem is that oil is actually TOO GOOD a fuel, and if you try to burn it in a coal furnace most of the power goes up the flue (hence the lacklustre early sea trials). Instead you need longer boilers (preferably the new all-tube "Scotch" boilers), air and fuel preheaters, and injectors capable of atomising the hot fuel into a spray. Bring all these design factors together, and only supply and cost remain to be sorted out [sub-thread continues at 1st August 1904 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = STOCK MARKET AND FINANCIAL SHARP PRACTICE]

1902 [30th January] The Anglo-Japanese Alliance: Britain and Japan sign a treaty of mutual aid and understanding. The treaty will be renewed in 1905 and 1911 and is noteworthy in the present context for bringing Japan into WW1 as one of the Allies [=>1914 (23rd August)]. At around the same time Empress Ci Xi [<=1901 (7th September)] re-establishes her government in Beijing and begins a long and painful process not just of physically rebuilding her country but also of bringing it psychologically - at times kicking and screaming - into the 20th century. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


1902 [4th March] The South African Concentration Camps [XVIII - The Fawcett Report Finally Debated]: [Continued from 1901 (22nd December)] Having been gathering dust for the past ten weeks the Fawcett Report [<=1901 (12th December)] is finally released for Parliamentary debate. Arthur C. Humphreys-Owen [Wikipedia biography] (Liberal, Montgomeryshire) opens the debate for the Opposition by pointing to two fundamental weaknesses in
Lord Kitchener's concentration camps strategy. The first weakness is that Boer civilians who had been persuaded to swear allegiance to the British Crown thereby became constitutionally entitled to the protection of its armed forces, not persecution by them. The second weakness was that the army had been totally unprepared for the differences between managing prisoners-of-war and civilian refugees, thus...

"For instance, we believe it is reckoned that sufficient tent accommodation is given to an Army in the field if one tent is allowed to sixteen men. Experience has proved that more than three times this amount of accommodation is necessary in a concentration camp, and that anything over five in a bell tent means overcrowding (Hansard, 104:402-467).

[end of sub-thread]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = TOTAL WAR]

1902 Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LV - The Baviera System]: [Continued from ??th January] Having collaborated with the Marconi Company [1901 (12th December)<=21st December] in Britain back in 1899, and having reportedly acquired some patents of his own in the meantime, the retired Spanish military engineer Julio Cervera Baviera [Wikipedia biography] now sets up an experimental system of his own under the name Sociedad Anónima Española de Telegrafía y Telefónica sin Hilos [= "Spanish Wireless Telegraphy and Telephone Corporation Limited"] [continues at 4th June ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1902 HMS Holland 1 [1901 (2nd October)<=museum exhibit 1983] makes her first trial dive. Later in the year she will be used as a live firing target to assess her resistance to underwater explosions. [THREAD = THE WW1 SUBMARINE NAVIES]

ASIDE: Holland 1 was sold for scrap in 1913 but sank while under tow to the scrapyard. She was then raised from the sea-bed in 1982 and is presently a walk-through exhibit at the Royal Navy Submarine Museum, Gosport [museum website].

1902 In a deal which sees Alfred Nobel's fortune continue to grow even after his death, the Branobel Company [<=1879] acquires oilfields at Ramana [modern Azerbaijan]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1902 Seeing is Believing [XCIV - Early Motion Pictures (Méliès and Williamson Again)]: [Continued from 1901 (15th October)] The latest offering from Méliès [1900 (15th April)<=9th August] is a re-enactment reel entitled "Éruption Volcanique à la Martinique" [in English as "Volcanic Eruption on Martinique"; IMDB entry; YouTube it now]. In Britain, meanwhile, the Williamson Company [<=1901 (15th October)] is about to score a box-office hit with a tear-jerker entitled "The Soldier's Return" [IMDB entry and storyboard] [sub-thread continues at 31st May ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1902 Tibet [II - The Yak Invasion]: [Continued from 1901 (21st June)] Following minor damage to the Sikkim-Tibet border signage (caused, some say, by an unruly herd of yak) the Under Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs, James Gascoyne-Cecil, [4th Marquess of Salisbury] [a.k.a. "Lord Cranborne"] [1901 (21st June)<=1916 (29th June)] is asked whether the markers are going to be replaced. He assures the House that "the political officer for Sikkim" will see to it when next he passes [continues at 1903 (1st December) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

ASIDE - THIBET IN PARLIAMENT: There is only one mention of Thibet [sic] in the 1902 Hansards, and that is merely a 20-word promise to "erect or restore boundary pillars where necessary" on the Sikkim-Tibet frontier. By comparison there will be 25 mentions in
February 1904 once hostilities break out. We presume that the "political officer for Sikkim" is the **John Claude White** we shall shortly be hearing about [<=1903 (1st December)].

1902 [15th-31st May] **The Treaty of Vereeniging:** On 15th May a 60-man Boer delegation gathers at Vereeniging [map, etc.](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Second_Boer_War) to discuss possible peace terms. Suggestions then fly back and forth between Pretoria and London for a fortnight and by 27th May the British Cabinet has an acceptable draft. This wording is passed to the Boers the following day and the finally agreed version is formally signed on 31st May by the acting Boer Presidents **Schalk W. Burger** [Wikipedia biography](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Schalk_W._Burger) and **De Wet** [<=1901 (7th August)].

**ASIDE:** Burger’s compliance was forced upon him by a "holy duty" to protect the Boer civilians presently incarcerated in the British concentration camps from further suffering. 27,927 persons died in the camps, 22,074 of whom were children.

The Union of South Africa [Wikipedia factsheet](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Union_of_South_Africa) will be created by bringing together the British and the Dutch provinces into a composite nation on 31st May 1910 [==]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

**WAR RETROSPECTIVE - TOTAL WAR:** Treaty #2 of the First Hague Convention [<=1899 (18th May)] expressly forbade the "collective punishment" of civilians. However, as we have already seen [<=1900 (1st September) and follow the sub-thread], the treatment meted out to Boer non-combatants in Britain's concentration camps could easily be construed as just that.

**WAR RETROSPECTIVE - INFANTRY TACTICS:** See earlier discussion [<=1899 (10th November [ASIDE])].

1902 [31st May] **Seeing is Believing [XCV - The Cinema at War (The Victory Celebrations)]:** (Continued from 8th May) The victory in South Africa is celebrated in such reels as "Signing Peace at Pretoria" [re-enactment; IMDB entry](https://www.imdb.com/title/tt0020080/), "Peace with Honour" [IMDB entry](https://www.imdb.com/title/tt0020086/), and "Peace Crowds at the Mansion House" [IMDB entry](https://www.imdb.com/title/tt0020084/) [sub-thread continues at 18th June ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = TOTAL WAR]

**WAR RETROSPECTIVE - PROPAGANDA:** Britain's conduct of the Second Boer War was generally perceived in the international community as bullying and unfettered gold-grubbing. Naturally enough the sympathies of the ethnically Flemish provinces of north-western France, Belgium, Holland, and East Frisia were immediately with the ancestrally Dutch Afrikaners. But on top of that Britain had for decades been competing for territory, political influence, and/or trade with France, Germany, and Russia, all of whom spent the war systematically sniping at Britain in both factual and satirical publications. Britain responded with an equally systematic war of words and images of its own, denigrating the Boers.

**RESEARCH ISSUE:** In a 1999 paper entitled "The Press and the Public During the Boer War 1899-1902" [full text online](https://www.jacquelineb.org/presspublic.html) **Jacqueline B. Hughes** [no convenient biography] introduces Britain's newspapers and editors and explains how censorship worked in Cape Town and London. Other than this we have been unable to locate much academic debate concerning the mechanisms by which the British political and military Establishments primed the Press as to what to say and the movie producers as to what to put to screen.

**ASIDE:** During the Second Boer War the Directors of Military Intelligence were (until 1st May 1901) [Sir] John C. Ardagh [Wikipedia biography](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_C._Ardagh) and (thereafter) [Sir] William G. Nicholson [1st Baron Nicholson] [Wikipedia biography](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_G._Nicholson). As such these officers were responsible (among other things) for the operation of the “Military Intelligence Section (M17)”, and, within that section, (a) for the censorship of operational reporting from theatre (textual, photographic, and cinematographic), and (b) for the wider requirements of foreign and domestic propaganda (issuing press releases and official statements, and commissioning various larger reports).
We therefore suspect that most generals and press barons (a) thought alike anyway, and (b) could communicate by social osmosis over Britain's infamous "Old Boy Network" [Wikipedia factsheet]. In 1914 the task of directing the nation's propaganda effort was taken up by "Wellington House", the War Propaganda Bureau [=1914 (6th August)], about whom much more in due course.


WAR RETROSPECTIVE - CINEMA PER SE: As to the content of the films, the academic Elizabeth G. Strebel [University homepage] noted in 1983 as follows ...

"One is struck by the proliferation of films of troop movements - embarking at Southampton, disembarking at Capetown, marching out to the front. To us, a stationary camera fixed on a line of helmeted troops striding single file up a gang plank appears to have little interest at first glance. But for the Victorian public this subject matter held a deep attraction. The succession of the various colonial regiments underscored the solidarity of the Empire. The uniforms, generals, the very physical bearing of the men served as an expression of Imperial confidence" (Strebel, 1983, quoted in Bottomore, 2007 op. cit., Chapter XI, pp2-3). Strebel, E. G. (1983). Imperialist iconography of Anglo-Boer War Film Footage. In Fell, J. L. (Ed.), Film before Griffith. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press.

And here is Dash (op. cit. [=1897 (18th April)]) on the use of arranged and re-enacted footage to complement genuine material from the war zone in order to construct a broader documentary narrative1 ...

"The South African conflict set a pattern that later war photography would follow for decades (and which was famously repeated in the first feature-length war documentary, the celebrated 1916 production The Battle of the Somme [=1916 (1st July)], which mixed genuine footage of the trenches with fake battle-scenes shot in the altogether safe environs of a trench mortar school behind the lines. The movie played to packed and uncritically enthusiastic houses for months). Some of these deceptions were acknowledged; [the R. W. Paul Company [=1900 (18th September)]], who produced a series of shorts depicting the South African conflict, made no claim to have secured his footage in the war zone, merely stating that they had been 'arranged under the supervision of an experienced military officer from the front'“.

1RESEARCH ISSUE - NARRATIVE TRUTH: The problem with "broader documentary narratives" is that even when put together by even the most impartial media editor (cinematographic or conventional) they tell their stories in particular ways, and just because those tellings "hang together" in themselves does not make them "the truth". Often - perhaps always - they will only be local truths, one-sided histories, each in part an apologia [=a defensive justification of one's actions] and in part a hagiography [=a celebration of one's own saints].

WORKED EXAMPLE/STUDENT EXERCISE: Read the entry concerning the 1901 measles outbreak in the Johannesburg concentration camp [=1901 (17th June)]. These deaths were facts, but only when you try to explain why they happened do you start to get down to "the truth". Now re-read the Hansard debate of 17th June 1901 [=] and note the several competing explanatory "truths". Repeat this sort of analysis for the Paris Attacks of November 2015 [Wikipedia factsheet].

And here is Fielding (1972, op. cit.) with a telling anecdote concerning film fakery ...

"The British Gaumont Company [=1901 (27th September)] also engaged in faking. One of the Company's principals [...], in a lecture to the British Kinematographic Society
in 1936, described Gaumont's faking of the "Signing of the Peace at Vereeniging in 1902" [no IMDB entry under this title, but possibly Signing Peace at Pretoria as above]: Our little picture, which was ludicrously imaginative, showed actors posing as Lord Kitchener, Lord Milner, and the British staff with the Boer leaders [...] discussing dramatically and finally signing the Peace conditions. We included Lord Roberts and only found out afterwards that he had not been there" (p43; italics original).

RECOMMENDED READING: Fielding's Chapters 3 and 4 contain many similar inside stories.

********** "THERE WAS A YOUNG FELLOW OF ITALY1 ..." **********

1902 [4th June] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LVI - The Porthcurno Intercepts]: [Continued from 22nd March] Concerned that their submarine cable telegraphy business is under commercial threat by the wireless telegraphy companies, the directors of the Eastern Telegraph Company [Wikipedia factsheet=>1901 (3rd June)] hire an engineer named Nevil Maskelyne [Wikipedia biography=>1903 (13th June)] to set up temporary wireless facilities of their own at their Porthcurno Cable Station [<=1901 (12th December [ASIDE])], Cornwall, in order to eavesdrop on the Poldhu Wireless Station [<=1901 (12th December [ASIDE])] across the bay [continues at 6th June ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1ASIDE: This is not intended to rhyme with "wittily". For the broader story, see Hong (1997).


1902 [6th June-5th November] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LVII - The Fessenden System]: [Continued from 4th June] Reginald A. Fessenden [<=1901 (28th September)] files for a U.S. patent (eventually granted on 12th August 1902 as U.S. Patent 706742) under the title "Wireless Signalling". A related patent is filed on 1st July 1902 (U.S. Patent 706746 granted on 12th August 1902) under the title "Signalling by Electromagnetic Waves". The thrust of the completed system is that it is capable of transmitting a tolerably pure continuous wave, and of modulating the amplitude of that wave via a microphone with the waveforms of human speech. On 5th November 1902 Fessenden founds the National Electric Signalling Company [factsheet] [continues at 14th June ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1See the New England Wireless and Steam Museum factsheet at http://www.newsm.org/Wireless/Fessenden/Fessenden.html

1902 [14th June] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LVIII - The Lodge-Muirhead System]: [Continued from 6th June] [Sir]1902 Oliver J. Lodge [<=1901 (3rd June)], Alexander Muirhead [<=1901 (3rd June)], and Edward E. Robinson [no convenient biography] file for a G.B. patent (eventually granted as G.B. Patent 13521) under the title "Improvements in and Relating to Coherers". The core invention (by Robinson1) is a "disc coherer" [image at http://www.sciencemuseum.org.uk/online_science/history_of_science/objects/smrg-34845], which exploits the fact that ambient Hertzian waves affect the resistance of a small steel disc rotating down into an oil-covered reservoir of mercury. Because the device requires no periodic tapping or shaking it is commonly described as "self-cohering" [continues at 9th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1ASIDE: Robinson was an employed research assistant and, as such, only partly owned any inventions he made on behalf of his employers.

1902 [18th June] Seeing is Believing [XCVI - Early Motion Pictures (Deutsche Bioskop Again)]: [Continued from 31st May] Deutsche Bioskop [1899 (30th May)<=1908 (27th February)] is reorganised as a "G.m.b.H.", a German limited liability company [sub-thread continues at 9th August ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]
1902 [4th July] The Philippine-American War [VII - Peace in the Philippines] [Continued from 13th January 1902] With the main concentrations of rebels taken care of, President Roosevelt declares a General Amnesty. Nevertheless there are still pockets of insurgency in remote areas and outlying islands [end of The Philippine-American War sub-thread; however the broader narrative now continues as The Philippines in Transition at 1st June 1903 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


1902 [29th July] The new Saxondale Hospital [Nottingham University factsheet], Nottingham, is formally opened for patients. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1902 [6th August] RMS Carpathia [Wikipedia shipography =>1912 (14th April)] is launched at Swan Hunter and Wigham Richardson [1893 (2nd February) <=>1906 (7th June)]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1902 [9th August] Seeing is Believing [XCVII - Early Motion Pictures ("The Coronation of Edward VII")] : [Continued from 18th June] The latest offerings from Méliès [<=8th May] are a staged re-enactment entitled "Le Sacré d'Édouard VII" [in English as "The Coronation of Edward VII"; IMDb entry] and the soon-to-be-famous science fiction film "Le Voyage dans le Lune" [In English as "A Trip to the Moon"; IMDb entry; YouTube it now] [sub-thread continues at 1903 (1st January) ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]


ASIDE - SMS KAISER WILHELM II IN WW1: The Kaiser Wilhelm II was interned in the neutral U.S.A. until their entry into the war in 1917, whereupon she was rebadged, firstly as USS Kaiser Wilhelm II then as USS Agamemnon, and served the remainder of the war as such.

********** THE DANES SUCCEED WHERE TESLA FAILED **********

1902 [9th September] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LIX - The Poulsen System Patented]: [Continued from 14th June] After several years in development the Danish engineers Valdemar Poulsen [Wikipedia biography =>1903 (19th June)] and Peder Oluf Pedersen [Wikipedia biography] file for a Danish patent on the "Poulsen Arc Transmitter", a continuous spark system requiring no induction coil. The system includes an improved form of shunt resonant circuitry [<=1900 (20th December [Duddell]) and patent Danske #5590 will eventually be granted on 3rd April 1903 [continues at 21st December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

ASIDE: Some later historians (e.g., Goldsmith, 1918 online, Chapter 2) will acknowledge William Duddell's [<=1900 (20th December)] moral rights as an inventor-academic by referring to the generic arc design as the "Duddell-Poulsen Arc". The 1902 development is noteworthy in the present context because the resulting "Poulsen System" will be one of those discussed as an alternative to the Marconi System when the British Parliament eventually does a drains-up on wireless expenditure ten years later [=>1912 (11th October)].

1902 [1st October] The French military engineer Louis H.A. Baquet [no convenient biography] is appointed Assistant Director of the Bourges Fonderie des Canons [= Bourges Arsenal].

1902 [23rd October] Zionism Pre-WW1 [XI - The Commission on Alien Immigration]: [Continued from 1898 (2nd November)] Having only recently tilted Europe in the direction of Armageddon [<=1901 (25th October)] the British Colonial Secretary Joseph Chamberlain [15th May=>1903 (24th April)] meets Theodor Herzl [1898 (31st October)=>1903 (24th April)] for the first time and expresses sympathy with the Zionist cause. They begin to correspond over possible sites for a Jewish homeland [sub-thread continues at 13th November ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1902 [4th November] Panama Switches Empires [IX - The Treaty of Wisconsin]: [Continued from 17th October 1899] After three years of fighting the PLC has been beaten in the field, and so acting as honest broker the U.S. Navy arranges for peace talks between the PLC and the PCC to take place aboard USS Wisconsin [Wikipedia shipography], presently at anchor off Panama City protecting U. S. interests. The peace treaty is eventually signed on 4th November [sub-thread continues at 3rd November 1903 ...] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1902 [13th November] Zionism Pre-WW1 [XII - A Question in the House of Commons]: [Continued from 23rd October] A newly elected Herbert Samuel [1st Viscount Samuel]1937 [check him out=>1912 (19th July)] enquires as to the conditions under which it is intended to issue settlement leases in British East Africa and Uganda. He is directed to the instructions covering the former but told that those covering Uganda are not yet approved (Hansard, 114:871-872) [sub-thread continues at 1903 (24th April) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1902 [22nd November] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LX - Cape Breton Opened]: [Continued from 9th September] The Marconi Company's [22nd March=>1903 (18th January)] new Cape Breton Wireless Station, Nova Scotia [map, etc.] is formally opened [continues at 1903 (18th January) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1902 [21st December] Computerised Naval Fire Control [IV - Dreyer Builds a Reputation]: [Continued from 1902] Frederic C. Dreyer [1901 =>1905] is appointed Gunnery Officer on the new HMS Exmouth [Wikipedia shipography], and does so well at the job that this ship will score best in the Home Fleet gunnery drills from 1904 to 1907 [continues at 1905 ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE CONTROL]

1903 Fritz Haber [1894=>1909] conducts research into the "equilibrium constant" of two-way chemical reactions, specifically that between nitrogen and hydrogen to produce (and be produced from) ammonia [continues at 1909 ...]. [THREAD = THE INDUSTRIAL AND SCIENTIFIC REVOLUTION]
ASIDE - EQUILIBRIUM CONSTANTS: The practical benefit of this sort of data is that it allows the conditions - temperature, pressure, etc. - of best-return to be determined. In the present case we do not want our nitrogen and our hydrogen back, we want the commercially valuable ammonia.

1903 Conwy Lloyd Morgan [<=1894] now publishes a Second Edition of his "An Introduction to Comparative Psychology" [<=1894; full text online]. Around the same time Carl Jung [1900<=1906] completes his thesis on occult phenomena. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]


1903 Having assisted at committee level for three years, Shunkichi Kimura [<=1900] is commissioned into the Imperial Japanese Navy the more effectively to guide its development of home-grown wireless telegraphy equipment. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1903 A young Edward L. Spears [Wikipedia biography=>1914 (14th August)] enlists in the Royal Dublin Fusiliers. Being French-born to British parents he is fluently bilingual, and therefore an ideal candidate when the War Office resolves in 1911 to develop a joint French-English code book. [THREAD = WW1 EYE-WITNESS TESTIMONY]

1903 An Army Staff College captain named Arnold R. Burrowes [see the karkeeweb biography at http://www.karkeeweb.com/burrowsmain.html=>1905] prepares prototypes of a new arrangement of packs, pouches, and strappings for the British Army, in which leather is replaced by canvas webbing. It goes into evaluation by the War Office [continues at 1905]. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]


1903 The Piobaireachd [pronounce as 'pea-brock'] Society [contemporary factsheet] is formed in Scotland to promote "classical bagpiping" and to hold an annual competition. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS] [THREAD = WW1 ROMANTIC NATIONALISM]
1903 [18th January] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXI - The 1903 Roosevelt Telegram]**: [Continued from 1902 (21st December)] As a publicity stunt to promote its new wireless station at Wellfleet, MA [henceforth just Cape Cod] the Marconi Company [1902 (21st December)<>13th June] arranges for the U.S. President Theodore Roosevelt [Wikipedia biography] to send a greetings telegram across the North Atlantic for delivery to Britain's Edward VII [1st January<>1910 (6th May)] [continues at 27th May ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1903 [8th February] The Dutch ballistics engineer Pieter D. van Essen [no convenient biography] patents the *Brisanzschrapnell* [a.k.a. "Universal" or "Double Action"] artillery fuse [no convenient factsheet]. This is a clever device which allows an appropriately filled artillery round to be used either as a high explosive percussion round or else an air-bursting shrapnel round, depending on how its fuse is set [continues 1909 (9th January) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

**ASIDE - FUSE SETTING:** Readers are reminded that many/most shells are not capped off with their fuses by the manufacturer, but with a non-explosive bung of some sort. The fuses are far more sensitive and are fitted on a "just in time" basis.

1903 [13th February - ONGOING] **The Banana Wars, 1904-Ongoing [I - Overview]**: [New sub-thread] With the imminent independence of Panama [= 3rd November 1903], the time has come for the United States to bring the not already aligned countries of Central America and the Caribbean under its political, military, and economic hegemony, and moreover with as little fuss as possible. There are to be no colonisations or long-term occupations, but merely the strictly monitored complaisance of *foederati* states [Wikipedia briefing]. President Theodore Roosevelt [check him out] explains his strategy thus - "speak softly," he says, "and carry a big stick" [check it out]. It will fall to the U.S. Navy to be that big stick.

**HERE'S A CONTEMPORARY POLITICAL CARTOON WHICH SAYS IT ALL.**

**AND A MIDDLE FINGER FROM THE CREW OF USS THEODORE ROOSEVELT (CVN-71).**

Unsurprisingly, being a *foederatus* state brings with it both socioeconomic and political fall-out. The populace tends to demand self-determination and the right of the people peaceably to assemble; people like, in short, to think for themselves. It will become necessary therefore, time after time after time, to subvert with cash or other inducement this or that local generalissimo, aristocratic dynasty, political clique, or business cartel, and get them to impose the imperial order upon the population at large from within. That is how the Romans and the British did it in their time. It thus becomes the norm (a) to sponsor tolerably friendly right-wing petty dictatorships, and (b) to help those regimes keep a tight lid on internal dissent. In peacetime this necessarily involves constant intelligence gathering and showing the flag, and in times of troubles it involves sending gunboats, landing marines, deploying special forces to do whatever special forces do, and leaving behind "advisers" and even more intelligence gathering assets. In his 1947 book "History of the Modern American Navy", naval historian Donald Mitchell documents the following "big stick" interventions prior to WW2 (note that some places come up more than once) ...

**** BANANA WARS, 1903-1941 ****

Venezuela, 1903; Cuba, 1906; Nicaragua, 1909 and 1923; Mexico, 1910; Haiti, 1910 and 1930; Dominican Republic, 1911 and 1916; Honduras, 1923-1924

Including smaller interventions, Waters (2015) counts 30 in the same period. The U.S. Navy even established a Special Service Squadron [check it out], based at Balboa, Canal
Zone, so as to minimise deployment time. So successful was this squadron, that it became known as "the State Department's private navy".

INSET: There is a lot to be learned from the available Internet action narratives of the ships and USMC personnel deployed in these operations. Here is a quick list for flavour's sake (we have linked the ones we like most): SHIPS: USS Cleveland (C-19); Denver (C-14); Des Moines (C-15); Milwaukee (C-21); Tacoma (C-18). USN/USMC: Smedley Butler; Theodore H. Cartwright; Merritt A. ["Red Mike"] Edson; Calvin B. Matthews; Lewis B. ["Chesty"] Puller; Arthur St. Clair Smith; H. H. Utley; Clark H. Woodward. The most complete source, however, is "One Hundred and Eighty Landings by United States Marines, 1800-1934" (Ellsworth, 1975 [Amazon]), which gives a page or so of detail on every instance.

After WW2 the interventions became, if anything, more far-flung and more daring, eventually extending the length of Latin America, and typically involving the CIA. Here are the main events as set out in David Horovitz's (1967) book "From Yalta to Vietnam" [Amazon], plus those which have happened (or been continued) since then, including campaigns waged primarily by economic sanctions ...

***** BANANA WARS, WW2-2018 *****

Two of the Banana Wars are particularly noteworthy in the present context. These are (a) Guatemala, for so clearly demonstrating the cynicality of the interventionist paradigm, and (b) Cuba, for so clearly demonstrating how to use foreign-based dissidents against a regime [check it out] [sub-thread UNDER CONSTRUCTION]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

************ ARE CAVALRY JUST MOUNTED INFANTRYMEN? ************

***** SHOULD THEY CARRY SWORD, LANCE, CARBINE, OR RIFLE? *****

************ SHOULD THEY BE SWORDMEN OR MARKSMEN? ************

1903 [10th March] The Cavalry Controversy [1 - The 1903 Debate]: Concerned at the indifferent performance of both cavalry and infantry in the Second Boer War [<=1899 (12th October)] the British government conducts a drains-up debate. For his part Sir John French [1901 (30th January)<=1907 (1st January)] takes the traditionalist view that the "cavalry spirit" gives them a natural edge over infantry in battle. But should they carry a carbine and fire from the saddle, or a lance, or a sabre? Or should they discard the lance and carry a rifle and fire while dismounted; and, if a rifle, how much time and effort should they have put into learning how to use it effectively? The issues will still be rumbling along when war arrives and provides a lot of the answers [continues at 1914 (23rd August) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

1903 [18th March] The new Brecon and Radnor Lunatic Asylum [Wikipedia factsheet], Talgarth, receives its first patients. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1903 [1st April] The Siemens Company [1892 (6th December)<=1908 (23rd June)] takes over Nuremberg-based Schuckert and Company to create the Siemens-Schuckertwerke [Wikipedia factsheet], to specialise in power generating and transmission systems. The Schuckertwerke is noteworthy in the present context for its successful diversification into aircraft design and construction during WW1. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]

1903 [19th-22nd April] Russian Anti-Semitism VI - The Kishinev Pogrom]: [Continued from 1891 (23rd April)] Anti-Jewish rioting breaks out in Kishinev [in modern Moldova], resulting in 49 Jewish dead and some 500 injured. In the ensuing four years there will be some 600 or
so local pogroms, prompting a new wave of Jewish refugee emigration to Western Europe, the U.S.A., and Palestine. \[THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD\]

1903 [24th April] **Zionism Pre-WW1** [XIII - The Uganda Scheme (an Offer Made)]:

[Continued from 1902 (13th November)] Colonial Secretary **Joseph Chamberlain**'s [1902 (23rd October)<=>1904 (26th June)] latest suggestion to **Theodor Herzl** [1902 (23rd October)<=>26th August] for a Jewish homeland is a tract of land at Uasin Gishu/Gwas Ngishu [not an easy one: basically find Kisumu at map, etc., face north, and embrace the wide horizon], a 5000-square-mile plateau in British East Africa. Herzl takes the idea away to discuss it with fellow Zionists [sub-thread continues at 26th August ...]. \[THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS\] \[THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD\]

1903 [1st-4th May] **Anglo-French Detente**: Britain's German-blooded **King Edward VII** stages a four-day state visit to Paris, and wins over the people of France with his joie de vivre. Modern historians (for example, Dunlop, 2004) routinely regard this visit as the psychological preliminary to the signing of the *Entente Cordiale* a year later [see 8th April 1904]. Modern Conspiracy Theorists (for example, Docherty and MacGregor, 2013) go further, and see the visit as being planned by what we today like to call a *New World Order* cabal, of which the King himself may either have been a conspirator or a useful idiot.

1903 [27th May] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting** [LXII - The Telefunken System]: [Continued from 18th January] **Georg von Arco** [<=1901 (9th March)] and **Adolf Slaby** [<=1901 (9th March)] find themselves in a patent dispute with **Karl Ferdinand Braun** [1902<=>1904 (22nd April)]. After the personal intervention of **Kaiser Wilhelm II** [1900 (17th October)<=>1905 (32nd March)] they agree to merge their interests as the *Gesellschaft für drahtlose Telegraphie m.b.H., System Telefunken* [henceforth just *Telefunken* [= "Society for Wireless Telegraphy Limited, Telefunken System"] [Wikipedia factsheet]=>1906 (1st April); now absorbed into the modern AEG Company] [continues at 13th June]. \[THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS\]

***** From War to Troubled Peace *****

1903 [1st June-11th June 1913] **The Philippines in Transition** [I - The Moro War, 1902-1913]

[Continued from 4th July 1902, but as a new sub-thread] The main thrust of the American effort during the Philippine-American War had been on the large northern island of Luzon, and by 1902 the survivors there knew better than to answer back any more. However on the smaller islands of the Sulu Archipelago [Google maps] the local Moro people still have some fight left in them. The war here will go on until 1913, and will be peppered with accusations of war crimes by both sides. For example, between 5th and 8th March 1906 **General Leonard Wood** [Wikipedia biography] presides over what will go on to be called "The Moro Crater Massacre" [Wikipedia briefing]. From 1909 the archipelago is under the command of the up-and-coming "Black Jack" **Pershing** [check him out], who approves his troops' habit of burying dead Moro fighters - Muslims here, not Christians as on Luzon - in the same grave as a dead pig (Pershing, *Autobiography*). Pershing is also behind the heavily one-sided **Battle of Bud Bagsak** [Wikipedia briefing], the engagement which effectively brings the Moro War stage of the Philippine insurrection to a close [sub-thread continues at 8th February 1935 ...]. \[THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD\] \[THREAD = WW1 REPRISALS AND ATROCITIES\]

**RECOMMENDED READING**: We recommend Carolyn Bronson's 2016 monograph entitled "Filipino Insurgencies (1899-1913): Failures to Incite Popular Support" (Bronson, 2016 [full text online]).

1903 [11th June] **The Balkans Again** [I - Serbia, 1903]: Upon the assassination of **Alexander I of Serbia** [<=1889 (6th March)] the Serbian military appoint [relationship unclear - Ed.]
the previously exiled Peter Karadordevic as Peter I of Serbia [Wikipedia biography] (1914 (24th June)). Having spent much of his exile in France the new king starts to align Serbia with France and Russia, and to cultivate old animosities against Austria-Hungary. His coronation 15 months later (on 21st September 1904) will be filmed by the Sheffield-based film director Frank S. Mottershaw [Wikipedia biography] (1904 (8th February)) and released as "Coronation of King Peter I of Serbia" [IMDB entry: YouTube it now], [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1ASIDE: In Part 8 we headlined 15 entries as "The Balkan Crisis". They covered the period 1875 to 1889, at which juncture things went relatively quiet. However, the above assassination reopens old wounds and the Balkans will revert to type as Europe's very long-standing "powder-keg" (1451 (3rd February)).

1903 [13th June] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXIII - The Royal Institution Intercept]: [Continued from 27th May] Following the hacking of the Poldhu Wireless Station's transmissions the previous summer [1902 (4th June)], Hong (1997) suspects further foul play behind some strange presentation problems at an afternoon demonstration of the Marconi Company's Wares at the Royal Institution, London. The speaker at this event is Marconi's Scientific Advisor [Sir] John A Fleming [Wikipedia biography] (1904 (16th November)), and the demonstration is intended to receive a message of greeting from Poldhu but what they get, however, is a rogue transmission on the same frequency, famously including an abusive Limerick (full the fuller story see Marks, 2011 online at http://www.newscientist.com/article/mg21228440.700-dotdashdiss-the-gentleman-hackers-1903-hulz.html#.VCVxcY10zug]. What Hong suspects is that the Eastern Telegraph Company has now incited its chief hacker Nevil Maskelyne (1902 (4th June)) to even greater mischief by transmitting across the Marconi demonstration in order to expose the true insecurity of the system (the Marconi Company has been loudly trumpeting the intrinsic security of frequency-tunable systems of late). Fleming duly writes a letter of righteous indignation to The Times, and Maskelyne duly replies that he had merely disclosed a weakness which had - in the interests of science itself - to be disclosed [continues at 19th June ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1903 [19th June] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXIV - The Poulsen Patents Extended]: [Continued from 13th June] Valdemar Poulsen [1902 (9th September)] now files for a U.S. patent (eventually granted on 9th May 1905 as U.S. Patent 789449) under the title "Method of Producing Alternating Currents with a High Number of Vibrations". The innovation in question is to have enclosed the arc in an atmosphere of hydrogen, which objectively allows frequencies as high as 1MHz to be generated. Atmospheres of alcohol are also effective, probably, Poulsen guesses, because the alcohol will produce hydrogen ions once in use. Unwanted ionisation products are removed by applying a strong transverse magnetic field across the arc. Around the same time the Poulsen Company negotiates an equipment production partnership in Germany with the already well-established C. Lorenz A.G. [Wikipedia factsheet] in Berlin and Telefon-Fabrik Joseph Berliner [Wikipedia factsheet] in Hannover [continues at 8th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1ASIDE: Sparks and arcs are comparatively brutal physical events and produce ionisation by-products which then interfere with the continuity of the spark. They therefore need "quenching" (a term borrowed perhaps from the sponging out of gunpowder cannons following each discharge). Poulsen's magnetic quenching system helped clear these ionisation by-products to one side, thereby allowing his equipment to achieve higher frequencies than would otherwise have been the case.
1903 [27th July] **The Berlin-Baghdad Railway [II - Konya to Belemedik]**: [Continued from 1896 (29th July)] Work begins on the next section of the proposed Berlin to Baghdad line heading southeast from Konya through the mountains toward **Ulukisla** [map, etc.] and Belemedik [map, etc.] [continues at 1912 (21st December) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1903 [2nd August] **Seeing is Believing [XCIX - The Cinema at War (The "Elijah's Day" Macedonian Uprising)]:** [Continued from 1st January] Ethnically Bulgarian Christian Nationalist forces in **Macedonia** [map, etc.] and **Thrace** [map, etc.] rise up against occupation by the Ottoman Empire. The rebellion will be systematically quashed over the coming three months by the Ottoman authorities, with many surviving Nationalists either taking to the hills or else seeking sanctuary in Bulgaria. The war is covered cinematographically by C. Rider Noble [<=1900 (1st October)] in "**Macedonian Insurgents Fight the Turks**" [IMDB entry].

RECOMMENDED READING: Check out Kardjilov and Mossop's (2012 online) "**Cinematograms of a Balkan conflict: Charles Rider Noble in Bulgaria, 1903-1904**".

As in previous wars in this region the Ottomans soon stand accused of wayside executions and other atrocities, prompting Pathé Frères [1900 (14th July)<=1904 (8th February)] to release "**Atrocities Turques**" [In English as "Turkish Atrocities in Macedonia"; IMDB entry] [sub-thread continues at 17th August ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

**ASIDE - THE HISTORY OF MILITARY NEWSREEL:** It is now more than five years [=1898 (15th February)] since moving images of far-off wars first drew audiences in Western Europe and the U.S., and by 1903 the material had carved out its own place in an evening's entertainment. Here is how one producer, Charles Urban [1898 (15th February)<=17th August], will subsequently explain things ...

"The picture shows at most picture halls were the last item on the programme. These were known as 'chasers'. Their quality became such as to help clear the house quickly after the main show. I watched this with regret as this part of the theatre's programme could be made a real attraction [...]. Improving the quality of the screen projection, with attractive events of the day, shown in the theatre the same evening of the happening together with novel features, would so impress the management as to advance the picture higher up in the programme. [...] I finally interested [Alfred Moul [no convenient biography]], chairman of the Alhambra Theatre, Leicester Square. I knew he was well acquainted with the 'powers that be' in Portsmouth and I prevailed upon him to secure facilities from the naval authorities to permit me to take a series of pictures of life in the British Navy. The photographic results were so successful that Mr. Moul wanted them shown at the Alhambra. [...] This led to further facilities being granted at Whale Island, Southsea, known as HMS Excellent, the proving ground for gun and shell tests[...]. I personally was appointed official cinematographer to the navy department at Portsmouth by [Sir Percy M. Scott [Wikipedia biography]]" (Mousel and McKernan, 1999, pp53-54). Mousell, C. B. and McKernan, L. (Eds.) (1999). *A Yank in Britain: The Lost Memoirs of Charles Urban*. Hastings: Projection Box.

1903 [17th/22nd August] **Seeing is Believing [C - The Cinema at War (The "Urbanora")]:** [Continued from 2nd August] On 17th August the aforementioned Charles Urban [2nd August (ASIDE)<=1915 (20th December)] starts to showcase the "**Urbanora**", a cinematic spectacle of "scientific and travel films" at the Alhambra Music Hall [Wikipedia factsheet], Leicester Square. Among the works featured (and selling well) are those of the cameraman F. Martin-Duncan [Wikipedia biography], specialist in micro-cinematographic wonders such as close-ups of bees (1903), cheese mites (1903 [YouTube it now]) (really creepy because we happily put them in our mouths!), and ants (1906). On 22nd August (Georges Méliès' brother) Gaston Méliès [Wikipedia biography] New-York-City-based Star Film
Company [Wikipedia factsheet] releases its first production documentary under the title "The Yacht Race" [IMDB entry] [sub-thread continues at 1904 (8th February) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1903 [26th August] Zionism Pre-WW1 [XIV - The Uganda Scheme (an Offer Considered)]: [Continued from 24th April] Theodor Herzl [24th April<=1904 (undated)] duly takes the Uasin Gishu/Gwas Ngishu offer [=24th April] to the Sixth Zionist Congress in Basel, where it receives a (predictably) lukewarm reception [sub-thread continues at 1904 (undated) ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1903 [6th October] The marriage takes place in Darmstadt, Germany, of Prince Andrew of Greece [Wikipedia biography] and Princess Alice of Battenberg [Wikipedia biography] (=1902 (=7th November)<=1911 (=7th December)], [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1903 [8th October] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXV - Wireless in the Royal Navy]: [Continued from 19th June] Having spent four years looking into the problems of naval wireless telecommunications from a variety of perspectives [Sir] Henry Bradwardine Jackson [1900 (4th July)<=1905 (7th February)] now takes command of the new battleship HMS Duncan [Wikipedia shipography]. He will remain in this command until 16th September 1904 during which time Duncan will be stationed in the Mediterranean receiving signals from the Poldhu Wireless Station [1901 (12th December [ASIDE])<=1914 (5th August)] [continues at 1904 ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1903 [27th October] Using a three-phase AC motor the AEG Company [=1887] achieves a world record speed for a train of 210 kph [=131 mph]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1903 [3rd November 1903] Panama Switches Empires [X - The Republic of Panama]: [Continued from 4th November 1902] In the aftermath of the Colombian Civil War, the United States decides that an independent Panama is the key to a secure Isthmian canal, and so arrange for Panamanian separatists (some with financial interests in the project) to declare an independent republic. President Theodore Roosevelt [check him out] recognises the new nation three days later, and Colombia - frankly - is too war-weary to do much about it. The question now is this - will Panama be able to remain independent? Having dumped the Spanish Empire, will the new republic now simply be a vassal state of the American Empire?

ASIDE: The German poet Goethe had exactly these concerns in mind when concluding "But I should wonder if the United States were to let an opportunity escape of getting such a work [an Isthmian canal] into their own hands" (Conversations with Eckermann, 21st February 1827).

This and a dozen similar problems across Central America and the Caribbean will exercise the U.S. Navy during the coming decades in what is nowadays referred to as the Banana Wars [check it out] [end of Panama Switches Empires sub-thread]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1903 [1st December or thereabouts] Tibet [III - The Younghusband Expedition]: [Continued from 1902 (15th May)] In order to secure the mountain kingdom of Tibet from Russian interference the British send a 2000-man armed diplomatic mission under James R. MacDonald [Wikipedia biography], accompanied by [Sir] Francis E. Younghusband [Wikipedia biography] (=1904 (2nd February)), and the political officer for Sikkim John Claude White [no convenient biography]. They arrive at Lhasa the following July only to discover that Thubten
Gyatso, 13th Dalai Lama of Tibet [1901 (21st June)<=>1904 (7th September)] has sought sanctuary 1500 miles to the north in Manchuria [continues at 1904 (7th September) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1904 The German Navy tests and adopts a 9mm long-barrelled variant of Georg Luger's pistol [1898<=>1908], designating it the P04. [THREAD = WW1 SMALL ARMS]

1904 Émile Rimailho [=1898] now releases for service the upgraded Model 1904 155mm Court-Rimailho Howitzer. Around the same time the German optical physicist Carl P. Goerz [no convenient biography] devises the "prismatic dial sight", a novel system of optical rangefinding. It will be adopted by the British Army in 1907 as "Sight, Dial, No. 7", and to service the supply contract Goerz sets up in London as C.P. Goerz Optical Works Limited. Around the same time the Krupp Company [1896<=>1909 (9th January)] engineer Fritz Rausenberger [Wikipedia biography] leads a special project to develop the Dicke Bertha [= "Big Bertha"], a 420mm [= ca. 17"] L11 howitzer on a conventional (albeit very large) gun carriage. During the development they liaise closely with Karl Kehrer [Wikipedia biography] at the War Ministry's Artillerieprüfungskommission (APK) [Wikipedia factsheet=>1913 (??th October)]. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

ASIDE - FORTRESS-BUSTING ARTILLERY: Industrial investments of this scale do not just happen - they have a role to play. The Big Berthas were produced in response to a specific request from no less a personage than Alfred von Schlieffen [=1891], because in the Schlieffen Plan he could afford no delays in crushing the Belgian Army forts.

1904 The Russian-born German-trained chemist Chaim Weizmann [see own entry=>1915 (8th June)], recently arrived in Britain, gets a lecturing post at the University of Manchester. He specialises in the use of bacterial fermentation processes on an industrial scale to produce valuable chemicals which are otherwise difficult to synthesise. His most successful discovery is to use the bacterium Clostridium acetobutylicum to produce acetone [Wikipedia chemistry]. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY] [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMS INDUSTRIES]


1904 HMS Ariadne [1876 (26th April)<=>1908 (??th March)] is detached from HMS Vernon (Shore Establishment), and sent to Sheerness to act as a Torpedo School. The ageing HMS Warrior [=1861 (24th October)] joins her to host a wireless telegraphy school. [THREAD = THE WW1 SUBMARINE NAVIES]

1904 Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXVI - The Alexanderson Alternator System]: [Continued from 1903 (8th October)] The General Electric Company's [<=1892 (24th March)] Swedish-American engineer Ernst F. W. Alexanderson [Wikipedia biography=>1906 (24th December)] designs a 50kW alternator-based 100kHz wireless transmitting system for a planned long-range transmitting station at Brant Rock, MA, [map, etc.] [continues at 28th January ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1904 [not specifically dated] Zionism Pre-WW1 [XV - The Uganda Scheme (a Property Viewed)]: [Continued from 1903 (26th August)] A three-man delegation from the Zionist Congress tours Uasin Gishu/Gwas Ngishu [maplink at 1903 (24th April)], reporting back to Theodor Herzl [1903 (26th August)<=>1905 (27th July)]. Some of the supporting legal work is devolved onto the up-and-coming Welsh lawyer-politician Lloyd George [1890 (13th April)<=>1905 (10th December)] [sub-thread continues at 1905 (27th July) ...], [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]
1904 [1st January] The Royal Small Arms Factory [1895<=>1907 (26th January)], Enfield, now releases an improved version of its 1895 Magazine Lee-Enfield (MLE) Rifle. The new model is the Short Magazine Lee-Enfield (MLE), Mark I [Wikipedia factsheet], a shortened version of the original [see the characteristic blunt nose], now loadable from a stripper clip. A Mark II upgrade will follow in 1906 but the truly classic WW1 weapon will be the 1907 Mark III [=>1907 (26th January)]. [THREAD = WW1 SMALL ARMS]


1904 [2nd February] Tibet [IV - Progress Report]: [Continued from 1903 1st December] When news of the Tibetan campaign [<=1903 (1st December)] starts to get out in Britain searching questions are asked in Parliament. One Liberal Party M.P., shown in Hansard only as "Buchanan" [whom we presume is Thomas R. Buchanan [Wikipedia biography] - Ed.], complains as follows ...

"Colonel Younghusband [1903 (1st December)<=>7th September] has something like 2,000 men with him, exclusive of camp followers. It seems to me to be an abuse of the King's Speech to describe this as a simple political mission. In the first place you are sending a mission over the border into a foreign country and you are accompanying it with a large military force. It cannot be described as a political mission. Colonel Younghusband is accompanied by a force too large for an escort and too small for an army, and the conditions are exactly similar to those which led to the Afghan war" (Hansard, vol 129 cc148-82). [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1904 [8th February-1905 (5th September)] The Russo-Japanese War, 1904-1905: This war is fought between Imperial Japan and Imperial Russia under Nicholas II of Russia [1901 (21st June)<=>1914 (30th July)] over territorial rights in Manchuria and Korea. Here are the main events ...

The Battle of Port Arthur, 1904; The Battle of the Yellow Sea, 1904; The Siege/Blockade of Port Arthur, 1904; The Battle of Mukden, 1905; The Battle of Tsushima, 1905

The overall outcome of the war is an historically significant victory for the Japanese, with terms laid down in the U.S.-brokered Treaty of Portsmouth [=>1905 (5th September)]. The war is noteworthy in the present context for exposing the Russians as systemically weak in organisation, equipment, and infrastructure. Their under-performance is certainly not lost on the Germans, given the fact that the Schlieffen Plan [<=1894] is predicated upon an inefficient Russian mobilisation allowing them to win a swift war in the west before worrying about the east. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1904 [8th February-1905 (5th September)] Seeing is Believing [CI - The Cinema at War ("Attack on a Japanese Convoy")]: [Continued from 1903 (17th August)] Frank Mottershaw [<=1903 (11th June)<=>1910 (3rd July)] releases his latest documentary reel under the title "Attack on a Japanese Convoy" [IMDB entry] [sub-thread continues at 1905 (3rd July) ...], [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

ASIDE - COVERAGE OF THE RUSSO-JAPANESE WAR: Around two dozen difficult-to-date actualities and re-enactments were put out during 1904 by Pathé Frères [1903 (2nd August)<=>1906 (15th December)].
1904 [8th-9th February] **The Battle of Port Arthur:** This two day naval battle is fought as part of the Russo-Japanese War [<=preceding entry] between a Japanese fleet under Heihachiro Togo [Wikipedia biography] and elements of the Russian Pacific Fleet under Oskar Stark [Wikipedia biography]. Several ships are damaged on both sides. Villiers [<=1899(12th October)] covers the events for Britain’s illustrated press. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1904 [23rd February-17th September] **The Rise of Herbert Hoover [V - The Golden Horseshoe Fraud]:** [Continued from 20th January 1902] UNDER CONSTRUCTION [sub-thread continues at 8th March 1906 ...], [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = STOCK MARKET AND FINANCIAL SHARP PRACTICE]

1904 [23rd February] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXVIII - Stone's Multiple Spark-Gap]:** [Continued from 28th January] John S. Stone [<=1900 (8th February)] files for a U.S. Patent (eventually granted 16th August 1904 as U.S. Patent 768000) under the title "Space Telegraphy". The principal claim to originality is the use of a series of small spark-gaps rather than a single big one, this allowing much higher frequencies to be generated [continues at 22nd April ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1904 [24th February] The experienced and highly respected Stepan Makarov [1878 (16th January)<=>13th April] takes command of the Imperial Russian Pacific Fleet, based at Port Arthur, Manchuria [= the modern Lushun], and sets about raising its morale and combat readiness. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1904 [29th February] **Cardiography [II - The Bull Chronophotogram]:** [Continued from 1901] The Dublin-born French-nationalised experimental physicist Lucien Bull [Wikipedia biography=>1911 (15th September)] publishes a paper entitled "Motional Mechanism of the Insect Wing", in which he describes how high-specification cinematography can be used for "chronophotography" [Wikipedia factsheet], the production of photographic image-sets from which the micro-timing of naturally occurring events (in this case the movements of a fly's wing in flight at better than a thousand frames per second) can be accurately extracted. Bull is presently a research associate of l'Institut Marey [Wikipedia factsheet] in Paris, France's centre of excellence for the "standardisation and control" of physiological research apparatus (Dibattista, 2005 online) [sub-thread continues at 1909 (TBA) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

1904 [14th March] **William Pakenham** [Wikipedia biography=>1905 (27th May)] is appointed British Naval Attaché to the Imperial Japanese Navy. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

***** LE GRAND STITCH-UP *****

1904 [8th April] **The Entente Cordiale:** Representatives of the British and French governments sign three diplomatic "Declarations" known cumulatively as the Entente Cordiale [Wikipedia factsheet]. Of the three parts, (1) relates to territories in Newfoundland and West and Central Africa, (2) relates to territories in Siam, Madagascar, and the New Hebrides [=modern Vanuatu], and (3) relates to Morocco and Egypt. The spirit of the three Declarations taken together, and the specifics of (3) in isolation, are very negatively interpreted by the Germans because until now France and Britain had spent a lot of effort sabre rattling at each other while German merchants made trading inroads in the space between. Now, they suspect that Britain and France are ganging up on them.
Which as a matter of conscious aggressive strategy they were!

Declaration (3) consists of 14 Articles and resolves a number of long-standing disagreements over each other's intentions in Morocco and Egypt. Germany takes this development seriously, for they are well aware of Revanchist [=Revenge for France's defeat in the 1870 Franco-Prussian War] sentiment in France. Moreover five of the 14 articles are unpublished, and will not come to light until a 1911 newspaper disclosure - check out the 14 articles. Morel (1915) calls this "dishonest diplomacy" (e1770). Docherty and McGregor (2013) agree that the cynical purpose of the exercise is to allow the navies and armies of the signatories to focus their resources on the German threat rather than diverting a proportion of those resources onto each other. The Royal Navy, for example, will shortly be covering the French Atlantic ports, and scaling down its presence in the Mediterranean in favour of a home-based Grand Fleet. The 14 articles contain between them (in their English version) 1137 words. Deaths in WW1 number 15 to 19 million, so the assembled diplomats killed some 13,000 people for every word they signed off [THREAD = WW1 TREATIES AND ALLIANCES] [THREAD = WW1 GRAND STRATEGIES] [THREAD = CONSPIRACY AGAINST GERMANY]

1904 [13th April] The Battle of the Yellow Sea: This naval battle is fought off Port Arthur, Manchuria, as part of the Russo-Japanese War [<=1904 (8th February)] between units of the Imperial Russian Navy under Stepan Makarov [1904 (24th February)<=>dies this day] and a Japanese raiding force. There is little direct action but Makarov’s flagship, the Petrovavlovsk [Wikipedia shipography] is sunk by a Japanese mine on her way back into port and Admiral Makarov is one of the 679 sailors killed. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]


1ASIDE: Students of cognitive psychology may be interested to hear that this is the Müller of "Müller and Pilzecker (1900)" fame. Müller’s notion of the Konsolidierung [= "Consolidation"] of memory remains a centrepiece of modern memory theory.


1904 [30th April-1st December] The St. Louis Fair: This seven-month-long celebration of the centennial of the Louisiana Purchase [Wikipedia factsheet] features, amongst many many other things, a giant birdcage, the largest organ in the world, the ice-cream cone, and Puffed Wheat. There is even a daily circus-style re-enactment of scenes from the Second Boer War [<=1899 (12th October)] featuring 600 assorted veterans. You could even have your photograph taken with (the real) Geronimo. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]
1904 [6th May] The Panama Canal, Second Attempt: President Theodore Roosevelt [[check him out]] appoints John Findley Wallace [Wikipedia biography] as Chief Engineer for a second try at an Isthmian canal, only this time going up-and-over through lock-stairways rather than at sea level through cuttings, as previously. Construction will take ten years, with the maiden transit taking place on 15th August 1914. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


1904 [28th May] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXX - De Forest's Directional Antennas]: [Continued from 22nd April] Lee de Forest [1902 (?7th January)⇐=16th November] files for a U.S. Patent (eventually granted 11th October 1904 as U.S. Patent 771818) under the title "Wireless Signalling Apparatus". The novelty lies in the use of a rotatable metal plate or (if larger) screen aerials, which allow the bearing of the transmitter in question to be determined. As with Braun's Phased Array Antennas [⇐=17th November] this development is noteworthy in the present context as an aid to locating enemy shipping [continues at 6th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1904 [20th June] Zionism Pre-WW1 [XVI - The Alien Settlement Debate]: [Continued from 1904 (undated)] A House of Commons debate on British East Africa explicitly mentions a "Jewish settlement" and asks "at whose instigation this thing was started" (Hansard, 136:561-579). The ex-Colonial Secretary Joseph Chamberlain [=1903 (24th April)] is named, but he is unavailable to expand upon the matter due to sickness [sub-thread continues at 1905 (27th July) ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1904 [12th July] "The Morocco Affair" [I - Moroccan Sovereign Debt]: [[New sub-thread] Sultan [1894-1908] Abdelaziz [Wikipedia biography] came to the Moroccan throne in 1894, aged 16 years. He was supported by a Regent until 1900, but after the brakes came off he proved very easy to sell to on credit. This resulted in an accumulation of individually small foreign loans until in 1904 the country was no longer able to service the interest payments. He was therefore persuaded to take an even bigger loan - FF62.5 million ($12.5 million) - by way of consolidating the earlier ones ...

**ASIDE - CONSOLIDATING DEBT:** As with the personal loans market of the 21st Century, borrowers are often encouraged to "consolidate" one or more existing debts. This can usually result in reduced regular payments, but for a much longer time [check it out by browsing <debt consolidation loans>]. **In other words you actually owe more, but have longer to pay it off.** Lenders love this to happen (a) because they get another handling fee, and (b) because in due course you'll be back.

Given that most of the new loan went to paying off the old loans, and given the large commissions taken by the lenders for their trouble, it is hardly surprising that Morocco's finances are struggling again by the end of 1904. We therefore need to consider very seriously the conspiratorial suggestion that Moroccan sovereign debt was so freely encouraged by French lenders because France's conscious political intention was to foreclose on the Sultan's entire kingdom; **which is exactly what happened in 1912** [see 30th March 1912]. For the details we recommend Barbe's (2017 [full text online]) "When France Used the Public Debt to Colonise Morocco" [sub-thread continues at 16th January 1906 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = CONSPIRACY AGAINST GERMANY] [THREAD = WW1 WAR FEVER]
1904 [1st August - Conversion to Oil][X - Conversion to Oil]: [Continued from 22nd January 1902] Having been taking evidence since April 1901, much of it from Admiral George Melville's research installation, and reflecting data from a total of 69 oil-coal comparison trials between June 1902 and June 1903, the Naval 'Liquid Fuel' Board publishes its report. The final score is that the "evaporative efficiency" of oil versus coal was in the ratio 17:10. Other savings in terms of manpower, cargo space, and turnover time for refuelling meant that the operators of a large commercial ship would save of the order of $500 a day to switch from coal. Advised by this report, the newly installed Secretary of the Navy, Paul Morton [Wikipedia biography], formally approves the adoption of oil. The Royal Navy, meanwhile, in its own separate deliberations, has decided to recommend hybrid systems in new battleships, and oil-only systems in destroyers. There is a thorough review of these deliberations in Chapter 2 of Warwick Brown's (2003 [full text online]) thesis "The Royal Navy's Fuel Supplies, 1898 to 1939" [sub-thread continues at 2nd December 1906 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1904 [1st August-1905 (2nd January)] The Siege/Blockade of Port Arthur: This five month combined operation between blockading fleet and land offensive is fought out as part of the Russo-Japanese War <=8th February between a Japanese army under Nogi Maresuke [Wikipedia biography] and the 50,000-man Russian garrison at Port Arthur under Anatoly Stoessel [Wikipedia biography]. The final outcome is a Japanese victory, with the remaining four battleships of the Russian Pacific fleet sunk at their anchorages by Nogi's 280mm Krupp howitzers. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1904 [7th September] Tibet [V - The Potala Agreement]: [Continued from 1903 (1st December)] [Sir]1904 Francis E. Younghusband <=2nd February now negotiates the Potala Agreement with the authorities at Lhasa, setting Tibet up as a British protectorate in all but name. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1904 [6th October] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXXI - The Krum Teleprinter]: [Continued from 22nd April; see also 1902 (Creed [ASIDE])] The American engineer Charles L. Krum [Wikipedia biography] files for a U.S. patent (eventually granted on 6th August 1907 as U.S. Patent 862402) under the title "Printing Telegraph". The core claim to originality (and Krum lists 32 of them in all) is to have mounted a type-wheel on an electrically activated carrier, such that each incoming encoded character causes the matching character on the type-wheel to be struck before advancing the carrier to the next position on the print line. Over the coming years Krum will collaborate with the businessman Joy Morton [Wikipedia biography] under the trading name Morkrum, later Morkrum-Kleinschmidt, later the Teletype Corporation [Wikipedia factsheet]. The founders will be assisted in due course by their sons Howard L. Krum [no convenient biography] and Sterling Morton [no convenient biography] [continues at 11th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1904 [11th October/22nd November] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXXII - De Moura's Wireless Telephone]: [Continued from 6th October] Roberto Landell de Moura <=1901 (3rd June) obtains a U.S. Patent on a "wave transmitter" capable of transmitting voiced communications. On 22nd November he receives a further patent on a "wireless telephone" [continues at 16th November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

********** THE RUSSIAN NAVY TRIES AGAIN **********

1904 [15th October] With its Pacific Fleet either sunk or bottled up by the Siege/Blockade of Port Arthur <=1st August and destined to be sunk at anchor by land forces during December, the Russian "Second Pacific Fleet" departs its Baltic assembly ports en
route for the Far East. The 18,000 mile journey will take over six months to complete and as soon as they arrive they, too, will be sunk [continues at 1905 (27th May) ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]


**********  THE VALVE INVENTED  **********
**********  THE VALVE INVENTED  **********
**********  THE VALVE INVENTED  **********
**********  THE VALVE INVENTED  **********
**********  THE VALVE INVENTED  **********

1904 [16th November] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXXIII - The Fleming Diode]: [Continued from 11th October] The British physicist [Sir]1929 John A. Fleming [<=1903 (13th June)], of University College London and the Marconi Company [1903 (13th June)<=1905 (?7th May)], files for a British patent (eventually granted on 21st August 1905 as G.B. Patent 24850) under the title "Improvements in Instruments for Detecting and Measuring Alternating Electric Currents". The device in question is a two-element thermonic valve1 now known as the "Diode" [Wikipedia factsheet]. Subsequent developments by the Americans Lee de Forest [28th May<=1905 (2nd February)] and George W. Pierce [Wikipedia biography] will make valves [U.S. = "tubes"] vital components in wireless, television, and computing hardware for the next half century [continues at 17th November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1ASIDE - THE THERMIONIC VALVE: Fleming referred to his device as a "rectifier", thereby emphasising its functionality as a converter of alternating current into direct; outsiders tended to use the term the "Fleming Valve", or "valve" [U.S. = "tube"] for short. The basic physics - the Edison Effect [<=1880 (13th February)] - was already a quarter century old.

1904 [17th November or hereabouts] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXXIV - Braun's Phased Array Antenna]: [Continued from 16th November] Karl Ferdinand Braun [<=22nd April] reports on his progress with Richtwirkung [= "directional effect"] using Phasenwahl [= "phase sensitive"] antennas - soon to become well known as "phased array antennas" - where the particular placing of aerial subcomponents gives directionality to transmission and directional sensitivity to reception. Directional sensitivity is noteworthy in the present context for its use in WW1 as an aid to locating enemy fleet movements [continues at 1905 (2nd February) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1904 [2nd December] Irish Home Rule [IX - The "Province of Ulster"]: [Continued from 1902 (26th February)] The Unionist activist [Sir]1832 William Moore [Wikipedia biography] [1903 (13th March)] organises a meeting of like-minded Belfast Unionists to discuss the future of a "Province of Ulster" [continues at 1905 (23rd February) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1904 [24th November] The Holt Company [1892<=1910 (12th January)] successfully trials a steam tractor fitted with a chain-and-slat track-laying system. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY] [THREAD = WW1 TANKS]

1905 [Continued from 1900] Junghans and Haller Clockmakers [1900<=1907] leverage their precision manufacturing skills by diversifying into the production of artillery fuses. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]
1905 **Computerised Naval Fire Control [V - Enter John Jellicoe]:** [Continued from 1903] After a distinguished career to date John R. Jellicoe [Viscount Jellicoe] is appointed Director of Naval Ordnance and Torpedoes, in which role he will in due course have to choose between fire control systems designed by Arthur H. Pollen [1901<=>1906 (21st September)] and Frederic C. Dreyer [1903<=>1907]. The competition starts with Pollen being invited aboard HMS Jupiter to demonstrate what he has put together so far; but the system is far from complete and nobody is impressed. These events are noteworthy in the present context because Jellicoe will be commanding the Grand Fleet at the Battle of Jutland, at which time the fire control systems will be given a rigorous testing [continues at 1906 (21st September)]. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE-CONTROL]

1905 The German chemist Alfred Einhorn synthesises novocaine, a powerful local anaesthetic. Its use in clinical practice is then promoted by the physician Heinrich Braun. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1905 A young American engineer named Hannibal C. Ford joins the Smith-Premier Typewriter Company and starts accumulating personal patents. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE CONTROL]

1905 The cleaning products company Reckitt and Sons, Hull, add a metal polish named Brasso to their product portfolio. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1905 [Continued from 1903] The Mills Equipment Company, London, recruits one Albert [Alexander?] Lethern, and over the coming two years arranges for him to collaborate with Captain (later Major) Arnold R. Burrowes at the Army Staff College to perfect an ergonomically well-balanced distribution of kit given the weight and need-for-access of each item carried. This arrangement will be patented in 1906 (U.K. Patent #28812) and then be adopted by the War Office as Pattern 08 Web Equipment. Burrowes goes on to fight in the Battle of Le Cateau and the equipment itself is mentioned in Parliament on 7th August 1918 in an argument over intellectual property rights (Hansard, 109:1349). [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

1ASIDE: We have not yet been able to establish whether this Albert Lethern is the Albert Alexander Lethern who, in 1940, obtained a U.S. Patent on what seems to be the grandfather of the modern inertia reel seatbelt.

1905 [1st January] Hysteria [VI - Freud (1905)]: Sigmund Freud publishes a paper entitled "Bruchstück einer Hysterie-Analyse" [full German text online] in which he presents the case history of one Ida Bauer ["Dora"], a possible/probable victim of adolescent sexual abuse he had been treating for hysterical cough and loss of voice. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]


1905 [2nd January] Construction work commences on HMS Minotaur, the first of a three-ship class of 14,800 ton armoured cruisers. She is to be fitted with two twin 9.2" turrets on the midline, and ten 7.5" guns in laterally arranged barbettes amidships. The class will prove to be the last of the armoured cruisers. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]
1905 [2nd February] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXXV - De Forest's Flame-Gap Detector]**: (Continued from 1904 (17th November)) **Lee de Forest** [1904 (16th November)]=>1906 (29th January) files for a U.S. Patent (eventually granted on 20th December 1910 as U.S. Patent 979275) under the title "Oscillation-Responsive Device". The essence of the invention is that electrical conduction between two electrodes positioned in the hot gases of a Bunsen burner flame is sensitive to ambient Hertzian waves in much the same way as are the solid contents of a Brany-Lodge Coherer [<=1890 (20th November)] [continues at 19th April ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1905 [7th February] [Sir]**Henry Bradwardine Jackson** [1903 (8th October)<=1915 (15th/27th May)] is appointed Third Sea Lord. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

********** HISTORICALLY SIGNIFICANT BATTLE **********

1905 [20th February-10th March] **The Battle of Mukden**: This battle is fought as part of the Russo-Japanese War [<=1904 (8th February)] between a 343,000-man Russian army under Alexei Kuropatkin [Wikipedia biography] and a 281,000-man Japanese army under Oyama Iwao [Wikipedia biography]. The outcome is a decisive Japanese victory, followed by their occupation of Southern Manchuria. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1905 [23rd February] **Irish Home Rule [X - The Hibernians]**: (Continued from 1904 (2nd December)) **Joseph Devlin** [<=1902 (26th February)] becomes National President of the **Ancient Order of Hibernians** [Wikipedia factsheet], a U.S.-based Irish republican lobbying and fund-raising organisation [continues at 3rd March ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1905 [22nd-28th January] On 22nd January workers come out on strike in Lodz, Poland, and the Polish Socialist Party calls for a general strike. [THREAD = THE WW1 WORKING CLASS SOLDIER]

1905 [3rd March] **Irish Home Rule [XI - The Ulster Unionist Council]**: (Continued from 23rd February) The "Ulster Unionist Council" [Wikipedia factsheet]=>1913 (13th January) is formally constituted and the long-standing M.P. for East Antrim **James M. McCalmont** [Wikipedia biography] is chosen as Chairman. The council will coordinate Loyalist lobbying until reconstituted as the "Ulster Unionist Party" five years later by Sir Edward Carson [Wikipedia biography]=>1910 (21st February) [continues at 28th November ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1905 [16th March] **The Battlecruiser Debate [I - The Beginnings]**: John A. ['"Jacky"'] Fisher [1st Baron Fisher] [1904 (21st October)]=>1906 (2nd April) decides to experiment with a new generation of large fast armoured cruisers, somewhere between a heavy cruiser and a battleship [continues at 1906 (2nd April) ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

******* THE PRE-SCRIPTING OF INSULTS BEGINS *****

1905 [31st March] "The Morocco Affair" [II - The Tangier Crisis]: [Continued from 12th July 1904] [a.k.a. "First Moroccan Crisis"] Acting on advice from the German Prime Minister Bernhard von Bülow [1900 (17th October)=>1909 (16th July)], **Kaiser Wilhelm II** [1903 (27th May)]=>1908 (28th October) lands at Tangier, Morocco, for a brief meeting-greeting with the Moroccan authorities. The recent **Entente Cordiale** [see 8th April 1904] has significantly altered the balance of diplomacy in the region against Germany, and so Bülow’s idea is to drive a subtle wedge between the French and the Sultanate. He does this by having the Kaiser offer the Sultan a guarantee of sovereignty against foreign - i.e., French - interference. The French predictably take umbrage, refuse to discuss the matter, and
spend the rest of the year slowly escalating the confrontation until eventually they and the Germans are mobilising for war. At the last moment, however, the Algeciras Conference is called to try to defuse the situation. The confrontation is noteworthy in the present context for the coordinated Franco-British media attack, thus ... 

"I commend a perusal of the foreign pages of the Times of this period, say from May to November 1905. They make astonishing reading. The insults and threats to Germany mingled with personal abuse of the Emperor William, in the Paris and Berlin telegrams, especially the Paris telegrams, are incessant" (Morel, 1915, k2269).

Ominously, such coordination does not just happen: somewhere there is a choirmaster at work [sub-thread continues at 16th January 1906 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = CONSPIRACY AGAINST GERMANY] [THREAD = WW1 WAR FEVER]


1905 [27th May] The Battle of Tsushima: This battle was fought during the Russo-Japanese War, 1904-1905, between the recently arrived Russian Second Pacific Fleet [<=1904 (15th October)] under Zinovy Rozhestvensky [Wikipedia biography] and a Japanese fleet under Togo Heihachiro [Wikipedia biography]. The engagement results in a crushing defeat for the Russians, and is noteworthy in the present context for demonstrating (a) the Japanese navy's superior use of wireless telegraphy, (b) the value of capital ship speed, (c) that the age-old tactic of "crossing the T" was still fully workable, (d) that capital ships and torpedo boats could collaborate effectively, (e) that there was no longer any real need for an overly complicated set of calibres, (f) that high explosive melinite [=1885] rounds could be more effective against armoured targets than armour-piercing ones, (g) the combat utility of the Barr and Stroud FA3 Coincidence Rangefinder. The battle is also noteworthy for the presence of Royal Navy observers aboard HMIJS Asahi, in the person of the Naval Attaché William Pakenham [<=1904 (14th March)]. Pakenham clearly learns his lessons well for, as Rear-Admiral, he will command the Second Battlecruiser Squadron at the Battle of Jutland [=1916 (31st May)]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

ASIDE: Admiral Togo's flagship, HIJMS Mikasa, is today a museum ship [museum website].

ASIDE: It may safely be presumed that the Germans carefully noted how incompetent the Imperial Russians had become, since their Schlieffen Plan [=1894] had long relied on the slowness of Russian mobilisation to prevent their having to fight a war on two fronts!

1905 [??th June] Newport Docks [X - Alexandra South Dock Extension Authorised]: [Continued from 1892 (??th December)] Still struggling to load its coal fast enough, the Newport Docks Company obtains Parliamentary approval for a further 48 acres of excavation and duly gets to work [continues at 1907 (28th September) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]
1905 [17th June] **HMS Hibernia** [Wikipedia shipography] is launched at Devonport Dockyard. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1905 [30th June or hereabouts] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXXVIII - The Siemens Teleprinter]**: [Continued from 17th June; see also 1902 (Creed [ASIDE])] Inspired by the (1902) Creed Perforator and the (1904) Krum Teletype the Siemens and Halske Company releases its own range of teleprinter equipment under the name "**Typendruck-Schnelltelegraph**" [= "fast keyed telegraph"]). As with the earlier Baudot-Murray telegraph perforators, the transmitting machine converts each typed character into a unique pattern of punched-out holes in the transmitting **Lochstreifen** [punched tape: Wikipedia factsheet], which are then passed through a tape-reader and converted into electrical signals for transmission, only now by wireless rather than cable. This offline preparation is justified by the fact that when a prepared tape is finally run through the machine it transmits at 2000 characters per second on a similar tape at the receiving end - some 20 times faster than the typing/transcription speeds of a typical human operator. [continues at ??th July ...], [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1ASIDE: The pre-existing Émile Baudot [<=1874 (17th June)], Donald Murray [<=1900 (27th February)], and Frederick Creed [<=1902] printing telegraph systems all used a five-hole tape, thus offering 32 different sent keyboard characters (five holes = five "bits" of information = 2^5 permutations = 32 send-receive identities). The newer systems experimented a bit but soon settled on an eight-hole system offering 256 different sent keyboard characters (eight holes = eight "bits" of information = 2^8 permutations = 256 send-receive identities). Five-hole systems were just about good enough to cope with Morse telegraphy where everything was sent in uppercase lettering with minimal punctuation, but more send-receive identities were needed to cope with the complexity of the full typewriter keyboard.

2ASIDE: Readers unfamiliar with the term "bit" in its technical sense as a measure of information quantity will find a tutorial on the subject in the Companion Resource.

1905 [??th July] **Camnell, Laird, and Company** [1903<=1912 (14th September)], **Birkenhead, Fairfield Shipbuilding and Engineering Company** [1893 (2nd February)<=1906 (27th January)], **Govan, and John Brown and Company** [1902<=1906 (7th June)], **Clydebank**, set up the jointly owned (25% : 25% : 50%, respectively) **Coventry Ordnance Works Limited** [Wikipedia factsheet]. The commercial motivation for this move is to enable the consortium to compete more effectively with Vickers, Sons, and Maxim Limited [1902<=1911 (28th March)] and Armstrong, Whitworth, and Company [1902<=1912]. Amongst their most popular lines are the **1910 4.5" Field Howitzer** [Wikipedia factsheet], the **1913 5.5" Mark I Naval Gun** [Wikipedia factsheet], and the **1914 15" Siege Howitzer** [Wikipedia factsheet]. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]

1905 [??th July] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXXIX - The Quenched Spark Gap]**: [Continued from 30th June] Following the lead established the previous year by **Karl Ferdinand Braun** [1904 (17th November)<=1909 (10th December)] the University of Danzig physicist **Max Wien** [no convenient biography] begins developing a production version of a "quenched spark gap" system, eventually going for a sandwich-arrangement in which number of flat copper disks are separated by discs of insulating mica. This arrangement does away with a single big spark (with a big residual effect and an accordingly large recovery time) and replaces it with a train of little sparks. [continues at 1906 (29th January) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1905 [3rd July] **Seeing is Believing [CII - Early Motion Pictures ("Rescued by Rover")]**: [Continued from 1904 (8th February)] The latest offering from **Hepworth Studios** [1901 (2nd
February) is a seven-minute-long edge-of-the-seat drama entitled "Rescued by Rover" [IMDB entry; YouTube it now]. Later in the year (8th December) American Mutoscope [<=1898 (3rd July)] score a box-office success with "An Execution by Hanging" [IMDB entry], a re-enactment in advance of the hanging of the murderess Mary Rogers [Wikipedia factsheet]. This reel's subsequent claim to fame lies in the facts (a) that structurally it successfully intercut set-based acted footage with simple external establishing footage of the outside of Vermont State Prison, (b) that, just in case there was a last-minute reprieve, two versions were prepared for release, and (c) that the reel was available only hours after the execution was carried out [sub-thread continues at 1906 (15th December) ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1905 [27th July] Zionism Pre-WW1 [XVII - The Uganda Scheme (No Sale)]: [Continued from 1904 (20th June)] Theodor Herzl [<=1904 (undated)] duly takes the Uasin Gishu/Gwas Ngishu offer [=1903 (24th April)] to the Seventh Zionist Congress in Basel, where it is finally rejected [end of Zionism Pre-WW1 sub-thread, but the narrative continues as Zionism in WW1 at 1914 (9th November)] ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1905 [20th August] The Tongmenghui Movement: While in exile in Tokyo following the abortive Huizhou Uprising [=1900 (22nd October)] Sun Yat-Sen [1900 (22nd October)<=>1911 (10th October)] forms the Tongmenghui [Wikipedia factsheet]=1912 (25th August) - the "United League" - to foment revolutionary republicanism in China. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1905 [5th September] The Treaty of Portsmouth: This U.S.-brokered treaty between the Russian and Japanese Empires brings the Russo-Japanese War [=1904 (8th February)] to an end. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE CONTROL]

1905 [7th November] Leonardo Torres y Quévedo [Wikipedia biography=>1907] demonstrates the radio controlling of boats in Bilbao Harbour. He will be unable to obtain development finance, however, and soon lets the project drop. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


1905 [10th December] With 15 years experience as an M.P. under his belt the Welsh politician Lloyd George [1904 (undated)<=>1908 (3rd April)] is given his first Cabinet post in Sir Henry Campbell-Bannerman's [1901 (22nd December)<=>1906 (12th January)] administration, as President of the Board of Trade. He will hold this post until 12th April 1908. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** THE "B.E.F." IS CONCEIVED **********

1905 [10th December] The British politician Richard Haldane [1st Viscount Haldane] becomes Secretary of State for War, and, having been persuaded by fellow-Liberal [Sir] Edward Grey [1st Viscount Grey of Falloch] [Wikipedia biography] that a European war is imminent, starts to implement the "Haldane Reforms" [Wikipedia factsheet]. Amongst these reforms will be the organisational changes needed to send a rapid deployment "expeditionary force" of six infantry divisions and the necessary support elements. This front-line resource will be complemented by a "Territorial" Force of 14 infantry divisions, 14 cavalry brigades, and the necessary support elements. He also establishes an Officer Training Corps to
trawl the universities and public schools for promising young men, and starts the ball rolling for the eventual formation of the "Imperial General Staff". Grey, meanwhile, starts to put out feelers to Russia, floating the idea of a three-way defence pact with France [continues at 1907 (31st August) ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS] [THREAD = WW1 TREATIES AND ALLIANCES]

**ASIDE:** Grey will later reportedly be described (although not to his face) as "quite unfit to be the Foreign Secretary of any country larger than Portugal".

********** IMPORTANT WW1 STRATEGY **********

**1906 Alfred von Schlieffen** [<=1894] retires, and is succeeded as Chief of the Prussian General Staff by **Helmuth von Moltke [the Younger]** [Wikipedia biography=>1914 (31st July)]. Over the coming years von Moltke will introduce a number of amendments to the **Schlieffen Plan** [<=1894] as inherited, believing it to be too risky. His main change is to reduce the strength on the right - the thrust through Holland and Belgium - in order to strengthen defences elsewhere, specifically on the French border between Metz and Switzerland and in the east against Russia. [THREAD = WW1 GRAND STRATEGIES]

**ASIDE:** Von Moltke the Younger appears to be a great nephew of **von Moltke the Elder** [<=1888 (10th August)], via the latter's brother, **Adolf von Moltke** (1804-1871), and his son (von Moltke the Younger's father) **Wilhelm Josef von Moltke** (1845-1905).

1906 The German intelligence officer **Walter Nicolai** [Wikipedia biography=>1913] is put in charge of the news analysis service covering events in Russia. It is located in Königsberg, East Prussia. Some of the news being analysed is obtained surreptitiously from agents on the ground. Around the same time 1906 the Belgian chemist **Robert B. Goldschmidt** [Wikipedia biography=>1910 (12th January)] and the archivist **Paul Otlet** [Wikipedia biography] demonstrate "microphotography", a system for reducing printed text and images onto one-centimetre square cells of a photographic image, one cell per page, thus allowing the miniaturising of library stock and suchlike. The technique also finds use in helping spies conceal sensitive information. [THREAD = WW1 ESPIONAGE AND INTELLIGENCE]

1906 The **Ramsay-McKellan Partnership** [<=1904] adopt the Kiwi trademark and logo [see it now] and enjoy growing sales. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1906 The American artillery officer **Beverly W. Dunn** [no convenient biography] discovers that if **picric acid** [<=1888] is treated with ammonia then the resulting **ammonium picrate** [Wikipedia chemistry] is more stable than picric acid alone to accidental impact-induced detonation. The mixture is released for munitions use as "Dunnite". [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

1906 **John Browning** [<=1900 (16th October)] designs the **Remington Model 8** [Wikipedia factsheet] long-recoil semi-automatic rifle. [THREAD = WW1 SMALL ARMS]

1906 The Austria-Hungary Army commissions the **Škoda Werke** [Wikipedia factsheet], Pilsen, to start development on a **305mm Mortar** [YouTube video] capable of firing an 850lb bunker-busting shell over a distance of 5 to 6 miles. The first test firing will take place in 1910, and will be followed by an initial order for 24 units. Ten of these will be lent to the German army for its 1914 assault on the Belgian forts. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

1906 [12th January-8th February] **The 1906 General Election:** In this election the Liberal Party gets back in with a greatly increased majority and the Prime Minister remains unchanged as **Sir Henry Campbell-Bannerman** [1905 (10th December)<=>1907 (15th April)] The
Labour Representation Committee [1900 (26th February)<=15th February] wins 29 seats (previously only two). [THREAD = THE WW1 WORKING CLASS SOLDIER]

***** ONE OF THE BIGGEST TREATIES EVER TO BE TOTALLY IGNORED *****

1906 [16th January-7th April] "The Morocco Affair" [III - The Algeciras Conference]: [Continued from 31st March 1905] A conference is convened in Algeciras, Spain, to resolve the Tangier Crisis. It will take three months to reach the framework of an agreement, it being important to the Germans that Morocco should not default to French influence. The American and Austrian delegations do their best to act as "honest brokers" during this period, and eventually persuade the Germans that they are being unreasonable in expecting too much of a French climb-down.

ASIDE: Germany is too geographically distant to compete effectively with France in Morocco, but is rightly concerned that 20 years of trading with the Moroccans should not just be undone by French spite.

The "General Act" of Algeciras is signed by the 21 Delegates Plenipotentiary of the 12 participating powers on 7th April 1906, and the 123 finally agreed Articles of Agreement are sectioned off by topic, and cover such matters as (a) the removal of taxation anomalies, (b) new all-Muslim policing arrangements in Moroccan ports (subject to Spanish and French advisors), (c) arrangements for a new Moroccan State Bank, with rescheduling of foreign debt [see inset below], (d) restrictions on the importation of arms, ammunition, and explosives, (e) new stamp, transfer, and import taxes, and (f) stronger customs and excise inspections.

ASIDE: Morel (1915) will explain that the "foreign debt" referred to above is primarily the result of predatory lending by French bankers in 1903 and 1904 [see 12th July 1904]. After Algeciras 60 per cent of Moroccan customs revenues will be paid out in loan interest.

Morel also notes that France (with British support when necessary) will now spend the next five years studiously breaking its Algeciras promises, [Sub-thread continues at 22nd March 1907 ...] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = CONSPIRACY AGAINST GERMANY] [THREAD = WW1 WAR FEVER]

1906 [17th January] Ferdinand von Zeppelin [1900 (2nd July)<=9th October] oversees the inaugural flight of his second airship, the LZ2 [Wiki airshipography]. The flight reaches an altitude of 1500 feet but is then forced down into a hard landing by engine problems. The damaged vessel is then cannibalised into the LZ3 project [=9th October]. [THREAD = WW1 AVIATION]

1906 [27th January] RMS Empress of Ireland [Wiki shipography] sinks following collision 1914 (29th May) is launched at Fairfield Shipbuilding and Engineering Company [1905 (?7th July)<=1911 (1st July)], Govan, for service with the Canadian Pacific Steamship Company [Wiki factsheet]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** THE TRIODE VALVE IS BORN **********

********** THE TRIODE VALVE IS BORN **********

********** THE TRIODE VALVE IS BORN **********

********** THE TRIODE VALVE IS BORN **********

********** THE TRIODE VALVE IS BORN **********

********** THE TRIODE VALVE IS BORN **********

1906 [29th January] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXXX - De Forest's Grid Audion]: [Continued from 1905 (?7th July)] The American engineer Lee de Forest [1905 (2nd February)<=1st April] demonstrates the "grid audion", or "triode", a three-element thermionic valve [=1904 (16th November) [ASIDE]] in which the flow of electrons between the filament (the anode) and the plate (the cathode) of the diode valve [=1904 (16th November)]
can be modulated by a third control electrode, initially a fine iron grid. This arrangement will prove invaluable to designers of amplification circuits in wireless receivers and long-line telephone repeaters. [=> 1913 (18th October)] [continues at 23rd March ...].

********** IMPORTANT WW1 WEAPONS **********

==== HMS DREADNOUGHT LAUNCHED ======

1906 [10th February] The Royal Navy's mould-breaking new warship HMS Dreadnought [Wikipedia shipography=>2nd December] is launched at Portsmouth Dockyard. All older battleships suddenly find themselves down-rated to "Pre-Dreadnoughts" overnight. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1906 [15th February] The Labour Representation Committee [<=12th January] is reconstituted as the Labour Party [Wikipedia factsheet=>28th March] and Keir Hardie [<=1900 (26th September)] is elected its first leader. [THREAD = THE WW1 WORKING CLASS SOLDIER]

1906 [8th March or hereabouts] The Rise of Herbert Hoover [VI - The Burma Silver Mine]:

[Continued from 23rd February 1904] UNDER CONSTRUCTION [sub-thread continues at 6th August 1911 ...].
[THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = STOCK MARKET AND FINANCIAL SHARP PRACTICE]

1906 [12th March] A young British lawyer-politician named Frederick E. Smith [1st Earl of Birkenhead] takes his seat as the Conservative Member of Parliament for Liverpool, Walton. [NO SINGLE THREAD]

********** THE PARANOIA SPREADS **********

1906 [16th March] The British author William T. le Queux [Wikipedia biography=>1914 (2nd September)] has his "The Invasion of 1910" serialised in the Daily Mail. It and the accompanying book are both immediate best-sellers. Indeed the broader "invasion fantasy" genre will remain a popular literary trope until the present day [c.f., D. C. Alden's (2011) novel "Invasion", where the villains are now the Muslims]. [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]

ASIDE - INVASION FANTASY LITERATURE: The same process was at work in Germany - see both Karl Bleibtrau's "Die Offensiv-Invasion gegen England" and Rudolf Martin's "Berlin-Bagdad" [both =>1907]. As to why this should be the case, there is as yet [2014] no definitive answer, as now recorded ...

RESEARCH ISSUE - THE PSYCHOLOGY OF POLITICAL PROPHECY: Perhaps the best-known classical political prophets are the Greek princess Cassandra [Wikipedia factsheet] and the Old Testament prophet-preachers such as Jeremiah [Wikipedia factsheet]. Cassandra, interestingly, was both blessed with powers to prophesy the future and cursed never to be believed, making her a natural paradigm for all who - for whatever motivation - warn of war (note that the most memorable prophets are prophets of doom). Sadly it is difficult for those on the receiving end of the resulting prophecies to know whether the authors have their fingers well and truly on the pulse of history, or are just small-minded loud-mouthed home-town bigots who get a kick out of letting their bellies rumble. Either way there is little uncontroversial psychological theory to explain the workings of the pontificating mind or, for that matter, the nature of what happens in the rest of us to make what they do so effective. One suggestion came from the psychodynamic theorist Melanie Klein [Wikipedia biography], who suggested in 1963 [=q.v.] that the compulsion to produce Cassandra-like behaviours reflected an overactive superego [Wikipedia factsheet] on the part of the Cassandra in question. Similarly Schapira (1988) treats it as a form of hysteria. Similarly R. D. Laing [see Companion Resource] has emphasised a possible causative role for "projective identification", and Otto F. Kernberg [see Companion Resource] sees some highly pathological personality factors at work in peoples' tendency to see themselves as victims. We shall be returning to these issues in detail in due course, but in the meantime we recommend Loye
1906 [23rd March] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXXXI - The Dunwoody System]**: [Continued from 29th January] The U.S. Army signals specialist Henry C. Dunwoody [Wikipedia biography] files for a U.S. Patent (eventually granted 4th December 1906 as U.S. Patent 837616) under the title "Wireless Telegraph System". One of his nine formal claims to originality is the use of "a mass of non-metallic crystalline material" in a "wave-responsive device". Specifically, he has had particularly impressive results with Silicon Carbide [Wikipedia chemistry] crystals [continues at 1st April ...]. [THREAD = WWI SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

********** BRITISH TRADE UNIONS REGAIN A FUNDAMENTAL RIGHT **********

1906 [28th March/21st December] **The Trade Disputes Bill/Act, 1906**: [Continued from 1901 (22nd July)], namely to restore the right of trade unions NOT to be sued for consequential loss damages by their employers during a legitimate trade dispute. [THREAD = THE WWI WORKING CLASS SOLDIER]

1906 [1st April] **The Müggelsee Research Station [III - Reorganisation]**: [Continued from 1897 (21st October)] Responsibility for the Müggelsee Research Station is passed to the Prussian State. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1906 [1st April] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXXXII - The Nauen Transmitting Station]**: [Continued from 23rd March] The Telefunken Company [1903 (27th May)<=>1908 (23rd June)] engineer Richard Hirsch [no convenient biography] oversees the construction of a spark-gap wireless transmitting station at Nauen [Wikipedia factsheet=>1911 (7th November)], Berlin. The station will go into service on 16th August 1908 and it will be this installation which, in 111, will successfully establish long-range communication with the Kamina Funkstation [Wikipedia factsheet=>1914 (19th June)] in the German Protectorate of Togoland [= modern Togo]. The station is noteworthy in the present context because it allows wireless communications to become the mainstay of the German General Staff's imperial strategy, it having long been their concern that the existing shared submarine cable network was too vulnerable to British interdiction in time of war1. Around the same time Valdemar Poulsen [1903 (19th June)<=>1908 (1st February)] is continuing to develop voice transmission technology. He also founds the Amalgamated Radio2 Telegraph Company [no convenient factsheet] to market his own and the De Forest [29th January<=>1907 (??th February)] systems in Britain. The collaboration will only be short-lived, however, and Amalgamated will be taken over by Poulsen's Danish parent company in 1908. Around the same time the Lorenz Company [<=1903 (19th June)] Starts to deliver Poulsen-Lorenz Lichtbogen [= arc] Systems to the German Navy and Army [continues at 30th August ...]. [THREAD = WWI SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1 ASIDE: As predicted, the submarine cables were indeed one of the first targets of British action once war became inevitable - details at 1914 (4th August).

2 ASIDE - RADIO VERSUS WIRELESS: We have deliberately avoided the term "radio" until now, but in any event Hubert (1925 online) insists that radio and wireless are the same thing, thus ...

"So get it straight now, that the thing you have in the living room that makes noises like the victrola is not 'a radio,' but a 'radio receiver,' or 'wireless receiver'; the two terms are synonymous. The code signals which sometimes justly drown out a political speech should not be called 'wireless,' for that is too broad a term. Call it
'wireless telegraph' or 'radio telegraph.' The jazz band music you hear is NOT 'radio.' It is 'radio telephone' or 'wireless telephone,' music."

1906 [2nd April] The Battlecruiser Debate [II - The Invincible Experiment]: [Continued from 1905 (16th March)] Construction work commences on HMS Invincible [Wikipedia shipography], the first of the Royal Navy's large armoured cruisers (later to be redesignated as "battlecruisers" [=>1911 (24th November)]). The three ships in the Invincible class have been very carefully specified by John A. 
['Jacky'] Fisher [1st Baron Fisher] [1906 (16th March)<=>21st September]. They have a battleship's broadside of eight 12" guns and a design speed of 25 knots. However this increased speed requires that their Krupp Cemented Armour [<=1894] is thinner than their size would suggest. The layout of the four twin turrets is particular to the class, consisting of midline A and X turrets fore and aft, with P and Q turrets either side of the midline between the second and third funnels [continues at 1909 (20th March)]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1906 [19th May] German Naval Expansion [X - The Third Fleet Law]: [Continued from 1904 (21st October)] Stung by the German political setback at the Algeciras Conference [<=16th January] and with Britain's new HMS Dreadnought [<=10th February] now nearing completion, the German Reichstag passes the third of its five Flottengesetze to support the design upgrades now needed by the remaining ships already authorised by the 2nd Fleet Law [<=1900 (20th June)]. It also authorises the armoured cruiser SMS Blücher [=1907 (21st February)] and the first two battleships of the Nassau class [continues at 1907 ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]


ASIDE - RMS LUSITANIA IN WW1: Lusitania remained in commercial use and was kept in her peacetime livery. She was famously sunk on 7th May 1915 with the loss of 1198 passengers and crew, of whom 128 were (still neutral) U.S. citizens.

**********  THE LAST BUT ONE BRITISH PRE-DREADNOUGHT  **********

1906 [23rd June] HMS Agamemnon [Wikipedia shipography] is launched at William Beardmore and Company's [1900<=>1911 (1st May)] (still itself under construction) Naval Construction Yard [<=1900], Dalmuir. She will delayed in entering service, however, due to a shortage of 12" guns off the production line now that the HMS Dreadnought [<=10th February] class is calling for more and more of them. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1906 [29th June] The U.S. Navy places an order for USS Smith [Wikipedia shipography] and two other ships of that class. The class is designed as 28-knot ocean-going destroyers equipped with steam turbines. A further two vessels will be ordered 7th March 1907. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1906 [4th August] Krupp Germaniawerft [1896<=>1908], Kiel, launches the U-1 [Wikipedia shipography], the first German submarine. [THREAD = THE WW1 SUBMARINE NAVIES]

**********  THE CRYSTAL SET HOBBY RADIO BECOMES FEASIBLE  **********

for originality lie in the precise way in which Pickard mounts his crystal prior to its inclusion in the circuitry. Specifically, the electronically active junction has just a fine wire point known technically as a "point contact" and colloquially as a "cat's whisker". Pickard's "crystal diode rectifier" is soon to be commonplace in the commercially successful "crystal set", and the following year he will set up the Wireless Specialty Apparatus Company [see the Radiomuseum factsheet at http://www.radiomuseum.org/dsp_hersteller_detail.cfm?company_id=7974] to profit from his development [continues at 3rd November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1906 [3rd September] William H. R. Rivers [1897=<1914 (?7th March)] is appointed Croonian Lecturer to the Royal College of Physicians. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

**********  THE LAST BRITISH PRE-DREADNOUGHT  **********


1906 [20th September] The four-screw passenger liner RMS Mauretania [Wikipedia shipography=>scrapped 1935] is launched at Swan Hunter and Wigham Richardson [1903=<1966], Tyneside, for service with the Cunard Line [7th June=<1913 (21st April)]. Equipped with the new steam turbines (=1884) she is capable of cruising at 24 knots and will hold the Blue Riband Atlantic speed record until 1929. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

ASIDE - HMS MAURETANIA IN WW1: Mauretania was considered too large to be converted into an armed merchant cruiser and was therefore laid up until May 1915. After that she was used as a troopship.


ASIDE - HMS ADRIATIC IN WW1: Adriatic served as a troopship.


1906 [9th October] Ferdinand von Zeppelin [17th January=<1908 (20th June)] oversees the inaugural flight of his third airship, the 414 feet (=126m) LZ3 [Wikipedia airshipography]. The flight lasts 137 minutes and carries a crew of 11 persons. The German government are impressed but call for longer flying times and range. Undaunted von Zeppelin starts sketching out his next creation [continues at 1908 (20th June) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 AVIATION]

1906 [15th October] The arranged marriage takes place of Bertha Krupp [<=1902 (22nd November)] and Gustav [Krupp] this day von Bohlen und Halbach [Wikipedia biography]. In accordance with the Kaiser's wishes the new Krupp will run the company in his wife's name (although the equity remains hers). [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]
1906 [3rd November] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXXXIV - The Berlin International Wireless Telegraphy Convention]**: [Continued from 30th August] This international telecommunications protocol is signed by Germany, Britain, France, Russia, the U.S., and 22 other countries around the world. The Convention enforces 23 conditions of construction and use, such as interconnectivity across proprietary systems (Article #1) and giving absolute priority to distress calls (Article #9) [continues at 24th December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1906 [18th November] **Conrad von Hőtzendorf** [Wikipedia biography] is appointed Chief of Staff of the Austro-Hungarian armed forces. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

1906 [20th November] **American Naval Expansion [XI - The Mercantile Marine]**: [Continued from 13th March 1900] Turning to the American mercantile marine for a moment, Secretary of State Elihu Root [check him out] gives a speech on 20th November 1906 to the Trans-Mississippi Commercial Congress entitled "How to Develop South American Commerce". At one point in this speech he presents some interesting statistics for the year to 30th June 1905 for the port of Rio de Janeiro, thus ...

"... there entered the port of Rio de Janeiro steamers and sailing vessels flying the flag of Austria-Hungary 120, of Norway 142, of Italy 165, of Argentina 264, of France 349, of Germany 657, of Great Britain 1785, of the United States no steamers and 7 sailing vessels, 2 of which were in distress."

Root blamed this failure to compete on higher American wage costs and covert government subsidies by European competitors. His cure was to introduce subsidies of his own for ships carrying mails [sub-thread continues at 16th December 1907 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


**ASIDE - SS KRONPRINZESSIN CECILIE IN WW1:** The ship was interned in U.S. waters until 1917, and then served as the troopship USS *Mount Vernon* for the remainder of the war.

********** IMPORTANT WW1 WEAPONS **********

====== HMS DREADNOUGHT COMMISSIONED ======

====== HMS DREADNOUGHT COMMISSIONED ======

1906 [2nd December] **The Switch from Coal to Oil [XI - Dreadnought Goes Hybrid]**: [Continued from 1st August 1904] The Royal Navy commissions its latest warship, HMS *Dreadnought* [10th February<=>1907], a fast, well-armoured, well-armed battleship which will set the design standard for the world's navies for a decade. Fuelling is a coal-oil mix, and gunnery control is from a dedicated fighting top built into the mainmast. The American battleships USS *Delaware* [Wikipedia shipography] and USS *North Dakota* [Wikipedia shipography] also adopt the mixed fuel system [sub-thread continues at 1st April 1907 ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1906 [15th December] **Seeing is Believing [CIII - Cinemas and Cinema Chains (The Omnia-Pathé)]**: [Continued from 1905 (3rd July)] Having already been in the movie industry for ten years *Pathé Frères* [1904 (8th February)<=>1909 (15th March)] open the first of a chain of purpose-built cinemas - the 300-seat Omnia-Pathé - in Paris [sub-thread continues at November ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]
1906 [24th December] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXXXV - The Brant Rock Broadcast]: [Continued from 3rd November] Reginald Fessenden [<=1902 (12th August)] and Ernst F. W. Alexanderson [<=1904] use the Alexanderson Alternator [<=1904] at the Brant Rock Wireless Station [<=1904] to transmit in the audible spectrum. The transmissions will be successfully picked up by shipping in the area. The secret is "amplitude modulation", that is to say, the overlaying of the low frequency (audible spectrum) voice waves of everyday speech on top of the high frequency (radio spectrum) "carrier wave" [Wikipedia factsheet]. Alexanderson will now spend the next four years further refining his system [continues at 1907 ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1907 The German novelist Karl Bleibtrau [Wikipedia biography] publishes "Die Offensiv-Invasion gegen England". Around the same time his countryman Rudolf Martin [no convenient biography] publishes "Berlin-Baghdad". [THREAD = WW1 ROMANTIC NATIONALISM]

1907 What little is left of the Tredegar Ironworks [1900 (23rd October)<=1946] is recapitalised and reorganised as the Whitehead Coal Company. [THREAD = THE WW1 WORKING CLASS SOLDIER]

1907 William McDougall [1897<=1911] publishes "Social Psychology". [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1907 After 40 years with the Daimler Company [<=1890 (28th November)], Wilhelm Maybach sets up on his own as the Maybach Motorenbau G.m.b.H. [= "Maybach Engine Construction Limited"], the better to capitalise on the emerging marketplace for Zeppelin engines. [THREAD = WW1 AVIATION]

1907 The Barr and Stroud Company [<=1893] have their latest optical rangefinder rejected by the British Army in favour of the rival Marindin system [<=1908]. Around the same time Junghans and Haller [<=1905] perfect a zinc sulphide/radium composition to make the dials and indicators on their equipment luminous at night. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

1907 Computerised Naval Fire Control [VII - Dreyer Posted to Dreadnought]: [Continued from 1906 (21st September)] Frederic C. Dreyer [1905<=??th November] joins HMS Dreadnought [<=1906 (2nd December)] on "special service" to develop her experimental fire-control systems (thereby creating rival systems to those already being worked on by Arthur H. Pollen [1906 (21st September)<=??th November]). Later in the year he will be promoted Commander and appointed Assistant to the Director of Naval Ordnance and Torpedoes. John R. Jellicoe [Viscount Jellicoe]1918 [1905<=25th August]. Around the same time the Spanish government sets up the Laboratorio de Automatica in order to develop automatic control systems for weapons such as homing torpedoes. One of the main workers there is Leonardo Torres y Quévado [1907 (7th November)<=1912] [continues at ??th November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE-CONTROL]

1907 Ludwig Borchardt [<=1895] founds the German Archaeological Institute in Cairo. [THREAD = PRE-WW1 ACADEMIC RIVALRY]

********** MAJOR WW1 WEAPON **********
===== THE "MINNIE" =====

1907 The German War Department's Ingenieurbkomitee collaborates with the Rheinmetall Company [Wikipedia factsheet=>1910] to test designs for a short-range rifled mortar for trench warfare close support. They decide to build the weapon in three sizes, namely light [=1910 (76mm lMW)], medium [=1913 (170mm mMW)], and heavy [=1910 (250mm sMW)].
All go by the name Minenwerfer [= "mine thrower"], whence the British name for them, "Minnies". [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

1907 The Nobel Explosives Company [Grace's Guide factsheet=>1915 (17th April)] acquires the cordite production capacity at the Stowmarket Gun Cotton Works [=1871 (11th August)]. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]

1907 Howard Carter [1899] becomes Superintendent of Works on Lord Caernarfon’s [Wikipedia biography] expedition to the Valley of the Kings at (modern) Luxor. [THREAD = PRE-WW1 INTELLECTUAL RIVALRY]

1907 The Irish classicist T. Rice Holmes [Wikipedia biography] publishes "Ancient Britain", in which he suggests that Herodotus's Cassiterides - the "tin islands" from which the classical world got the ingredient for bronze - have to be one and the same as the British Isles. [THREAD = WW1 ROMANTIC NATIONALISM]

1907 [1st January] A Special Army Order is prepared specifying that a British Expeditionary Force consisting of six infantry divisions and one cavalry division will be prepared for instant deployment in the event of war. Sir John French [1st Earl of Ypres] [1903 (10th March)<=>21st December] is earmarked as the preferred commander of this force. [THREAD = WW1 GRAND STRATEGIES]

1907 [??th January or hereabouts] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXXXVI - The Rudolf Goldschmidt System]: [Continued from 1906 (24th December)] [Wikipedia biography]<=>1910 (12th January)] the German engineer Rudolf Goldschmidt [Wikipedia biography] starts to develop his own alternator-based R.F. transmission system [Wikipedia factsheet]. Being a home-grown German initiative his technology will be taken up by the German military and used in the Eilvese Transmitting Station [=1914 (19th June)] [continues at ??th February ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

********** CLASSIC WW1 WEAPON **********
THE SERVICE RIFLE, NUMBER 1
THE SERVICE RIFLE, NUMBER 1

1907 [26th January] The Royal Small Arms Factory [=1904 (1st January), Enfield, releases the Short Magazine Lee-Enfield Rifle, Mark III [Wikipedia factsheet]. The upgrade is to reshape the chamber to take the Mark VII High Velocity .303” round [Wikipedia factsheet; YouTube tutorial]. [THREAD = WW1 SMALL ARMS]

1907 [2nd February] Having been dormant for some time the Deuxième Bureau de l'État-Major [=1871 (8th June)] is re-staffed and given the task of organising the French counter-espionage effort. [THREAD = WW1 ESPIONAGE AND INTELLIGENCE]

1907 [??th February] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXXXVII - The De Forest Radio Telephone Company]: [Continued from ??th January] Lee de Forest [1906 (1st April)<=>1910 (12th January)] severs all ties with the De Forest Wireless Telegraph Company [=1902 (??th January)] and sets up instead as the De Forest Radio Telephone Company [no convenient factsheet]<=>1910 (13th January)] [continues at 1908 ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1907 [16th February] German Naval Expansion [XII - The High Seas Fleet]: [Continued from 1907 undated] The German Heimatflotte [= "Home Fleet"] is redesignated the Hochseeflotte [= "High Seas Fleet"], the better to reflect its new offensive role [continues at 1908 ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]
1907 [21st February] Construction work begins on SMS Blücher [Wikipedia shipography=>1914 (3rd November)], a class-of-one armoured cruiser designed to be fast (25.4 knots), well gunned, and difficult to sink (to which end it is shielded with Krupp Cemented Armour [=1894], has 13 watertight compartments, and is fitted with a double bottom for much of its length). [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1907 [25th February] Seeing is Believing [CIV - Cinemas and Cinema Chains (Colne, Lancashire)]: [Continued from 1906 (15th December)] After two years in the preparation the British showman Joshua Duckworth [no convenient biography] opens a purpose-built cinema at the Central Hall, Colne, Lancashire [Lancashire Record Office factsheet], possibly Britain's first [see academic debate] [sub-thread continues at 1908 (15th January) ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1907 [1st March] Sir Arthur K. Wilson [Wikipedia biography=>1908 (??th March)] is promoted Admiral of the Fleet. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1907 [22nd March] "The Morocco Affair" [IV - The Marrakesh Incident]: [Continued from 16th January 1906] A French citizen is reported murdered in Marrakesh and by way of retribution France sends troops across the border from Algeria to occupy the town of Oudja [Google maps], on the road to the strategically important city of Fez. She also bombards the port of Casablanca, and bills the Sultan for her time and trouble [sub-thread continued at 16th August 1907 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPE OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = CONSPIRACY AGAINST GERMANY] [THREAD = WW1 WAR FEVER]

1907 [1st April] German Naval Expansion [XI - The Queen Elizabeth Class]/The Switch from Coal to Oil [XII - The Elizabeths Go Oil]: [Continued from 1906 (19th May) and 2nd December 1906, respectively] At around this time John A. ["Jacky"] Fisher [1st Baron Fisher]1909 [1906 (21st September)<=1914 (30th October)] and Winston Churchill [1900 (26th September)<=1910 (1st November)] discuss the practicability of a new class of battleships - in eventuality the Queen Elizabeths [=1913 (16th October)] - achieving a speed of 25 knots, giving them a valuable tactical advantage over the 20 knot vessels of the day. Of course such ships were going to have to be oil-fired, and this in turn would mean that there had to be security of supply and enough peace-time oil storage capacity to tide the country through a war. A secret fact-finding delegation is therefore sent off to the Persian Gulf [sub-threads continue at 16th February and 29th September 1910, respectively ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPE OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1907 [15th April-14th May] The 1907 Colonial Imperial Conference: Chaired by the British Prime Minister Sir Henry Campbell-Bannerman [1906 (12th January)<=1908 (3rd April)] this gathering of Australian, Canadian, New Zealand, and South African ministers develops the new concept of independent "Dominions" (not "Colonies" as heretofore) within an overarching Empire [full text of minutes online]. [THREAD = THE SHAPE OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1907 [1st June] Construction work begins on HMS Boadicea [Wikipedia shipography], a light cruiser to be armed with six 4" guns. She is noteworthy in the present context for being the first ship to be fitted with a follow-the-pointer system on her 4" guns [but probably not until a 1916 refit - Ed.]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1907 [15th June-18th October] The Second Hague Congress and Convention: [Continued from 1899 (18th May)] This 18-week international congress at den Haag, Netherlands, extends the 1899 Convention by further defining the rights of neutral countries. [THREAD = WW1 CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL WEAPONS]
1907 [13th July] **Cardiff Docks [X - Queen Alexandra Dock Opened]:** [Continued from 1895 (6th July)] After 12 years under construction the new Queen Alexandra Dock is formally opened as the largest masonry dock in the world. By 1913 Cardiff will be exporting more than 10 million tons of coal annually. Ominously, however, much of this tonnage is for the Royal Navy's coaling stations around the world, and the Royal Navy is already aware that oil-fuelled ships can steam faster for longer. By 1922 the party is over, coal has had its day, and the docks lie idle. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1907 [19th July] **JFK and New Orleans [I - Marguerite Oswald Born]:**

[We begin the new sub-thread <JFK and New Orleans> with the birth of Lee Harvey Oswald's mother, Marguerite; later entries will track New Orleans' involvement with the JFK assassination by bringing into a single timeline key dates in the lives of (alphabetically) Judith Vary Baker, Guy Bannister, David Ferrie, Jim Garrison, Alton Ochsner, Lee Harvey Oswald, Marguerite Oswald, Clay Shaw, and Mary Sherman.]

The union of John and Dorothea Claverie is blessed by the birth of daughter **Marguerite [Oswald]** [check her out] [sub-thread continues at 8th August 1929 ...]. [THREAD = THE JFK ASSASSINATION CONSPIRACIES]

1907 [28th July] Fire sweeps through Steeplechase Park, Coney Island, destroying George C. Tilyou's fairground wheel [<=1893 (1st May [ASIDE])]. True to the amusement park spirit Tilyou opens up the next day charging 10 cents a head to tour the still-smoking ruins! [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1907 [16th August] **"The Morocco Affair" [V - Civil War]:** [Continued from 22nd March 1907] With his regime belittled internationally by the French occupation of Oudja, Sultan Abdelaziz is couped by his older half-brother Abdelhafid [Wikipedia biography], and the country descends into civil war [sub-thread continued at 8th February 1909 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD][THREAD = CONSPIRACY AGAINST GERMANY] [THREAD = WW1 WAR FEVER]

1907 [25th August] **John R. Jellicoe [Viscount Jellicoe]** [1918] [1907<=>1908 (16th October)] is replaced as Director of Naval Ordnance and Torpedoes by **Sir Reginald H. S. Bacon** [Wikipedia factsheet] [=>??th November]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1907 [1st August] **Thomas Andrews** [Wikipedia biography] [=>1912 (14th April)] is put in charge of the technical drawing department at **Harland and Wolff** [1906 (20th September)<=>1910 (20th October)], Belfast, and they get to work fleshing out the conceptual designs passed down to them from the directors of the **White Star Line** [1906 (20th September)<=>1910 (20th October)]. The projects presently exercising their minds are the sister ships **RMS Olympic** [=>1910 (20th October)] and **RMS Titanic** [=>1911 (31st May)]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1907 [25th August] **Baden-Powell** [<=1900 (17th May)] Organises a scout camp on Brownsea Island (in the seclusion of Poole Harbour, Dorsetshire) and starts to put into practice his now-famous theories of wholesome juvenile development, thus ...

"One step toward happiness is to make yourself healthy and strong while a boy."

Around the same time he is working on a manual to accompany his methods, and this will appear the following year under the [not at all funny at the time - Ed.] title "Scouting for Boys" [Wikipedia factsheet]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1907 [31st August] [<=firstly 1813 (The Great Game)] Following two years of behind the scenes preparation by **Sir Edward Grey** [1st Viscount Grey of Fallokon] [1905 (10th February)<=>1914 (29th June)] Britain and Russia sign the Anglo-Russian Entente, the third
piece in the Britain-France-Russia "Triple Entente" and a clear statement of how the countries of Europe will line up when war arrives seven years later. [THREAD = WW1 TREATIES AND ALLIANCES]

1907 [26th September] New Zealand is formally re-constitutionalised as a British Dominion [=15th April]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1907 [28th September] Newport Docks [XI - Alexandra South Dock Extension Opened]:
[Continued from 1905 (?th June)] After only 27 months in the construction the sluice gates are opened to start filling the new Alexandra South Dock Extension. Arrangements are already in hand (placed before Parliament for approval on 13th June) to drive a new sea lock through to the River Severn [continues at 1914 (14th July) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1907 [14th October-3rd November] The Panic of 1907: This three week U.S. financial crash begins on 14th October when a stock manipulation scheme goes wrong and the State Bank of Butte Montana collapses, followed by the Mercantile National Bank of New York City, and then a whole lot of others. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1907 [2nd November] Lord Curzon's "Frontiers" Lecture: The retired Viceroy of India George N. Curzon [Earl Curzon of Kedleston] 1911 [1903 (1st January)<=>1914 (2nd November)] delivers this year's prestigious "Romanes Lecture" at Oxford University. His title is "Frontiers" [full text online]. He fails to mentions the yaks [=1902 (15th May)]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1907 [14th October-3rd November] Computerised Naval Fire Control [VIII - Things Go Wrong for Pollen]: [Continued from 1907 undated] Now that Frederic C. Dreyer [1907<=>1908 (?th March)] has a year's experience with his own fire control system, the new Director of Naval Ordnance and Torpedoes [Sir] 1916 Reginald H. S. Bacon [25th August<=>1908 (?th March)] offers Arthur H. Pollen [1907<=>1908 (?th March)] one more opportunity to demonstrate his system's worth before a panel of assessors [continues at 1908 (?th March) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE-CONTROL]

********** TELEVISION IS CONCEIVED **********

1907 [26th November] The Russian engineer Boris Rosing [Wikipedia biography] starts to develop a cathode ray tube system in which the electron beam is modulated in order to produce a primitive form of moving picture. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1907 [16th December] American Naval Expansion [XII - The Great White Fleet]: [Continued from 20th November 1906] On the orders of President [26th, 1901-1909, Rep.] Theodore Roosevelt [check him out] a U.S. Navy battle-fleet, painted up in ceremonial white, sets off from the Hampton Roads, VA, anchorage on a round-the-world goodwill trip. Organised into two squadrons of eight battleships each, with escorts, the fleet sailed around Cape Horn to the U.S. West Coast, then around Australia and up to Japan, then via India and the Suez Canal into the Mediterranean, and then via the Straights of Gibraltar back home, a total distance of 43,000 nautical miles. The point? Well in just twenty years the U.S Navy had come from zero to hero [end of American Naval Expansion sub-thread]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1908 In an attempt to improve the accuracy of near-polar navigation (for which magnetic compasses are notoriously unreliable) the German inventor Hermann Anschütz-Kaempfe [Wikipedia biography], Kiel, produces a gyro-compass [Wikipedia factsheet]. However, trials reveal inaccuracies due to "rolling error" and these are not cured until 1912, by which time Anschütz-Kaempfe will be competing with the Sperry Gyroscope Company [Grace's Guide factsheet=>1909]. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE-CONTROL]

1908 Some disused orphanage buildings at Sutton, Surrey, are reopened as Belmont Workhouse ['Lost Hospitals of London' factsheet]. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

ASIDE - BELMONT HOSPITAL IN WW1: Belmont will be turned into a 1400-bed hospital/internment camp for injured prisoners-of-war and aliens under observation.

1908 The German Army tests and adopts a 9mm short-barrelled variant of Georg Luger's pistol [<=1898], designating it the P08. [THREAD = WW1 SMALL ARMS]

1908 German Naval Expansion [XIII - The Von der Tann Class Battlecruisers]: [Continued from 1907 (16th February)] Germany begins work on the Von der Tann class battlecruisers [Wikipedia factsheet] [continues at 29th May ...], [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]


1908 Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXXXVIII - Callsign HLX]: [Continued from 1907 (25th February)] The British amateur wireless engineer Richard John Bayntun Hippisley1 [ =>1914 (25th September)] sets up an amateur wireless station - callsign HLX [continues at 1st February ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1ASIDE: Bayntun Hippisley was the nephew of Richard Lionel Hippisley [1899 (12th October [ASIDE])=<1914 (25th September [ASIDE])], Director of Telegraphs for the Royal Engineers during the Second Boer War. For further detail on both men we recommend both Bruton (2014 [online]) and a leisurely visit to the Hippisley family website [lately at http://www.boddyparts.co.uk/hippisleyfamily.htm].

1908 [15th January or hereabouts] Seeing is Believing [CV - Cinemas and Cinema Chains (Some Indicative Statistics)]: [Continued from 1907 (25th February)] The move to dedicated cinemas on the Continent [=1907 (25th February)] was not immediately copied in Britain, where venues were at best shared-usage. For example Nicholas P. Hiley [no convenient biography] offers the following statistics for "London venues used regularly for film exhibition in January 1908":

"Music halls 58, Churches, chapels, and mission halls 58, Salvation Army hostels, workhouses, etc. 53, Public halls 24, Schools 19, Shops 12, Canvas tent 1. TOTAL 225" (Hiley, 2002, p113).


1908 [22nd January] The American journalist Frederic W. Wile [no convenient biography=>1914 (1st June)] arrives in Berlin to earn a living as a freelance foreign correspondent for
newspapers such as the *New York Times* and the *Daily Mail*. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1908 [1st February] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [LXXXIX - The Poulsen System Selling Well]**: [Continued from 1908] After five further years in development Valdemar Poulsen \(\left<\text{1906 (1st April)}\right>\) files for a U.S. patent (eventually granted on 9th June 1908 as U.S. Patent 890451) under the title *"Generator of Electric Oscillations"*. The essential innovation lies in arranging for the constant renewal of the arcing electrodes, and the use of copper rod instead of carbon. Around the same time the U.S. Navy commissions a number of Poulsen-Lorenz Lichtbogen \(\left<\text{1906 (1st April)}\right>\) systems for evaluation. Sales to the German Navy continue\(^1\) [continues at 23rd June ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

\(^1\)ASIDE: The Poulsen-Lorenz system is noteworthy in the present context for being the standard wireless equipment on the German navy's capital ships at the beginning of WW1 (the smaller ships will be equipped with the more compact Telefunken kit) (Headrick, 1991). Headrick, D. R. (1991) *The Invisible Weapon: Telecommunications and International Politics, 1851-1945*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

1908 [27th February] **Seeing is Believing [CVI - Cinemas and Cinema Chains (Deutsche Bioskop Again)]**: [Continued from 15th January] The photochemicals company *Photowerke Schleussner A.G.* \(\left<\text{1902 (18th June)}\right>\) takes over *Deutsche Bioskop* \(\left<\text{1902 (18th June)}\right>\) in the Babelsburg \(\left<\text{map, etc.}\right>\) suburb of Potsdam, 15 miles to the south-west of Berlin. This frees up Grünbaum \(\left<\text{1899 (30th May)}\right>\) to specialise as a cinema owner and he duly begins work on the 500-seat Vitascop-Theater on Berlin's Hermannplatz \(\left<\text{image}\right>\) \(\left[\text{sub-thread continues at 15th May ...}\right]\). [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1908 [4th March] **The Royal Engineers Signals Service (RESS):** The British Secretary of State for War [Richard B. Haldane \(\left<\text{1st Viscount Haldane}\right>\)] \(\left<\text{1905 (10th December)}\right>\) announces in the House of Commons that the recently reorganised RESS is structured as follows …

"The new units are as follows—two field troops, two air line telegraph companies, two cable telegraph companies, two wireless telegraph companies, four divisional telegraph companies, three divisional telegraph companies, two bridging trains, two line of communication telegraph companies. In other words, we have had to recast the whole of the engineer organisation on account of the new organisation and improvements in science" (Hansard, 185:706-774). [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1908 [??th March] **Computerised Naval Fire Control [IX - The Ariadne Trials]**: [Continued from 1907 (??th November)] Arthur H. Pollen \(\left<\text{1907 (??th November)}\right>\) now demonstrates his system aboard *HMS Ariadne* \(\left<\text{1904}\right>\) before a panel made up of Sir Arthur K. Wilson \(\left<\text{1907 (1st March)}\right>\), Frederic C. Dreyer \(\left<\text{1907 (??th November)}\right>\), and [Sir]\(^{1916}\) Reginald H. S. Bacon \(\left<\text{1907 (??th November)}\right>\) before a panel made up of Sir Arthur K. Wilson \(\left<\text{1907 (1st March)}\right>\), Frederic C. Dreyer \(\left<\text{1907 (??th November)}\right>\), and [Sir]\(^{1916}\) Reginald H. S. Bacon \(\left<\text{1907 (??th November)}\right>\). Pollen's son will later explain that it was all over in "barely an hour" (Pollen, 1980, p57) and that the promised contract can no longer be relied upon \(\left[\text{continues at 1909 (5th January) ...}\right]\). [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES] Pollen, A. (1980). *The Great Gunnery Scandal: The Mystery of Jutland*. London: Collins.

1908 [1st April] One of the 19th Century's many volunteer units, lately the 20th Middlesex (Artists') Rifle Volunteer Corps [commonly "The Artists' Rifles"] \(\left<\text{Wikipedia factsheet}\right>\) is reconfigured as the 28th (County of London) Battalion of the London Regiment of the Territorial Army. This unit is noteworthy in the present context because it recruits primarily from the public schools and the universities. [THREAD = WW1 ARNIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS] [THREAD = THE WW1 MIDDLE CLASS SOLDIER]
1908 [3rd April] Upon the resignation due to ill health of the British Prime Minister Sir Henry Campbell-Bannerman [1907 (15th April) => d. 22nd April] the post is taken by Herbert H. Asquith [1st Earl of Oxford and Asquith] [1925 [Wikipedia biography=>1910 (15th January)] With Lloyd George [1905 (10th December) => 1911 (1st July)] promoted to Chancellor of the Exchequer. This latter event is noteworthy in the present context because one of Lloyd George's priorities in his new job is to reduce British naval expenditure. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OR WW1 EUROPE]

1908 [6th April or hereabouts] German Naval Expansion [XIV - The Fourth Fleet Law]: [Continued from 1908 undated] The German Reichstag passes the fourth of its five Flottengesetze, authorising that its battleships may now be replaced after 20 years in service (continues at 1912 (21st May) ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1908 [15th April] The new Whitchurch Mental Hospital [Wikipedia factsheet=>1914], Cardiff, receives its first patients. Its medical director is Edwin Goodall [no convenient biography=>1914 (5th December)]. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

ASIDE - WHITCHURCH ASYLUM IN WW1: Whitchurch started to receive war casualties in 1915 whereupon Goodall starts to specialise in treatments for shellshock.

********** SCHIZOPHRENIA DESCRIBED **********

1908 [24th April] Eugen Bleuler [<=1900] publically uses the term "schizophrenia" to describe a psychiatric condition characterised by abnormal social behaviour and (and possibly because of) a confused conceptualisation of reality. Previous psychiatric nosologies have been using Emil Kraepelin's [<=1891] term Dementia Praecox. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1908 [14th May] The light cruiser HMS Boadicea [Wikipedia shipography=>scrapped 1926]) is launched at Pembroke Royal Dockyard. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1908 [15th May or hereabouts] Seeing is Believing [CVII - Early Motion Pictures (F. Percy Smith)]: [Continued from 27th February] Working to a special commission from the Charles Urban Trading Company [1903 (17th August) => 1911 (12th December)] the specialist director-cameraman F. Percy Smith [Wikipedia biography=>1915 (21st September)] releases a scientific interest reel entitled "The Balancing Bluebottle" [IMDB entry; YouTube it now]. The item is well received at the box-office and Smith will go on to direct some 50 nature films, including "How Spiders Fly" [IMDB entry; YouTube it now] and "The Birth of a Flower" [IMDB entry; YouTube it now], the first ever stop-motion film of a flower growing from seed [sub-thread continues at 1909 (15th March) ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1908 [26th May] [Continued from 1901 (28th May)] After seven years of unsuccessful trial drilling and on the verge of abandoning their quest, the Burmah Oil Company [1886 => 1909 (14th April)] strikes oil near Masjed Suleiman [map, etc.], Iran. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1908 [29th May] German Naval Expansion [XV - State of Play]: [Continued from 1908 (6th April)] The First Lord of the Admiralty Reginald McKenna [Wikipedia biography=>1915 (24th May)] (Liberal Party, North Monmouthshire) reports to Parliament that the Germans presently have 47 cruisers against Britain's 100 [continues at 1909 (29th March) ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1908 [20th June] [Continued from 1906 (9th October)] Ferdinand von Zeppelin [<=1906 (9th October)] oversees the inaugural flight of his fourth airship, the 446 feet [= 136m] LZ4 [Wikipedia
The flight lasts 18 minutes. After adjustments further flights are made and on 1st July the LZ4 is aloft for 12 hours. Finally on 4th/5th August she goes for the all-important 24-hour flight, only to be forced down for repairs and then destroyed in a fire. All will not be lost, however, because the German people have so taken von Zeppelin to their hearts that they proceed to send in enough donations for him to set up the Zeppelin Company and start all over again. [THREAD = WW1 AVIATION]

1908 [23rd June] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XC - The Telefunken Quenched Spark System]: [Continued from 1st February] The Telefunken Company starts filing for patents in Max Wien's quenched spark technology. Much of the development work, however, will be farmed out to a team of engineers led by H. A. Machen at the Siemens Company's British subsidiary at Woolwich [ASIDE: See Rose (1921 online) for a gloriously detailed account of this project.]

[THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1ASIDE: See Rose (1921 online) for a gloriously detailed account of this project.

1908 [17th August] The Germans formally open the new railway station at Metz. Thanks to what will become known a few years down the line as "legendary Teutonic thoroughness" it has a built-in suite for the Kaiser, and fronts on to a deliberately large square - for troops to assemble before or after an entrainment. [THREAD = THE WW1 RAILWAYS]

***** TODAY'S MAINSTREAM MEDIA FORESEEN *****

1908 [24th August or shortly thereafter] Novelist Jack London (whom we met on one of the hunger marches during the Depression of 1893-1898) publishes "The Iron Heel" (London, 1908 [Kindle; full text online; Wikipedia synopsis]), a book which is regarded by some as the first great dystopian novel, anticipating George Orwell's "Nineteen Eighty-Four" by forty years and every bit as blackly inventive. But ahead of its time, perhaps, for it will sell less than 2000 copies in its first three years. Nevertheless, the book includes a couple of very telling commentaries on the value of a tamed press in maintaining an oppressive Establishment. Here is an indicative snippet (a clergyman has been addressing a public meeting on what things are like in the real world of down and outs and fallen women, only to be patiently but firmly led from the stage; Ernest the socialist is amused) ...
United States? It is a parasitic growth that battens on the capitalist class. Its function is to serve the established by moulding public opinion, and right well it serves it.'

[...]

Next morning I sent out for all the papers. So far Ernest was right. Not a word that Bishop Morehouse had uttered was in print. Mention was made in one or two of the papers that he had been overcome by his feelings. Yet the platitudes of the speakers that followed him were reported at length" (London, 1908, k132-135).

1908 [1st September] The Hejaz Railway [II - Opens to Medina]: [Continued from 1900 (1st May)]

After eight years in the construction the 1322 kilometre section of line between Damascus and Medina (map, etc.) opens for traffic. The remaining 400 kilometres south to Mecca (map, etc.) will never be built. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1908 [5th October] The Balkans Again [II - Bulgarians Declare Independence]: [Continued from 1903 (11th June)]

Taking advantage of civil unrest in Turkey, Prince Ferdinand of Bulgaria (1896 (?7th February<=1913 (29th June)) declares his nation a kingdom and himself its Tsar [continues at 6th October ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1908 [6th October] The Balkans Again [III - Bosnia and Herzegovina (Again)]: [Continued from 5th October]

Also taking advantage of civil unrest in Turkey, Austria-Hungary declares its rights under the Treaty of Berlin (=1878 (29th July)) and re-occupies the principalities of Bosnia and Herzegovina [continues at 1913 (29th June) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


1908 [19th October] Construction work begins on SMS Ostfriesland (Wikipedia shipography), the second of the four Helgoland-class battleships. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1908 [28th October] The Daily Telegraph Affair: The Daily Telegraph publishes an interview (full text online) with Kaiser Wilhelm II [1905 (31st March)<=>1914 (19th June)], in which he remarks freely (and in the eyes of many Germans ramblingly so) on matters of German national interest, not least the ongoing naval arms race. His general line of argument is that he is a friend of England, but that the English make this a difficult thing to be. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1908 [15th December or hereabouts] The radical British sociologist Graham Wallas (Wikipedia biography) publishes a monograph entitled Human Nature in Politics (full text online), in which he analyses the mechanisms of "political reasoning" in general and the vulnerability of those mechanisms to "non-rational inference" (that is to say, emotionally or unconsciously motivated prejudice). [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1908 [15th December or hereabouts] The American physicist Dayton C. Miller (Wikipedia biography) demonstrates a new and highly sensitive device for displaying the spectrogram of a target sound. The device consists of a listening horn leading down to a thin glass diaphragm, on the inner surface of which is mounted a delicate miniature mirror. When sound arrives at the diaphragm it vibrates it (just as in the now well-established microphone designs). However when these vibrations are transmitted to the mirror they cause equivalent displacements of a reflected light beam, which, being weightless, maintains the purity of the wave form. The reflected beam is then either displayed on a fluorescent receiving screen where it can be observed and/or photographed. The
device is noteworthy in the present context because with the coming of war it will be developed as an aid to sound-ranging of enemy artillery batteries. [THREAD = WW1 PHYSICS]

1909 [TBA] Cardiography [III - The Weiss Phono-Cardiogram]: [Continued from 1904 (29th February)] The German cardiologist Otto Weiss [no convenient biography=71911 (15th September)], of the Königsberg Physiological Institute, publishes a monograph entitled "Phonokardiogramme" in which he describes the construction and use of the "phonoscope" [design technicalities], an apparatus for picking up a patient's heart sounds and displaying the resulting wave-form as a cardiogram [sub-thread continues at 1911 (15th September) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD][THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

1909 The Sperry Gyroscope Company [1908<>1912] recruits Hannibal C. Ford [1905<>1915 (9th April)] as Chief Engineer. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE CONTROL]

1909 The French General Staff replaces its Plan XV with Plan XVI. [THREAD = WW1 GRAND STRATEGIES]

1909 The British Secretary of State for War Richard Haldane [1st Viscount Haldane]1911 [1908 (4th March)<=1912 (8th February)] sets up an Advisory Committee for Aeronautics to monitor and, where appropriate, facilitate developments in aviation science. [THREAD = WW1 AVIATION]

1909 Konrad Haussner [<=1892] patents a number of improvements to Krupp's recoil systems. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

********** THE GERMANS INVENT "GUNPOWDER FROM AIR"! **********
********** THE GERMANS INVENT "GUNPOWDER FROM AIR" **********
********** THE GERMANS INVENT "GUNPOWDER FROM AIR" **********

1909 [Continued from 1903] The German chemist Fritz Haber [1903<>1913] and the British chemist Robert le Rossignol [Wikipedia biography] collaborate in a laboratory demonstration of ammonia synthesis from (free) atmospheric nitrogen and (cheap) industrial hydrogen using a high-pressure reaction vessel. In one of the best industrial investments ever, the BASF Company [<=1865 (6th April)] purchases the process and put Carl Bosch [Wikipedia biography=1913] in charge of scaling it up for industrial use. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]

1'ASIDE: This phrase is from Friedrich (2005/6 online) and reflects the fact that if a nation has ammonia it can get nitric acid and nitrates, meaning that it no longer needs saltpetre as a raw material for high explosives.

********** POLLEN'S "ARGO CLOCK" FIRE-CONTROL COMPUTER **********

1909 [5th January] Computerised Naval Fire Control [X - The Mark I Argo Clock]: [Continued from 1908 (??th March)] Arthur H. Pollen [1908 (??th March)<=??th October] now sets up the Argo Company [no convenient factsheet] to own all his intellectual property rights, now known as the "Mark I Argo clock". He then lobbies hard and is allowed a further round of evaluation trials to take place aboard HMS Natal [Wikipedia shipography=??th October] in the Autumn [continues at ??th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE CONTROL]

1909 [8th February] "The Morocco Affair" [VI - Franco-German Declaration]: [Continued from 16th August 1907] France and Germany sign a memorandum of mutual understanding in which France recognises Germany's economic ambitions in Morocco in return for German recognition of France political ambitions there. [sub-thread continued at 21st March 1910 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = CONSPIRACY AGAINST GERMANY] [THREAD = WW1 WAR FEVER]

1909 [23rd February] The Battlecruiser Debate [III - HMS Indefatigable]: [Continued from 1906 (2nd April)] Construction work begins on HMS Indefatigable [Wikipedia shipography=>1911 (24th February)], the first of a three-ship class of large armoured cruisers (later to be redesignated as "battlecruisers" [<=1911 (24th November)]). Like the Invincible class before them [<=1906 (2nd April)] they have a battleship's broadside (specifically eight 12" guns in four twin turrets in the same A-P-Q-X layout), but a greater turn of speed [continues at 29th September ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1909 [7th March or hereabouts] Sigmund Freud [1905 (1st January)<=??th September] publishes a paper entitled "Analyse der Phobie eines fünfjährigen Knaben" [full German text online] [in English as "Analysis of a Phobia in a Five-Year-Old Boy"], in which he presents the case history of one Herbert Graf ["Little Hans"] [Wikipedia biography], a five-year-old boy he had been treating for a phobia of horses. Freud famously interprets his observations as evidence of what he terms the "Oedipus Complex" [for details of which see the Companion Resource and scroll to <Freudian Theory>]. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1909 [15th March or hereabouts] Seeing is Believing [CVIII - Early Motion Pictures (Newsreels Invented)]: [Continued from 1908 (15th May)] Pathé Frères [<=1906 (15th December)] launches a regular news magazine at its Boulevard Saint-Denis theatre in Paris, under the banner Pathé-Faits Divers [roughly "Pathé's Diverse Deeds"] (although this name will shortly be changed to Pathé Journal). The format will be well received [sub-thread continues at 8th September ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


1909 [29th March] German Naval Expansion [XVI - The Censure Debate]: [Continued from 1908 (29th May)] The House of Commons conducts a long debate on Naval Policy, during which many scenarios are discussed and many interesting facts given - see Hansard 1909 vol 3 cc39-149 if interested in detail of this nature. The debate in question is led for His Majesty's Opposition by the Liberal Party M.P. Arthur Lee [1st Viscount Lee of Fareham] [Wikipedia biography], who argues that the battleships presently proposed (and for which funding has now to be found) do not "sufficiently secure the safety of the Empire". Here is one of Lee's fundamental points ...

"A few years ago the British Government urged the armour-producing industry of this country to increase its plant in order that it might be in a position to satisfy the national necessity. That was done, and to-day and for some time past the armour-producing capacity of this country, I understand, has been 45,000 tons per annum. During the last two years, 1907–8, the orders given by the Government to that plant have been 1907, 550 tons; 1908, 13,915 tons. So that in the two years only one-sixth of the capacity of the national plant which the Government wished to encourage has been utilised. How is it possible for any commercial business to exist, much less to nourish, under conditions such as that? It is not that our national resources are inferior to the German, but they are paralysed and crippled for want of steady, continuous policy on the part of the Admiralty."

[Continues at 1912 (8th February) ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]
1909 [31st March-27th April] **The "Young Turk" Revolution**: A popular military coup deposes **Abdul Hamid II of Turkey** [<=1900 (1st May)] and replaces him as Ottoman Sultan with **Mehmed V** [Wikipedia biography=&gt;1914 (11th November)]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1909 [14th April] Following its recent oil strike the **Burmah Oil Company** [<=1908 (26th May)] recapitalises and reorganises its Iranian operations as the **Anglo-Persian Oil Company** [Wikipedia Factsheet=&gt;19th April], and starts building a refinery at Abadan on the Persian Gulf [map, etc.]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1909 [19th April] Shares in the new **Anglo-Persian Oil Company** [14th April=&gt;1914 (22nd May)] go on sale. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1909 [16th July] The German career politician **Theobald von Bethmann-Hollweg** [Wikipedia biography=&gt;1914 (6th July)] replaces **von Bülow** [<=1905 (31st March)] as Chancellor and immediately sets out to improve relations with Britain. However, his actions following the assassination of **Archduke Franz Ferdinand of Austria-Hungary** [1896 (19th May)=&gt;1914 (28th June)] do as much to cause the war as stop it. During WW1 he will oppose unrestricted submarine warfare in the Atlantic, fearing that it might precipitate American entry. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1909 [8th September] **Seeing is Believing [CIX - Cinemas and Cinema Chains (Deutsche Vitascope)]:** [Continued from 15th March] **Grünbaum** [<=1908 (27th February)] chooses the name **Deutsche Vitascope G.m.b.H.** [no convenient factsheet=&gt;1915 (22nd January)] for his developing cinema chain. The new company goes for the niche market of sound movies (opera arias and the like) by opening a specialist laboratory on Berlin's Lindenstrasse [sub-thread continues at 25th November ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1909 [?? September or hereabouts] **Sigmund Freud** [7th March=&gt;1910] publishes a paper entitled "**Bemerkungen über einen Fall von Zwangsneurose**" [full German text online] [in English (1925) as "Notes upon a Case of Obsessional Neurosis"], in which he presents the case history of a Viennese lawyer, later tentatively identified as one **Ernst Lanzer** [no convenient biography], whom he has been treating for obsessional thoughts and behaviour and whom he now reports under the pseudonym "**The Rat Man**". [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1909 [27th September] Prompted by the Naval Race going on between Britain and Germany, and aware that this might reduce Britain's ability to police the Pacific area, the Australian Prime Minister **Alfred Deakin** [Wikipedia biography] approves funding for a battlecruiser for the Royal Australian Navy [continues at 1911 (25th October) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1909 [29th September] **The Battlecruiser Debate [IV - The Lions]:** [Continued from 23rd February] Construction work begins on **HMS Lion** [Wikipedia shipography=&gt;1912 (4th June)], the first of a two-ship class of large armoured cruisers (later to be redesignated as "battlecruisers" [<=1911 (24th November)]). Unlike the **Indefatigable** class [<=1909 (23rd February)], the **Lion** class's main armament will be uprated to eight 13.5" guns, all on the midline in A-B-Q-X layout, and their speed to 28 knots [continues at 1911 (24th November) ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1909 [1st October] **SMS Blücher** [1907 (21st February)=&gt;1914 (15th December)] enters service. She is fitted with twelve 210mm [=8.3"] guns in six twin turrets and will be attached to the
slightly faster and more heavily gunned battlecruisers of the *Von der Tann* [1908 <= 1911 (4th February)] and *Seydlitz* classes. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]


11'ASIDE: Cumming habitually signed himself just as "C", and this liking for self-abbreviation later helped the author Ian Fleming construct the character "M" for his James Bond books (although Cook, 2006, suggests that this honour was just as likely to have been Melville’s).

1909 [??th October] **Computerised Naval Fire Control [XI - The Natal Trials]:** [Continued from 1909 (5th January)] **Arthur H. Pollen** [1909 (5th January) <= 1910] spends most of October aboard HMS Natal [<= 1909 (5th January)] putting his "Mark I Argo clock" through its paces. Natal’s captain, Frederick Ogilvy [no convenient biography], quickly masters the technical side of the system. Sadly the live firing phase of the trials is discontinued at short notice, and even more sadly Pollen's parting gift of some oysters gives Ogilvie typhoid fever and he dies on 18th December (Pollen, 1980) [continues at 1910 ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE CONTROL]

1909 [25th November] **Seeing is Believing [CX - The Cinema at War ("Custer's Last Stand")]:** [Continued from 8th September] The latest offering from the [Selig Polyscope Company](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Selig_Polyscope_Company) [1896 (21st March) <= 1914 (7th March)] is an adventure drama (and, unavoidably therefore, also a battle re-enactment) entitled "On the Little Big Horn" [IMDB entry] [sub-thread continues at 1910 (15th June) ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1909 [10th December] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XCI - Official Recognition]:** [Continued from 1908 (23rd June)] Karl Ferdinand Braun [<= 1905 (?7th July)] and Guglielmo Marconi [<= 1901 (23rd February)] share this year’s Nobel Prize for Physics for their contributions to the theory and practice of wireless telecommunications [continues at 1910 (13th January) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]


1909 [19th December] The football club **Borussia Dortmund** [modern corporate website] is founded. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1910 Sigmund Freud [1909 (??7th September) <= 1913] publishes a paper entitled "Eine Kindheitserinnerung des Leonardo da Vinci" [full German text online] [in English (1916) as "Leonardo"], in which he analyses the unconscious dynamics of the maestro's creative process, and concludes that he was a latent homosexual thanks to problems relating to his mother. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1910 The **Rheinmetall Company** [<= 1907] starts to deliver the **250mm schwerer Minenwerfer (sMW)** [= "heavy mine thrower"] [Wikipedia factsheet]. With an operational range of only 600 yards these weapons will prove a cheap alternative to heavy howitzers such as the Big Bertha [<= 1904] and pack one heck of a punch with shells weighing three quarters of a ton. Some 1200 units will have been produced by the end of the war.
They complement this weapon with the 75mm leichter Minenwerfer (lMW) [Wikipedia factsheet], some 12,000 of which will have been produced by the end of the war. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

1910 Guest, Keen, and Nettlefolds Limited [<=1902] mothball their Cyfarthfa Works [1902<=1915] as surplus to present requirements [THREAD = THE WW1 WORKING CLASS SOLDIER]

1910 The Mauser Company [<=1898 (5th April)] releases its P10 "Sidelatch" Pistol. It will be marketed in 6.35mm and 7.65mm versions and around a million or so units will have been produced by the time the model is withdrawn in 1940. [THREAD = WW1 SMALL ARMS]

1910 Computerised Naval Fire Control [XII - Pollen Goes Helm-Free]: [Continued from 1909 (??th October)] While waiting for the next call from the Admiralty Arthur H. Pollen [1909 (??th October)<=>1911 (??th May)] sets about an important functional upgrade to the Mark I Argo Clock in order to solve one of the thornier problems observed during the HMS Natal trials the previous Autumn [<=1909 (??th October)], namely that the system was unable to cope when the host ship was on a turn. Pollen's answer is to include an additional functional module to provide "helm-free" plotting, resulting a year or so later in the "Mark II Argo Clock" [continues at 1911 (??th May) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE-CONTROL]

1910 [10th January or hereabouts] The Secret Service Bureau [<=1909 (1st October)] reorganises itself into two operational divisions, namely the "Security Service (MI5)" [Wikipedia factsheet] and the "Secret Intelligence Service (MI6)" [Wikipedia factsheet], responsible for homeland and foreign operations, respectively, and headed by [Sir] Vernon G. W. Kell [<=1909 (1st October)] and [Sir] Mansfield [Codename "C"] [Smith-Cumming] [=1909 (1st October)], respectively. [THREAD = WW1 ESPIONAGE AND INTELLIGENCE]

1910 [12th January] The Holt Company [<=1904 (24th November)] sets up a subsidiary named the Holt Caterpillar Company to market its "caterpillar crawler" tracked vehicles. [THREAD = WW1 TANKS]

1910 [12th/13th January] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XCII - The Met Broadcasts]: [Continued from 1909 (10th December)] Lee de Forest [<=1907 (??th February)] organises an experimental public broadcast from the Metropolitan Opera House, New York City. Parts of Tosca are broadcast on 12th January, followed by parts of Pagliacci (with Enrico Caruso) on 13th. Around the same time Robert B. Goldschmidt [<=1906] is commissioned by King Albert I of Belgium [Wikipedia biography>=1914 (24th August)] to look into the possibilities of establishing a wireless link between Laeken, Brussels, and the Belgian possessions in Africa, specifically to Léopoldville, Belgian Congo [= modern Kinshasa, Democratic Republic of Congo]. Around the same time Rudolf Goldschmidt [1907 (??th January)<=>1911 (??th November)] is working on a Tonrad [= "tone-wheel"; pronounce the first syllable to rhyme with "phone" not "gone"], a device for obtaining audio frequency beats from a single high-frequency input. Later Goldschmidt System [1907 (??th January)<=>1913 (1st July)] receivers will include this device [continues at 1910 (??th March) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1910 [15th January–10th February] The January 1910 General Election: This British General Election leaves the Prime Minister Herbert H. Asquith [1st Earl of Oxford and Asquith] short of an overall majority and therefore dependent on the 82-seat Irish Parliamentary Party [1902 (26th February)<=3rd December] to keep him in power. The price of this support will be a renewed drive for Irish Home Rule [=>1911 (18th December)]. Having been M.P. for Merthyr Tydfil for the last 22 years
1910 (21st February) **Irish Home Rule [XIII - The Ulster Unionist Party]**: (Continued from 1905 (28th November)) **Sir Edward Carson** [1905 (3rd March)<=1912 (28th September)] assumes the leadership of the **Ulster Unionist Party** [1905 (3rd March)<=1911 (18th August)]. In the House of Commons, meanwhile, the Liberal Party has delivered on its Irish Home Rule promise [<=15th January] by introducing a **Parliament Bill** [1910 version] [=??th June] which, if passed, will prevent the House of Lords vetoing any bill which had been passed three times in the House of Commons regardless of the extent of their opposition to it. And of course a previous Irish Home Rule Bill has been thrown out in exactly this fashion [<=1893 (4th September)]. There follows a year of bitter confrontation between the Liberal government and its unionist-minded Conservative and Ulster Unionist opposition [continues at ??th June ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1910 (???th March) **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XCIII - The Marconi Plans]**: (Continued from 12th January) **The Marconi Company** [1905 (??th May)<=1911 (??th February)] present plans to the British government for an "Imperial Wireless Chain" [=1911 (31st May)], a network of 18 wireless stations positioned at strategic points around the world (Gibraltar, Aden, Bangalore, Singapore, etc.) to complement the existing undersea cable network, vulnerable as this is to enemy action. This immediately divides the Establishment (i.e., government in its widest sense, elected and otherwise, visible and covert) into those who for reasons of good parliamentary practice fear allowing a Marconi monopoly to develop and those others (especially in the War Office) who prefer a quickly available monopoly to a slow and painful public debate.1 [continues at 1911 (???th February) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1 **ASIDE**: In the event everyone gets the worst of both worlds. The pro-monopoly people go ahead on their own authority [=1911 (31st May)], but as far as possible keep the ensuing contracts and purchases out of the public eye. The anti-monopoly people find out in due course what has been going on and then force an even slower and more painful post-hoc drains-up [=1912 (11th October)].

1910 (21st March) **"The Morocco Affair" [VII - The 1910 Loan]**: (Continued from 8th February 1909) Sultan Abdelhafid is forced by economic distress to sign for another consolidation loan, this time for FF100 million at 5%. The increased interest payments now more or less totally consume the nation’s customs revenue [sub-thread continued at 28th March 1911 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = CONSPIRACY AGAINST GERMANY] [THREAD = WW1 WAR FEVER]

1910 (7th April) **The battlecruiser SMS Moltke** [Wikipedia shipography=>1911 (28th March)] is launched at **Blohm und Voss** [1877 (5th April)<=1911 (4th February)], Hamburg. She is the lead ship in a two-ship class, her younger sister being **SMS Goeben** [=1911 (28th March)]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1910 (6th May) **Upon the death of Edward VII of Britain** [=1903 (1st January)] his titles pass to his son as **George V** [Wikipedia biography=>??th June]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1910 (31st May) **The Union of South Africa**: The four original South African colonies - Cape Colony, Natal, Transvaal, and Orange Free State - come together as the Union of South Africa. The first Prime Minister is **Louis Botha** [1901 (28th February)<=1915 (4th February)] and the first Defence Minister is **Jan Smuts** [Wikipedia biography=>1916 (19th February)]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF MODERN EUROPE]

---

David A. Thomas [1st Viscount Rhondda]1916 [1888 (14th March)<=1911 (1st September)] now wins Cardiff for the Liberal Party. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]
1910 [15th June or hereabouts] **Seeing is Believing** [CXI - Early Motion Pictures (The Pathé Animated Gazettes)]: [Continued from 1909 (25th November)] Following the success of the experiment in France [<=1909 (15th March)] **British Pathé** [Wikipedia factsheet] introduces newsreels to London under the banner **Pathé Animated Gazettes**, where they offer "a weekly record of the world's events in motion pictures", and soon achieve an audience of "more than 10 million people weekly" (contemporary marketing material). An American equivalent - the **Pathé Weekly** - will appear the following summer [sub-thread continues at 1911 (7th May) ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1910 [7th June-10th November] **Irish Home Rule** [XIV - Over Our Dead Bodies]: [Continued from 21st February] Following four months of deepening constitutional crisis over the **Parliament Bill**[1910 version] [<=21st February] the newly ascended **George V** [6th May =>1911 (6th February)] summons the feuding factions to Buckingham Palace for confidential discussions. The Unionist faction comprises **Andrew Bonar Law** [Wikipedia biography] [1911 (13th November)], **Frederick E. Smith** [1st Earl of Birkenhead] [1912] [21st February] [1906 (12th March)] [1914 (27th August)], the influential editor of The Observer newspaper **James L. Garvin** [Wikipedia biography], and **Sir Edward Carson** [1905 (3rd March)] [1912 (28th September)], who are demanding - more or less over their dead bodies - that the House of Lords should retain its veto on Irish Home Rule. The last of these meetings will take place on 10th November, when it is decided to dissolve Parliament and have another general election [=>3rd December]. No direct record of the proceedings survives but it seems likely that the notion of partition of Unionist northern Ireland from the nationalist south first emerged around this time [continues at 1911 (21st February) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

**ASIDE:** It is an unwritten rule of British public life that conversations with Royalty are automatically and instantly confidential, and hence ignored or at least glossed over in memoirs and other works of record.

1910 [1st September] **The Cambrian Collieries Strike** [I - The Initial Lock Out]: Following a dispute over pay and conditions the management at the **Naval Colliery Company** [no convenient factsheet], part of **David A. Thomas** [1st Viscount Rhondda] [1916] [15th January] [3rd December] **Cambrian Combine** [no convenient factsheet] [1st November] of South Wales collieries, locks out the entire workforce of 950 men and boys at its pits around Tonypandy [pronounce Tony- to rhyme with "honour"] in the Rhondda Valley [continues at 1st November ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 WORKING CLASS SOLDIER]

1910 [29th September] **The Switch from Coal to Oil** [XIII - Oil is Adopted (US)]: [Continued from 1st April 1907] The destroyer **USS Paulding** [Wikipedia shipography] enters service. She is the first of 21 vessels in her class, and differs from the earlier **USS Smith**-class [<=1906 (29th June)] only in being exclusively oil-fired, and therefore lighter and faster. **Erik J. Dahl's** (2000 [full text online]) paper "From Coal to Oil" offers a quick retrospective of the conversion from coal to oil power in this era [sub-thread continues at 16th October 1913 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1910 [10th October] **Later Maine Investigations** [II - Reclaiming the Wreck]: [Continued from 27th May 1898] Following Bucknill's disagreement with the **Sampson Inquiry**, naval constructors proceeded to spend several years heatedly exchanging opinions and corrective observations [summarised in Samuels and Samuels (1995, pp245-248), if interested - Ed.]. Then in the early years of the new century the Havana Harbour authorities started making noises about clearing the wreck from the Buoy #4 anchorage, and pressure groups back home started to demand the recovery of the remaining bodies therein. The debate over whether to raise and re-sink the wreck, or simply to dynamite it in situ, intensified during 1908/9, and the balance of Congressional opinion swung gradually in favour of
the raising and re-sinking option. Monies were formally appropriated 9th May 1910, and the job given to a task force from the Army Corps of Engineers, who decide 10th October that the best approach is to encircle the wreck in a temporary dry-dock known as a "cofferdam", and then simply pump out the enclosed seawater until the wreck is fully exposed.

Compare images ...
BEFORE - AFTER

[Sub-thread continues at 10th November 1911 ...] [THREAD = USS MAINE FALSE FLAG CONSPIRACY]

1910 [20th October] The RMS Olympic [Wikipedia shipography=>scrapped 1936-1937] is launched at Harland and Wolff [1907 (1st August)<=>1911 (31st May)], Belfast, for service with the White Star Line [1907 (1st August)<=>1911 (31st May)]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

ASIDE - RMS OLYMPIC IN WW1: Olympic remained in restricted commercial service until May 1915 and was then requisitioned for use as a troopship. In this role she successfully rammed and sank U-103 on 12th May 1918.

1910 [1st-9th November] The Cambrian Collieries Strike [II - The Tonypandy Riots]:
[Continued from 1st September] Following a ballot by the South Wales Miners' Federation [<=1898 (24th October)] all 12,000 employees of the Cambrian Combine [<=1st September] pits come out on strike. Pickets are put in place on 7th November and matters turn into a riotous confrontation with the police that same night. Hearing that the situation has deteriorated the Home Secretary Winston Churchill [1907<=>1911 (24th October)] mobilises extra police, a company of Lancashire Fusiliers, and a detachment of 18th Hussars. These are deployed to the troubled towns on 9th November and in the ensuing confrontation with the police a Tonypandy miner named Samuel Rhys [no convenient biography] is killed (the troops, in the event, are not needed and there is no gunfire). [THREAD = THE WW1 WORKING CLASS SOLDIER]

1910 [3rd-9th December] The December 1910 General Election: This British General Election leaves the Prime Minister Herbert H. Asquith [1st Earl of Oxford and Asquith]1925 [15th January<=>1912 (11th April)] still short of an overall majority and therefore dependent on the 74-seat Irish Parliamentary Party [15th January<=>1912 (11th April)] to keep him in power. The price of this support will be a continued drive for Irish Home Rule [=>1911 (18th December)]. David A. Thomas [1st Viscount Rhondda]1916 [1st September<=>1915 (17th April)] takes this opportunity to retire from politics to pursue his business interests. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1910 [20th-30th November] The Jekyll Island Conference: Highly confidential discussions take place at the Jekyll Island coastal retreat between a gathering of senior bankers and aides. The main delegates are Nelson Aldrich [check him out], Thomas Lamont [check him out], J. P. Morgan associates Henry P. Davison [check him out], Benjamin Strong [check him out], and Charles Norton [check him out], Kuhn, Loeb and Company partner Paul Warburg [check him out], National City Bank partner Frank Vanderlip [check him out], Harvard academic Abram Andrew [check him out], and Aldrich's assistant Arthur B. Shelton [no convenient biography]. Aldrich and Andrew come armed with some of the early thinking out of the National Monetary Commission [check it out], and as far as has since been established (few notes were taken) the end result is the first draft of what will in due course be implemented as the Federal Reserve System [check it out].
1910 [18th December] A 22-year-old [Sir] Thomas O. M. Sopwith [Wikipedia biography] wins £4000 in an air race and uses the money to set up the Sopwith School of Flying at Brooklands Aerodrome, Surrey. [THREAD = WW1 AVIATION]

1911 The American engineer Isaac N. Lewis [Wikipedia biography] designs a light-weight machine gun. The "Lewis Gun" will be available in .303" calibre for volume deployment in the British Army from October 1915, and will prove very successful. [THREAD = WW1 MACHINE GUNS]

1911 William McDougall [1907<=1912] publishes "Body and Mind", but it is not well received commercially. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]


1911 On behalf of his employer Richard Hornsby and Sons [Wikipedia factsheet], Grantham, the engineer David Roberts [Wikipedia biography] demonstrates a tracked tractor [image in the bio] capable of moving across rough ground on caterpillar tracks. The British Army are not sufficiently impressed to place an order. [THREAD = WW1 TANKS]

******* IMPORTANT WW1 TECHNOLOGY *******
==== THE BARR AND STROUD INFANTRY RANGEFINDER ====
1911 The Barr and Stroud Company [<=1893] finally has its optical rangefinders approved by the British Army. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

1911 [11th January] The Kaiser Wilhelm Gesellschaft (KWG): The theologian Adolf von Harnock [Wikipedia biography] becomes present of the newly constituted Kaiser Wilhelm Gesellschaft zur Förderung der Wissenschaften [Wikipedia factsheet] in Berlin. Based in the Dahlem district of Berlin the institute brings together previously separate physics and chemistry institutes into a university-independent centre for fundamental research in the natural sciences. One of the KWG's first major breakthroughs is a paper by the chemist Carl A. Neuberg [Wikipedia biography] in which he reports that certain additives can affect the fermentation of sugars into alcohol by producing significant quantities of glycerine. This discovery is noteworthy in the present context because glycerine, properly nitrated, gives us nitroglycerine. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]

1ASIDE: Readers are reminded that the essence of the Haber Process [<=1909] is to obtain ammonia (with its nitrate radical) more or less from thin air. With Neuberg's process they can now also obtain glycerine (1000 tons of it a month, eventually) from common agricultural biomass. Other KWG historical breakthroughs will include splitting the atom in 1938.

1911 [1st February] HMS Thunderer [Wikipedia shipography] is launched at Thames Ironworks and Shipbuilding Company [<=1885 (15th June)]<=wound up shortly afterward. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1911 [4th February] Construction work begins at Blohm und Voss [1910 (7th April)<=28th March], Hamburg, on SMS Seydlitz [Wikipedia shipography] an experimental class of one ship, designed to improve on the Von der Tann [1909 (1st October)<=1914 (28th August)] and Moltke [<=1910 (7th April)] classes of large armoured cruisers. The completed ship will displace 25,000 tons, be armed with ten 280mm [= 11"] guns in five twin turrets, and be capable of 26.5 knots. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]
1911 [6th February] George V [1910 (??th June)]=>4th July] formally opens the new Parliamentary Session. [THREAD = WW1 PARTY POLITICS]

1911 [??th February] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XCIV - The Bellini-Tosi Goniometer]: [Continued from 1910 (??th March)] The Marconi Company [1910 (??th March)]<=1912 (7th March)] buys up the patents in a compact system of wireless "goniometry" [= direction finding] developed by two Italian servicemen Ettore Bellini [Wikipedia biography] and Alessandro Tosi [Wikipedia biography]. The system lacks range, however, and will not play a significant role in WW1. In Germany, meanwhile, the Telefunken Company's [1908 (23rd June)]<=3rd September] Chief Engineer Hans Bredow [Wikipedia biography] has negotiated an agreement with the Marconi Company to rationalise their mutual interests in the smooth running of the wireless systems used in the German merchant navy. The two companies henceforth operate (55% Telefunken - 45% Marconi) as the Deutsche Betriebsgesellschaft für Drahtlose Telegraphie (DEBEG) [no convenient factsheet=>1914 (20th July)], with offices in Berlin and Hamburg [continues at ??th April ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1911 [21st February] Irish Home Rule [XV - The House of Lords Veto]: [Continued from 1910 (??th June)] The Parliament Bill[1911 version] [Wikipedia factsheet] is introduced to the House of Commons. As with the 1910 version of the bill [<=1910 (??th June)] this is an inevitably controversial piece of legislation, intended as it is as a method of preventing the House of Lords from vetoing the next attempt at a Home Rule Bill [=1912 (11th April)] [continues at 15th May ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1911 [24th February] HMS Indefatigable [1909 (23rd February)]=>1916 (31st May)] enters service. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1911 [28th March-21st May] "The Morocco Affair" [VIII - Fez Rebellion]: [Continued from 21st March 1910] Rebel tribesmen lay siege to Sultan Abdelhafid in the city of Fez. The Sultan requests help from the French and a 23,000-man relief column is sent from Oudja under the command of General Charles Émile Moinier [Wikipedia biography]. The siege is lifted 21st May 1911. Sir Edward Grey reassures Parliament 2nd May 1911 that Britain is being kept fully informed [sub-thread continued at 1st July 1911 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD][THREAD = CONSPIRACY AGAINST GERMANY] [THREAD = WW1 WAR FEVER]

1911 [28th March] The battlecruiser SMS Goeben [Wikipedia shipography]=>1914 (16th August)] is launched at Blohm und Voss [4th February]=>1913 (13th April)], Hamburg. She is the second ship in a two-ship class, her older sister being SMS Moltke [1910 (7th April)]=>1914 (15th December)]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1911 [28th March] Vickers, Sons, and Maxim Limited [<=1902] is recapitalised and reorganised as Vickers Limited [Wikipedia factsheet]=>1912 (28th December)]. Around the same time it acquires a controlling interest in the torpedo manufacturers Whitehead and Company [=1875], Weymouth, and sets up its own aviation department. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]

1911 [??th April] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XCV - Wireless Takes Off]: [Continued from ??th February] The Zeppelin Company [=1908 (20th June)] starts fitting its airships with wireless equipment [continues at 31st May ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1911 [1st May] HMS Conqueror [Wikipedia shipography=>scrapped 1922] is launched at William Beardmore and Company [=1906 (23rd June)], Dalmuir. She will be armed with 10 of the
newly popular 13.5” [≈343mm] guns, now established as more effective in several key respects than the older 12” guns. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1911 [15th May] The U.S. Supreme Court rules that the **Standard Oil Company** [{<=1870 (10th January)}] has grown too large to be truly constitutional. In accordance with this ruling its assets are reorganised as no less than 34 smaller companies, the largest of which are **Standard Oil of New Jersey [Exxon]** [Wikipedia factsheet] and **Standard Oil of New York [Mobil]** [Wikipedia factsheet]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1911 [15th May] **Irish Home Rule [XVI - The House of Lords Veto]**: [Continued from 21st February] The **Parliament Bill** [1911 version] [{<=21st February}] is passed by the House of Commons by 362 votes to 241 and now goes forward to its first real testing, that is to say, for it to be approved also by the House of Lords (who still have the power to veto the passing of any law restricting their power of veto) [continues at 29th May ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

**** "IT WOULD BE A MISTAKE TO STRIVE FOR SUBTLETY OF EFFECT" ****

1911 [??th May] **Seeing is Believing [CXII - Early Motion Pictures ("Richard III")]**: [Continued from 1910 (15th June)] [Before proceeding readers should re-familiarise themselves with the sciences of visual argument and enthymeme at 1898 (3rd July)] [RESEARCH ISSUE and supporting notes.]] The British actor [Sir] **Francis R. Benson** [Wikipedia biography] directs and stars in the movie "Richard III" [IMDB entry; YouTube it now]. The modern historian **Jon Burrows** [Warwick University homepage] will later point out that the emerging art of serious film drama is borrowing from older theatrical traditions which are themselves still somewhat fluid, thus ...

"Within the Edwardian theatre there was no single set of theatrical conventions, no single theatrical style. Instead, the stage of 1911, in all its multifarious manifestations, housed an incredible diversity of performance practices that appealed to different and sometimes mutually exclusive audience constituencies, both in terms of class and regional specificity. So when British films drew upon some of these practices they were making an intervention into a complex network of divergent critical canons and audience affiliations ..." (Burrows, 2002, pp79-80).


1911 [??th May] **Computerised Naval Fire Control [XIII - The Mark II Argo Clock]**: [Continued from 1909] **Arthur H. Pollen** [1910<=1912 (??th March)] NOW submits his **Mark II Argo Clock**, incorporating "helm-free" plotting", for evaluation. Around the same time his rivals **Frederic C. Dreyer** [<=1908 (??th March)<=1912 (??th March)] and **Elliott Brothers** [1902<=1912 (??th March)] submit their first prototype "Dreyer Fire Control Table" for evaluation [continues at 1912 (??th March) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE-CONTROL]

1ASIDE: According to Pollen (1980) this was the only trial of the Mark II Argo Clock. There are then "no records of the Mark III Clock" (p261), so we shall now be jumping straight to the Mark IV [{>1912 (??th July)}]. Readers are reassured that such discontinuities in the numbering of engineering products are nothing to be overly concerned about.

ASIDE - RECOMMENDED READING: Brooks (2005), Chapter 2.


KEY BALLISTICS VOCABULARY - TRUE COURSE PLOTTING: True Course Plotting involves tracing out on a large blank sheet of paper two lines, the first showing the
track of your own ship and the other the track of the ship you intend firing at. Your Plotter therefore needs a platen to hold the paper, a two-pen tracing system to draw the lines, **and enough input data to drive the one around the other.** The end result is a machine which at any one moment in time can be used to calculate the same two outputs - **track-deflected turret bearing** and **range-rate-deflected range** - as in the older Dumaresque [<=1902] or Battenberg [Wikipedia factsheet] Course Indicators. The turret bearing can be stated either "true" (where zero degrees is true north) or "relative" (where zero degrees is the long axis of your own ship), or both, but will eventually be needed as a relative bearing by those who are operating the turret training equipment. All ranges will be converted to physical angles of elevation at the gun, and if properly deflected will already reflect NOT where the target IS but where it WILL BE when the shell arrives.

**KEY BALLISTICS VOCABULARY - STRAIGHT COURSE PLOTTING:** A straight course plot on the other hand simply records one's own ship's movement as a straight line, even when it isn't. This means you can get away with a one-pen tracing system, although the plot can only be interpreted with practice. It also means that all input bearings must be stated relative to your own bow, not compass north, but that too is not a problem once you get used to it. Otherwise as above.

**KEY BALLISTICS VOCABULARY - "HELM-FREE" PLOTTING:** A third type of deflection - to give you a helm-deflected turret bearing - must be allowed for in real time if plotting is required "under helm", that is to say, while your own ship is turning. This is clearly the ideal level of functionality but only started to appear later in the war when the Dreyer-Elliott systems caught up with the Pollen-Isherwood Argos.

**KEY BALLISTICS VOCABULARY - ABSOLUTE SECRECY:** If you are careless enough to let your enemy know that your systems cannot cope with either of you making sudden turns then they will adjust their tactics to do/make you do exactly that. So zip it at all times.


1911 [31st May] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XCVI - The Imperial Wireless Chain]:** [Continued from ??th April] Being exceptionally well-informed on wireless technology the journalist-politician Sir Henry Norman [Wikipedia biography=>1912 (11th October)] has been chairing the War Office Committee on Wireless Telegraphy and Telephony [=1912 (19th July)], a sub-committee of the Committee of Imperial Defence, and now reports to Parliament on the relative merits of the various proprietary wireless telegraphy systems for use in the proposed Imperial Wireless Chain [1910 (??th March)<=>1912 (7th March)]. The committee recommends that should be a backbone network of six long-range wireless transmitting stations, but that competitive tendering is not justified because the Marconi system "is at present the only system ... capable of fulfilling the requirements" (Hansard, 55:586-590) [continues at 3rd September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1911 [31st May] **The RMS Titanic** [Wikipedia_shipography=>sunk 1912 (14th April)] is launched at Harland and Wolff [1910 (20th October)<=>1912], Belfast, for service with the White Star Line [1910 (20th October)<=>1914 (20th June)]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1911 [1st July] **The Indefatigable-class** [=1909 (23rd February)] battlecruiser HMS New Zealand [Wikipedia_shipography=>1914 (28th August)] is launched at Fairfield Shipbuilding and Engineering Company [1906 (27th January)<=>1914 (4th November)], Govan. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

"The Morocco affair slammed the doors in the faces of the peacemakers in Europe"
(Ramsay MacDonald)
1911 [1st-21st July] "The Morocco Affair" [IX - The Agadir Crisis]: [Continued from 28th March 1911] [a.k.a. "The Second Morocco Crisis"] Acting on (in retrospect, bad) advice from the German Foreign Minister Alfred von Kiderlen-Waechter [check him out], Kaiser Wilhelm II approves the sending of the gunboat SMS Panther [Wikipedia shipography] to establish a German presence at the port of Agadir [Google maps]. Germany's broad concern is that France's military intervention in the ongoing Fez Rebellion [see... is just a convenient excuse for creeping annexation, threatening Germany's quite substantial mining concessions in the country, and the Panther is sent to a port 500 miles away on the other side of the country just to make a point. The standard diplomatic justification in such circumstances is the protection of one's citizens and property.

ASIDE: Many sources therefore take delight in pointing out that there were no German citizens in the city at the time, nor had they called for help, nor were they personally under any particular threat. Indeed, there were just four employees of the Mannesmann Company in the region, peacefully organising iron ore and other mining concessions. The suspicion is therefore that this was indeed only a minor political gesture with a genuinely commercial intention.

France and Germany proceed to deal with the issue through normal diplomatic channels, that is to say, through the respective foreign ministries with the respective media outlets constantly offering their two-penn'orth. The British on the other hand, who are bound under the Entente Cordiale merely to give France diplomatic support when called for, and for reasons still unknown, throw nothing less than a hissy fit ...

***** HISTORICALLY PIVOTAL MOMENT *****

On 21st July Lloyd George [1908 (3rd April)<=>1914 (19th September)] has his say on events in what will become known as his "Mansion House Speech" [full text online]. In it he argues that there are some issues where a nation has no option but to go to war in defence of its "national honour". The British press has a field day, and everything abruptly becomes violently anti-German. Foreign Secretary Sir Edward Grey (who had agreed every word of Lloyd George's speech in advance) makes a major summary statement in Parliament 27th November 1911 - read it here. Morel (1915) stresses that Lloyd George's public slap to the face was totally disproportionate - the British public was as taken aback as the Germans - and again suspects that someone is deliberately shaping public opinion against the Germans. OUR VERDICT: Without a doubt downhill to war from here; basically a minor German diplomatic gesture blown out of all proportion by Lloyd George, Grey, and the British press; reeks of conspiratorial malice aforethought [sub-thread continued at 21st March 1910 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = CONSPIRACY AGAINST GERMANY] [THREAD = WW1 WAR FEVER]

1911 [4th July-18th August] Irish Home Rule [XVIII - The Lansdowne Amendment]: [Continued from 29th May] The unionists in the House of Lords now play their trump card when the Conservative Party Leader there, Henry Petty Fitzmaurice, 5th Marquess of Lansdowne [Wikipedia biography] tables an Amendment to the Parliament Bill1911 version [=21st February] to the effect that the proposed withdrawal of the Lords' power of veto should not apply to matters of such constitutional weight as home rule. This Amendment is passed on 24th July, thereby causing a renewed constitutional crisis along the lines of that of 1910. Prime Minister Asquith [1910 (3rd December)<=>1912 (11th April)] duly asks George V [6th February<=>12th December] to authorise the flooding of the House of Lords with newly created peers, and the king reluctantly agrees to the threat thereof. A tense House of Lords re-vote takes place on 10th August and in deference to the king's intervention the amendment is withdrawn allowing the Parliament Act 1911 to...
proceed to Royal Assent on 18th August. The Conservative Leader Balfour is blamed by his own ultra-right wingers for the Liberal-Irish victory and will resign shortly afterward. The Act makes it no longer possible for the House of Lords to vote down legislation passed to it by the House of Commons, merely to delay it for up to two years. Asquith is now free to start preparing the Third Irish Home Rule Bill (continues at 1912 (26th January) ...). [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


1911 [3rd September] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XCVII - Valve-Based Amplification]: [Continued from 31st May] The Telefunken Company's Otto von Bronk [Wikipedia biography] receives a patent for the use of a triode valve both to amplify and to rectify high frequency signals (continues at ??th November ...). [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1911 [15th September or hereabouts] Cardiography [IV - The Bull-Weiss String Galvanometer Cardiogram]: [Continued from 1909 (TBA)] In a paper entitled "On the Simultaneous Record of the Phono- and Electro-Cardiogram" (Bull, 1911 online) Lucien Bull (1904 (29th February)) (since 1908 a director of l'Institut Marey) demonstrates how Einthoven's string galvanometer and Otto Weiss's phonoscope might be brought together as the Bull-Weiss String Galvanometer (no convenient factsheet) to provide a composite record of both the electrical and acoustic activity of the heart (end of sub-thread; but the technology will shortly re-appear in Counter-Battery Science at 1914 (1st November) ...). [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

1 ASIDE: Although this name was not used until the system became popular. The secretary of l'Institut Marey at this time was a French engineer-physician-electrophysiologist named Georges Weiss [no convenient biography], but we have as yet been unable to establish whether it was Otto or Georges who gave his name to the equipment.

2 ASIDE: There is a medically indicative delay between the electrical activity which initiates a heart contraction and the audible pulsing of the arteries which then results. Similarly there is a militarily indicative delay between the flash of an enemy artillery piece and the arrival of the resulting bang. Thus it is that a decade's worth of physiological research is about to be transported into the arena of artillery sound-ranging.

1911 [20th September] The Titanic Conspiracies [I - The Olympic-Hawke Collision]: [New sub-thread] Ships leaving Southampton Docks have to head southward down Southampton Water for about six nautical miles and then decide whether they are going to go left or right around the Isle of Wight, for the island sits squarely across the mouth of the Water like a stopper. At just after midday 20th September 1911 the White Star Line's new RMS Olympic [Wikipedia shipography] is en route for NYC via Cherbourg and Queenstown (now Cobh). Her Captain is Edward J. Smith [check him out], later to command the Titanic on her maiden voyage [see 10th April 1912]. It is Olympic's fifth NYC transit, having been in service since June. Alongside Smith on the bridge is the Southampton pilot Captain George Bowyer, and they are planning to go out along the wider East Solent route. This is not an easy left turn, however, because you have to snake right and then hard left around a series of buoys marking the Bramble Bank sandbank. Coming from the West Solent is the ageing armoured cruiser HMS Hawke [Wikipedia shipography] on her annual power trials The combination of headings, available
channels, speeds, and initial positions give \textit{Olympic} a marginal but nevertheless clear "stand on" in her intended turn.

\textbf{ASIDE - RULES OF THE ROAD AT SEA:} On the open sea you are at the mercy of eyes, charts, and experience. Closer inshore, buoys and local pilots do the job of white lines and give way signs. Normally vessels "keep right" and "give way" to traffic from the right [check it out]. But vessels never have "right of way" as such, merely "stand on", a presumed shared permission to go first. In maritime jurisprudence, BOTH parties must proceed with care during any ensuing manoeuvre.

\textit{Olympic} gives two blasts on the whistle to signal <I am turning to port>, and proceeds to turn across \textit{Hawke}'s bow, expecting \textit{Hawke} to fall patiently in behind her.

\textbf{ASIDE - ROAD RAGE AT SEA:} Cards on the table: one of the present author's few bad habits is to tailgate (other) old fogies should they pull out in front of him but refuse then to accelerate away. This is very likely what happens next ...

Now \textit{Olympic} is the largest ship ever to have negotiated the Bramble Bank turn, and has to back her engines momentarily to help swing her round in the space available - for the precise route, buoy by buoy, see Hall (2012 [Kindle]). By the time she has completed the manoeuvre her speed has come off appreciably, down from 16 knots to about 12 knots, whereupon Smith rings down for <Full Ahead>. The \textit{Hawke}, with a gentler starboard turn, is still making upwards of 14 knots, and coming up fast astern. Time, we suspect, for a White Star versus Royal Navy race. The two ships run parallel for a minute or so, but as \textit{Olympic}'s engines bring her back up to speed, \textit{Hawke} is losing her initial advantage; she is, moreover, tucked in very precariously between the liner and the Isle of Wight. Having never quite got bridge to bridge with \textit{Olympic}, \textit{Hawke} slowly begins to fall back.

\textbf{ASIDE - ROAD RAGE AT SEA:} As on the roads, one of the most aggressive things anyone can do is to accelerate while being overtaken, and one of the stupidest is to try to overtake when running out of road. The precise extent of the overlap between the two ships was never established at either the civil or naval Court of Inquiry.

At this point - and the official statements are suspiciously unconvincing - \textit{Hawke} just seems to lose it. Instead of slowing down, and with Smith and Bowyer watching in disbelief, she simply turns into \textit{Olympic}'s starboard quarter (she will later claim to have suffered jammed steering gear), striking the liner 86 feet forward of her sternpost and putting her out of commission for months. The collision will come back to haunt us in Robin Gardiner's (2010) book "The Great Titanic Conspiracy", wherein it is argued that the severity of \textit{Olympic}'s damage led to her surreptitiously being swapped with her brand new sister \textit{Titanic}, and sunk deliberately for the insurance pay out [sub-thread continues at 10th April 1912 ...]. [THREAD = MAINSTREAM CONSPIRACY THEORIES] [THREAD = STOCK MARKET AND FINANCIAL PRACTICE AND SHARP PRACTICE]

1911 [22nd September] \textit{SMS Ostfriesland} [1908 (19th October)<=>1916 (31st May)] enters service. As part of the High Seas Fleet's First Battleship Squadron, she will participate with distinction in all the major fleet actions of WW1. She is noteworthy in the present context for the accuracy of her gunnery. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1911 [10th October] \textbf{The Chinese Revolution:} The dissident republican warlord Huang Xing [Wikipedia biography=>29th December] leads a popular uprising against the struggling Regency administration of the five-year-old Emperor Pu Yi [Wikipedia biography=>29th December]. The republicans' political leader Sun Yat-Sen [1905 (20th August)<=>29th December] is presently in exile in the U.S. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]
1911 [24th October] **Winston Churchill** [1910 (1st November)\(\leq\)1912 (7th March)] is made First Lord of the Admiralty. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1911 [25th October] [Continued from 1909 (27th September)] The **Indefatigable-class** battlecruiser **HMAS Australia** [Wikipedia shipography\(\geq\)1915 (29th March)] is launched at **John Brown and Company** [1906 (7th June)\(\leq\)1913 (21st April)], Clydebank. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1911 [10th November] **Later Maine Investigations [III - The Vreeland Inquiry]**: [Continued from 10th October 1910] By mid-summer 1911, the Army Engineers have pumped 24 feet of water out of the **Maine**'s Havana Harbour cofferdam. Here is what they find ...

"The damage was much worse than had been anticipated, although the after portion of the vessel from the stern to frame 54 was relatively sound. Forward from frame 54 to frame 41, the main deck was torn loose and the hull was partly blown out on the port side. Forward of frame 41, the main deck was destroyed for 60 feet. Farther forward there was only a twisted mass, out of line with the after portion, and bearing little resemblance to the bow of a ship. // Decks and cabin floors were covered with three to five feet of mud, oyster shells, barnacles, and coral encrustations. The stench of dead marine life, drying filth from the harbour water, and corrosion was overwhelming. Human bones were scattered about" (Samuels and Samuels, 1995, p259).

Congress duly approves funds for further pumping, until in early November ...

"As exposed by the complete dewatering, the upper portion of the ship had been blown away from frame 41 to frame 30. The sides were thrown out while the ship's bottom was nearly whole. Between frames 30 and 18, only half the bottom was in place, mainly on the starboard side. Forward of frame 18, the ship had been destroyed above the level of the protective deck. What was left of the bow was nose down to port and lying on its starboard side in the mud" (ibid., p261).

**ASIDE:** With the hull intact aft of frame 41, the rearmost three-quarters of the ship will subsequently be re-floated - see next entry.

It is now time, before attempting to re-float the wreck, formally to re-examine the torn steelwork in the light of day (the **Samson Inquiry** having relied on inspection by divers). A five-man inspection panel headed by **Admiral Charles E. Vreeland** [Wikipedia biography], Chief Naval Architect, Norfolk Navy Yard, is duly given access to the wreck. Vreeland is accompanied by **Richard M. Watt** [no convenient biography], ordnance expert **Commander Joseph Strauss** [Wikipedia biography], army engineer **Colonel William M. Black** [Wikipedia biography], and recorder **Commander Charles F. Hughes** [Wikipedia biography]. One of the hoped-for outcomes will be a better look at the seat of the explosion around the reserve 6-inch magazine, and thus a better judgement as to whether the explosion was an accident or enemy action of some sort. The panel begins its on-wreck forensic work 20th November, and has its preliminary report ready for privileged eyes 14th December 1911. Here are the crucial observations ...
bottom. Because the indicia of a large mine such as the geyser, shock wave, and dead fish were missing, this must have been a small gunpowder mine in contact with the ship's bottom. It could have been homemade" (ibid., pp267-269).

The essential points are thus (1) that there was an initial external explosion between frames 28 and 31, port side, tucked well under (2) that the curved plating (rather than torn or fractured) indicates a slow explosive such as gunpowder, (3) that the Spanish harbour defences used higher-brisance ...

**TECHNICAL ASIDE:** Brisance is the traditional measure of the chemical speed of an explosion, and thus of the cutting, as opposed to pushing, power of the resulting shock wave. This is how we explained it in the 1832 entry for Henri Bracannot ...

"**KEY BALLISTICS VOCABULARY - BRISANCE:** The French term brisance refers to the sharpness of an explosion, that is to say, brisance is a measure of the speed with which the chemical reaction proceeds, which, in turn, is a measure of the rapidity with which the resulting pressure wave develops. Low brisance explosions, such as those produced by gunpowder, produce a (comparatively) slow pressure front and are commonly described as "pushing" explosives. Pushing explosions can lift great weights without shattering them overly much, as when setting off mines beneath castle walls. By contrast, high brisance explosions, such as those produced by modern "detonating cord" [more on these], produce a fast pressure front and are commonly described as "cutting" explosives. Cutting explosions tend to blow holes straight through obstacles rather than heave them out of the way [check out Alford Technologies' demonstration on YouTube]."

... guncotton mines, not gunpowder, (4) that the lack of a water column or dead fish indicated a relatively small initial charge, (5) that in penetrating the hull the external charge had ignited the six tons of gunpowder in the reserve 6-inch magazine, which had in turn ignited the propellant charges and perhaps some of the shells in the larger 10-inch magazines [unexploded 10-inch shells were recovered from the wreckage - Ed.] [sub-thread continues at 15th December 1911 ...]. [THREAD = USS MAINE FALSE FLAG CONSPIRACY]

1911 [13th November] Following the resignation of Balfour [4th July<>1915 (24th May)] over his handling of the Irish question Bonar Law [1910 (?7 June)<=>1912 (26th January)] is elected Leader of the Conservative Party. [THREAD = WW1 PARTY POLITICS]

1911 [??th November] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XCVIII - Nauen Upgraded, Eilvese Started]: [Continued from 3rd September] The Nauen Wireless Station [1906 (1st April)<=>1914 (4th August)] has now been upgraded with an 80kW high frequency transmitter for traffic worldwide and a 100kW Poulsen-Lorenz system [=1908 (1st February)] dedicated to North American traffic. Around the same time Rudolf Goldschmidt [=1910 (12th January)] starts work on a new long-distance station at Eilvese [map, etc.] near Hannover [continues at 1912 (7th March) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1911 [24th November] The Battlecruiser Debate [V - The Battlecruiser Recognised]: [Continued from 1909 (29th September)] The British Admiralty orders the Invincible class to be reclassified from armoured cruisers to the new designation of "battlecruisers". [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1911 [??th December] Prince Louis of Battenberg [1903 (6th October)<=>1912 (8th December)] is appointed Second Sea Lord at the Admiralty. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

**ASIDE - LORDS AND SEA LORDS OF THE ADMIRALTY:** Civil Lords of the Admiralty were politicians first and foremost; able administrators sometimes, but with no absolute need ever to have been to sea; Sea Lords on the other hand were experienced senior professionals [c.f., <=1868 (3rd December [ASIDE])].
1911 [12th December] The Third Delhi Durbar: The Viceroy of India, Charles Hardinge, 1st Baron Hardinge of Penshurst hosts George V at Delhi's coronation celebrations. The event is duly documented in the Charles Urban Trading Company's 2½-hour epic "With our King and Queen Through India", released on 2nd February 1912. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1911 [15th December] Later Maine Investigations [IV - Vreeland's Final Report]: President Taft releases the Vreeland Report to the House of Representatives. On the wreck meanwhile, the Army Engineers have been jury rigging a wooden bulkhead across frame 41, thus making the surviving hull watertight in readiness for re-floating. The keel has been cut off at this point with oxy-acetylene torches, and all wreckage forward of the new bulkhead will be craned onto barges and separately dumped at sea [sub-thread continues at 26th January 1912 ...]. [THREAD = USS MAINE FALSE FLAG CONSPIRACY]

1911 [29th December] The Republic of China Declared: Having secured the support of enough provincial warlords, Sun Yat-Sen is proclaimed Temporary President of the Republic of China and Emperor Pu Yi is called upon to abdicate the Imperial Throne (which he will do on 12th February 1912). Warlord Huang Xing becomes Minister of War, and rival warlord Yuan Shikai will take over the Presidency on a formal (albeit not enduring) basis on 10th March 1912. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** COMPUTER GAMES ARE BORN **********

1912 Leonardo Torres y Quevado unveils "el Ajedrecista" a chess playing automaton powered by an electromechanical brain. Around the same time the Sperry Gyroscope Company is working on the first "Metal Mike" gyropilot systems [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE CONTROL]

********** THE PRESS NETWORK EXPANDS **********

1912 Thomas Marlowe, long-time editor of the Daily Mail authorises an experimental teletype-teleprinter network for newspaper production using equipment supplied by the Creed Teleprinter Company. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1912 William McDougall publishes "Psychology, the Study of Behaviour" and is pleased (after his earlier disappointments) to see it run to some 100,000 copies. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1912 Brunner, Mond, and Company puts its Silvertown, London, soda factory into mothballs due to lack of orders. Around the same time Harland and Wolff take over the Middleton, Old, and New yards, Govan. Around the same time Armstrong, Whitworth, and Company set up an "Aerial Department" at Whitley, Coventry. Generally speaking, however, the Mond companies are about to make great profits during WW1 - see the Glossary entry for Alfred Mond. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES] [THREAD = WW1 INSIDER TRADING AND PROFITEERING]

1912 New Mexico, previously a Territory, formally becomes the 47th state of the Union. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1912 [20th January] After a year of deliberation, a meeting of the Contraband Sub-Committee of the **Committee of Imperial Defence (CID)** (check it out) resolves that a number of sensitive commodities, not least raw cotton, are NOT to be on the banned list of cargoes in the event of wartime blockade of Germany. But had some of those involved been bought off? A fuller report will appear in 1913, and it is this later report's failure to embargo shipments of cotton which will allow massive tonnages of that material to reach Germany via neutral Holland and Scandinavia, there to be turned into munitions. For more on this issue, compare the entries for Sir Cecil Hurst and Montagu Consett [click here], following onward links to taste. [THREAD = WW1 INSIDER TRADING AND PROFITEERING]


1912 [26th January] **Irish Home Rule [XV - The Third Home Rule Bill]**: [Continued from 1911 (4th July)] In his first public speech as Leader of the Conservative Party Bonar Law [1911 (13th November)<=>1915 (21st April)] describes the idea of a **Third Irish Home Rule Bill** [Wikipedia factsheet] as "trampling upon" the Ulster Unionists [continues at 11th April ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1912 [8th-12th February] **German Naval Expansion [XVII - The Haldane Mission]**: [Continued from 1909 (29th March)] The British Secretary of State for War Richard B. Haldane [1st Viscount Haldane]1911 [<=1909] leads the "Haldane Mission" to Berlin to try to defuse the Naval Race between the two nations. However the visit has not been properly planned and ends up as an embarrassing shambles [continues at 1912 (21st May) ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1912 [14th February] **Arizona**, previously a Territory [<=1850 (9th September)], formally becomes the 48th state of the Union. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1912 [7th March] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [XCIX - The Imperial Wireless Chain]**: [Continued from 1911 (??th November)] The Marconi Company [1911 (??th February)<=>19th July] offers the British government a price of £60,000 for each station in its proposed **Imperial Wireless Chain** [1911 (31st May)<=>19th July] [continues at 1st June ...]. [THREAD = WWI SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1912 [12th March] **The Balkans Again [IV - The Balkan League]**: [.. Continued from 1908 (6th October)] The Balkan states of Serbia, Bulgaria, Greece, and Macedonia come together in a four-way "Balkan League", the better to coordinate their moves for independence from the Ottoman Empire. Success follows later in the year in the First Balkan War [continues at 8th October ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1912 [??th March-??th June] **Computerised Naval Fire Control [XIV - The Mark IV Argo Clock]**: [Continued from 1911 (??th May)] Having added yet further functionality to his system Arthur H. Pollen [1911 (??th May)<=>1914 (29th August)] now submits the resulting **Mark IV Argo Clock** for inspection. Even the First Lord of the Admiralty Winston Churchill [1911 (24th October)<=>1913 (16th June)] pops in for a look. Around the same time his rivals
1912 [15th March] **Sir John French** [1907 (21st December)<=>8th November] is appointed Chief of the Imperial General Staff. The three-man team available to him are (1) (in charge of operations) [Sir]1915 Henry H. Wilson [1st Baronet]1919 [Wikipedia biography]=>assassinated 1922 (22nd June), (2) (in charge of training) Sir Archibald J. Murray [Wikipedia biography], and (3) (in charge of "staff duties") [Sir]1916 Launcelot E. Kiggell [Wikipedia biography]. Between them their task is "to get the Army ready for war". [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

1912 [26th January] **Later Maine Investigations** [V - The Re-Floating of the Maine] [Continued from 15th December 1911] With the hull of the Maine now watertight, sluices are opened and seawater slowly allowed back inside the coffer dam. The wreck breaks free of the mud 11th February and is back at sea level four days later. Now it only remains to disassemble the coffer dam enough to get the vessel out [sub-thread continues at 16th March 1912 ...]. [THREAD = USS MAINE FALSE FLAG CONSPIRACY]

1912 [30th March] "**The Morocco Affair**" [X - The Treaty of Fez]: [Continued from 1st July 1911] By the Treaty of Fez [Wikipedia briefing], Sultan Abdelhafid abdicates his throne and France declares Morocco a French protectorate. Germany is not overly upset, providing only that the trading rights set out in the 1909 Franco-German Declaration are upheld [End of "The Morocco Affair" sub-thread]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = CONSPIRACY AGAINST GERMANY] [THREAD = WW1 WAR FEVER]

1912 [10th April] **The Perils of Coaling** [VLAST - A Particularly Famous Fire]: [Continued from 26th November 1897] After many hours desperately fighting it, a fire in one of the starboard coal bunkers feeding Boiler Room #5 on RMS Titanic is either (a) successfully extinguished, or (b) brought under sufficient control so as not to prevent the liner from sailing on her first and final voyage. Of course everyday engineering problems such as this are kept tightly under wraps to avoid alarming passengers, and so the very existence of this fire is difficult to prove and the true extent of any consequent damage is unknown. The boiler fire (if indeed there was one) therefore features large in 21st Century conspiracy writings - [YouTube one now] [end of The Perils of Coaling sub-thread]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1912 [11th April] **Irish Home Rule** [XV - The Third Irish Home Rule Bill]: [Continued from 26th January] Following the near defeat of the Liberal Party in the December 1910 General Election <=1910 (3rd December)] Prime Minister Asquith [1911 (4th July)<=>1914 (30th July)] has been receiving support from (amongst others) the Irish Parliamentary Party [1910 (3rd December)<=>1914 (3rd August)] to stay in power. The price of their cooperation has been to pass the 1911 Parliament Act, thereby removing the power of the House of Lords simply to veto new legislation (as had happened with the previous two Home Rule Bills). Now, with that enabling legislation out of the way, a Third Irish Home Rule Bill [26th January<=>1913 (13th January)] can finally be placed before the House of Commons [continues at 28th September ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** "THE CULTURAL METAPHORICAL ICON OF OUR TIMES"'1 **********
********** AND "A WARNING TO HUMAN PRESUMPTION" **********
1912 [14th-15th April] On her maiden voyage to New York City the RMS Titanic [<=1911 (31st May)] hits an iceberg and sinks with the loss of 1514 lives. The speed of the sinking is exacerbated by the vessel not having a double bottom sufficiently extensive watertight bulkheads, and the death toll is higher than it otherwise might have been because there were not enough lifeboats for all the passengers. The loss of life would have been worse had not RMS Carpathia [1902 (6th August)<=sunk by U-55, 1918 (17th July)] been only 58 miles away. Summoned by wireless telegraphy she arrives at 0400 after four hours steaming and manages to pick up 705 survivors. The ship's designer Thomas Andrews [<=1907 (1st August)] goes down with the ship; its owner J. Bruce Ismay [<=1902 (1st October)] manages not to (having dressed, according to some accounts, as a woman). The American Senate Enquiry into the sinking begins on 19th April, and the British Enquiry begins on 3rd May. The event is noteworthy in the present context because it will become a ready-made parable on the risks of hubris [= vainglorious pride to the point of foolishness and wholly deserving of being slapped down (as happened here)]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1 ASIDE: This phrase from a paper by Encyclopedia Titanica’s Monica Hall (Hall, 2005 online).

2 ASIDE: Andrews had reportedly wanted to equip Titanic with 46 lifeboats but had backed down when the Board told him to follow the Board of Trade recommended minimum of 20 (16 rigid, and four collapsible). He was similarly overruled with a request for a double bottom and taller watertight bulkheads.


1912 [9th May] Making 10 knots across Weymouth Bay HMS Hibernia [1905 (17th June)<=9th July] demonstrates the launching of a seaplane from a moving ship. Again Charles R. Samson [10th January<=1914 (4th October)] is the intrepid pilot. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

************ THIS ONE STILL AFLOAT ************


1912 [21st May] German Naval Expansion [XVIII - The Fifth Fleet Law]: [Continued from 8th February] The German Reichstag passes the last of its five Flottengesetze, approving three further battleships [continues at 1914 (4th August: 2400hr) ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1912 [23rd May] SS Imperator [Wikipedia shipography] is launched at A.G. Vulkan [<=1906 (1st December)], Hamburg, for service with the Hamburg-America Line [1900 (10th January)<=1913 (13th April)]. She will remain laid up in Hamburg throughout WW1. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1912 [1st June] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [C - The Cable-Cutting Strategy]: [Continued from 7th March] The Committee of Imperial Defence [<=1st May] sets the strategy on the cutting of the German submarine telecommunications cables in time of war, knowing full well that this will force the most sensitive military and diplomatic traffic onto wireless instead, where it will be easier to eavesdrop on [continues at 19th July ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS] [THREAD = WW1 INTELLIGENCE AND ESPIONAGE]

1912 [4th June] HMS Lion [1909 (29th September)<=1914 (28th August)] enters service, destined to serve as [Sir]1914 David R. Beatty [1st Earl Beatty]’s [Wikipedia biography]’s
flagship during the battles of the Heligoland Bight [=1914 (14th August)], Dogger Bank [=1915 (23rd January)], and Jutland [=1916 (31st May)]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1912 [27th June] The British politician Harold J. Tennant [Wikipedia biography] is appointed Under-Secretary of State for War, a position he will hold until replaced by Edward G. V. Stanley, 17th Earl of Derby [1899 (12th October)<=1914 (24th August)] in 1916 [=1916 (18th July)]. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY HIGH COMMANDS]


**ASIDE:** After six months' experimentation the Admiralty's conclusion is that aircraft are useful for spotting but are hardly worth the space they take up. Also they can only be picked up again in calm weather, and only by stopping and making oneself an easy target for submarines.

1912 [19th July] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [CI - The Imperial Wireless Chain]: [Continued from 1st June] Guided by recommendations from the aforementioned War Office Committee on Wireless Telegraphy and Telephony [1911 (31st May)<=1913 (1st May)], and after much deliberation of its own, the British Post Office finally enters into an agreement before contract with the Marconi Company [7th March]<=1913 (7th June)] for an Imperial Wireless Chain [7th March]<=11th October], and the Postmaster-General Herbert Samuel [1902 (13th November)]->11th October] prepares to seek parliamentary approval for the expenditure, for only when the funding is in place can formal contracts be let [continues at 11th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1912 [25th August] The Kuomintang Formed: With its philosophical roots in the revolutionary movements of the past two decades Sun Yat-Sen's [1911 (29th December)<=1913 (1st September)] Tongmenghui [<=1905 (20th August)], and a number of similar factions, join forces to form the Kuomintang [= "National Party"; Wikipedia factsheet]. Over the coming months they become increasingly at odds, both politically and eventually militarily, with the reigning warlord Yuan Shikai [1911 (29th December)]->1913 (1st September)]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1912 [7th September] Seeing is Believing [CXIII - Early Motion Pictures (Babelsburg Studios Comes on Line)]: [Continued from 1911 (??th May)] The first offering from Germany's new Babelsburg Studios [=1908 (27th February)] is "Der Totentanz" [In English as "The Dance of the Dead"; IMDb entry] [sub-thread continues at 1914 (3rd January) ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS][THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1912 [14th September] HMS Audacious [Wikipedia shipography] is launched at Cammell, Laird, and Company [=1905 (7th July)], Birkenhead. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]
1912 [28th September] **Computerised Naval Fire Control [XV - The Orion Trials]:** [Continued from ?th March] The Mark IV Argo Clock is tested aboard HMS Orion [Wikipedia shipography], one of the Royal Navy's latest "Super-Dreadnoughts". It is a success (see Pollen, 1980, p92). Nevertheless around this time it is beginning to become apparent that no matter how good the Argo is, the rival Dreyer Mark III Fire Control Table will be the one selected for standard issue [continues at 1914 (4th August: 2400hr) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE-CONTROL]

1912 [28th September] **Irish Home Rule [XVI - The Ulster Covenant]:** [Continued from 11th April] Sir Edward Carson [1910 (??th June)<=1915 (24th May)] is the first signatory on the "Ulster Covenant" [Wikipedia factsheet], promising thereby to use "all means necessary" to prevent Home Rule for Ireland. He is then joined over the following hours by half a million of his countrymen. Faced with yet another constitutional crisis in his government George V [1911 (12th December)<=1914 (20th March)] calls yet another an emergency meeting of the warring Republican and Loyalist factions [continues at 1913 (13th January) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1912 [1st October] A number of smaller Russian oil producing companies merge as the **Russian General Oil Corporation** [no convenient factsheet]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1912 [1st October] A 300-bed back-up facility for the **Broadmoor Criminal Lunatic Asylum** [<=1861 (27th May)] opens at Rampton [Wikipedia factsheet], Nottinghamshire. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1912 [8th October] **The Balkans Again [V - The First Balkan War, 1912-1913]:** [.. Continued from 12th March] The four Balkan League nations [<=12th March] now turn their coordinated forces onto the Ottoman Empire, and by 30th May 1913 have driven them back to the so-called Çatalca Line [map, etc.] for the first time in 500 years. The jubilation will be short-lived, however, because a month after that victory Bulgaria turns on its erstwhile allies in the Second Balkan War [continues at 1913 (29th June) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1912 [11th October] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [CII - The Imperial Wireless Chain]:** [Continued from 19th July] The House of Commons debates the relative merits of the Marconi and competing wireless telegraphy systems as primary contractors for the proposed Imperial Wireless Chain [19th July<=1913 (7th January)]. During the debate it becomes apparent (a) that not enough is known about the rival systems, and (b) that the Post Office has almost committed Britain to the Marconi system. The Postmaster-General Herbert Samuel [19th July<=1913 (1st July)] gets a hard time of it in the debate and is forced to agree to a Select Committee being set up to look into exactly what the situation is and what can be done about it. The judge Robert Parker, Baron Parker of Waddington [Wikipedia biography] provides advice on the technicalities both of contract law and of probity in public life. For (considerable) further detail see Hansard (42:667-750) and for the committee members see Hansard (42:2331) [continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1912 [11th October] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [CIII - The Sayville Wireless Station]:** [Continued from preceding entry] The Telefunken Company [<=1911 (3rd September)] opens its new transmitting station at Sayville, Long Island [map, etc.]. It is equipped with a Telefunken Alternator which operates at 38kHz with a power output of 100kW. This station is noteworthy in the present context because it is one of the two main relay stations for wireless communication between Berlin and its
fleets and overseas possessions. For a more detailed history see Bacon (1996 online) [continues at 1913 (?th January) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1912 [12th October] **HMS Iron Duke** [Wikipedia shipography=>1916 (31st May)] is launched at Portsmouth Dockyard. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

********** THE "TIME OF ORDEAL" IS PREDICTED **********
********** THE "TIME OF ORDEAL" IS PREDICTED **********
********** THE "TIME OF ORDEAL" IS PREDICTED **********

1912 [22nd October] Now aged 80 years **Lord Roberts** [1900 (11th June)<=>1914 (31st August)] gives a speech [full text online] at the Free Trade Hall, Manchester, in which he takes a highly anti-German stance. He is particularly concerned at Britain's level of preparedness for the war when it comes (and come it surely will). Here is an indicative extract ...

"I am compelled to say frankly, it is the message which events, some quite recent and some remoter, have compelled me to regard as more pressing in 1912 than in 1900-1901. Gentlemen, that message is: 'Arm and prepare to quit yourselves like men, for the time of your ordeal is at hand.' A long interval has been allowed us for preparation; for in this era of rapid evolution twelve years is a big space in human affairs. Twelve years have been given to us, arid in those years what have we done? We have modified and remodified the effete voluntary system; we have invented several new names and a new costume. But as regards efficiency and as regards preparedness for war, we are practically where we were in 1900" (Source stated above)." [THREAD = THE DUTY TO KILL] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1912 [23rd October] The Armenian businessman **Calouste Gulbenkian** [Wikipedia biography] masterminds a reorganisation of oil producing companies in the Ottoman Empire as the **Turkish Petroleum Corporation** [Wikipedia factsheet]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1912 [8th November] With the Balkans ominously grumbling away **Sir John French** [1st Earl of Ypres] [1922 ] [15th March<=>1914 (6th April)] and his team sketch in the preferred senior commanders for the British Expeditionary Force, should it suddenly be needed. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

1912 [8th December] **Prince Louis of Battenberg** [1911 (??th December)<=>1914 (27th October)] is promoted First Sea Lord. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1912 [17th December] **The Tenerife Primate Station [I - Initial Set-Up]:** The Royal Prussian Academy of Sciences leads a number of charitable foundations in agreeing to fund a primate research station in the Canary Islands. They nominate the experimental psychologist **Eugen Teuber** [Wikipedia biography=>1913 (26th December)] as the station's first Director (Teuber, 1994). High on the list of research topics are primate communication ability and creative problem solving [continues at 1913 (26th December) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


1912 [21st December] **The Berlin-Baghdad Railway [III - Beyond Belemedik]:** [Continued from 1903 (27th July)] With war threatening construction work beyond Belemedik now falters. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1912 [28th December] **Vickers Limited** [1911 (28th March)<=>1913 (26th November)] starts to advertise its own School of Flying at the Brooklands Aerodrome, Surrey. [THREAD = WW1 AVIATION]
1913 The Rheinmetall Company [<=1907] start to deliver the 170mm mittlerer Minenwerfer (mMW) (= “medium mine thrower”). Some 2000 will have been produced by the end of the war. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

1913 Sigmund Freud [1910<=1916 (15th February)] publishes a book entitled "Totem und Tabu" [in English (1918) as "Totem and Taboo"], in which he analyses the unconscious motivation beneath humankind’s various belief systems. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1913 Walter Nicolai [<=1907] is made head of Abteilung IIIb [Wikipedia factsheet] in which post he will become known as the "king of lies". [THREAD = WW1 ESPIONAGE AND INTELLIGENCE]

1913 The Krupp Company [1909 (9th January)<=1914 (4th August)] releases the 150mm sFH13 [Wikipedia factsheet], a development of the sFH02 [<=1902]. About 3,500 units will be produced during WW1 in both short-barrelled (L14) and long-barrelled (L17?) variants. The British Army knew them as Jack Johnsons (because they threw a heavyweight boxer's punch). [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

********** THE BRITISH MIDDLE CLASS IDENTIFIED **********

1913 The statisticians in the British Civil Service start formally distinguishing middle class Britons from their companions above them and below them on the social ladder. Most "professionals" - doctors, lawyers, etc. - are henceforth automatically middle class, and so, too, are middle managers, senior civil servants, and low-to-mid-ranking officers in the military. The statistician in charge is one Thomas H. C. Stevenson [Wikipedia biography]. [THREAD = THE WW1 MIDDLE CLASS SOLDIER] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1913 [4th January] Alfred von Schlieffen [<=1894] dies. His dying words are reported as being: "Remember: keep the right strong". [THREAD = WW1 GRAND STRATEGIES]

ASIDE: They didn’t. They lost.

1913 [13th January] Irish Home Rule [XVII - The Ulster Volunteer Force]: [Continued from 1912 (28th September)] The Ulster Unionist Council [<=1905 (3rd March)] sets up the Ulster Volunteer Force [Wikipedia factsheet=25th November], a paramilitary force sworn to resist by force any attempt to implement the Home Rule Bill [<=1912 (11th April)] [continues at 25th November ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1913 [??th January] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [CIV - The Imperial Wireless Chain]: [Continued from 1912 (11th October)] The Marconi Select Committee [1912 (11th October)<=1st May] Recommends that at least some of the early stations in the proposed Imperial Wireless Chain [1912 (11th October)<=1st May] should be state owned [continues at 31st January ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

********** TRIODE AMPLIFICATION IN THE U.S. **********

1913 [31st January] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [CV - Regenerative Feedback]: [Continued from ??th January] The American electrical engineer Edwin H. Armstrong [Wikipedia biography] demonstrates "regenerative feedback" [Wikipedia factsheet], that is to say, the re-cycling of a triode's output as input, thus progressively amplifying the original signal [continues at 13th February ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]
1913 [13th February for several months] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting

[CVI - The Arlington/USS Salem Trials]: [Continued from 31st January] The U.S. Navy’s new long-range wireless station at Arlington [map, etc.] comes on stream and immediately engages in a prolonged series of comparative performance trials of a Poulsen Arc System [<=1908 (1st February) and 15 different competing systems aboard USS Salem [Wikipedia shipography]]. The Poulsen system typically outranges its rivals by some 40 percent (RN Museum of Radar and Communications factsheet) [continues at 10th April ...]. [THREAD = WWI SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1913 [1st March] [Sir] David R. Beatty [1st Earl Beatty] [1912 (4th June)<=1914 (28th August)] is appointed Rear Admiral Commanding the Royal Navy’s 1st Battlecruiser Squadron [Wikipedia factsheet]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1913 [11th March] Upon the death of Sir Godfrey Morgan, 1st Viscount Tredegar [<=1854 (25th October)] his titles and estates pass to his nephew Courtenay Morgan [Baron Tredegar] this day [1st Viscount Tredegar] [1867 (10th April)<=d. 1934 (3rd May)]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1913 [18th March] Upon the death of George I of Greece [Wikipedia biography] dies this day the Greek throne passes to his eldest son Crown Prince Constantine [<=1889 (27th October)] as Constantine I of Greece [1867 (10th April)<=d. 1915 (5th August [ASIDE])]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

**********  TRIODE AMPLIFICATION IN GERMANY  **********


1913 [13th April] SS Leviathan [Wikipedia shipography] is launched at Blohm und Voss [1911 (28th March)<=1914 (20th June)], Hamburg, for service with the Hamburg-America Line [1912 (23rd May)<=1914 (20th June)]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

ASIDE - SS LEVIATHAN IN WW1: Leviathan was interned at Hoboken, NJ, until 1917 and then put to work as a U.S. Navy troopship.

1913 [18th April] The French General Staff replaces its Plan XVI [<=1909] with Plan XVII [Wikipedia factsheet] [1914 (7th February)]. Devised by the French Chief of Staff Joseph J. C. ["Papa"] Joffre [henceforth just Joffre] [Wikipedia biography] [1914 (7th February)], the update presumes firstly that there will be no war unless Russia can be involved, and secondly that there will be five main centres of "mobilisation" and "concentration" [these words are the same in French and English], namely Mulhouse, Lorraine, the Ardennes, Charleroi, and Mons [continues at 1914 (7th February) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 GRAND STRATEGIES]


ASIDE - RMS AQUITANIA IN WW1: Aquitania served initially as an armed merchant cruiser, then as a troopship.

1913 [1st May] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [CVIII - The Imperial Wireless Chain]: [Continued from 10th April] A copy of the Imperial Wireless
Chain [??th January<=1st July] Report of Sir Henry Norman's [1912 (11th October)<=1st July] War Office Committee on Wireless Telegraphy and Telephony [1912 (19th July)<=1st July] is laid before the Marconi Select Committee [??th January<=1st July]. It is not openly debated because it contains confidential material both commercially and militarily deemed inappropriate for public minuting [continues at ??th June ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1913 [22nd May] SMS Seydlitz [1911 (4th February)<=1914 (15th December)] enters service. Her 280mm [= 11"] main armament is arranged in A-P-Q-X-Y format, that is to say, as three turrets on the midline, one fore and two aft, and two wing turrets amidships. At their maximum elevation of 13.5 degrees these guns have a range of 18 kilometres. She will only just avoid a fatal magazine explosion at the Battle of Jutland [=1916 (31st May)]. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1913 [11th June or hereabouts] The British journalist and Peace Party activist George H. Perris [no convenient biography=d. 1920 (23rd December)] publishes "The War Traders: An Exposure" [full text online], in which he documents some of the iniquities of weapons profiteering. Here is his final summary ...

"To sum up: The great bulk of the so-called defence expenditure of the British Empire goes into the hands of private profit makers. It is an immensely large and lucrative trade. It consists of companies and combines, the strongest of which are closely allied, and compete less and less. It is essentially, and is becoming more and more, a cosmopolitan trade; its owners' nationalist pretentions are, therefore, rank humbug. It employs the usual touting arts of commerce; but it also manufactures two special kinds of opportunity: (1) The flotation of new types of arms, which result in enormous 'scrapping' of existing material; and (2) The international scare, of which the Mulliner 'crisis' of 1909 [1] is a type. It is these two processes which mainly account for the ruinous level of our present national expenditure. In the person of retired military, naval, and civil servants of the highest rank whom it employs, the trade possesses secret information supposed to be available to the heads of the Government alone. And it is so firmly entrenched in the governing class of the country that no Ministry has yet dared to make a serious effort to dislodge it. Such is the modern trade of arms; and I will add only one word about it. If British Democracy does not soon find a way of destroying this Hydra, it will destroy British Democracy." [THREAD = WW1 PACIFISM AND CONSCIENTIOUS OBJECTION]

1 Aside: "Mulliner" is H. H. Mulliners Limited, Birmingham. Details of their misbehaviour are in the linked full text, which see.


1913 [16th June] As First Lord of the Admiralty Winston Churchill [1912 (?7th March)<=1st July] prepares a Cabinet briefing paper entitled "Oil Fuel Supply for His Majesty's Navy". In it he recommends the state acquiring equity in oil producing companies if necessary rather than rely on the whims of the market. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1913 [29th June-10th August] The Balkans Again [VI - The Second Balkan War, 1913]: [Continued from 1912 (8th October)] Ferdinand I of Bulgaria [1908 (5th October)<=1915 (14th October)] mounts a surprise (including to his own government) attack against the Greeks and the Serbs. However seeing their chance the Romanians (who had not taken part in the First Balkan War) and the Ottomans (who have some scores to settle) simultaneously attack Bulgaria from north and south, respectively. Unsurprisingly the Bulgarians are calling
for a ceasefire within a month and are forced to make territorial concessions in the Treaty of Bucharest on 10th August. This leaves Serbia as Russia's only remaining ally of substance in the Balkans [continues as The July Crisis at 1914 (28th June) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1913 [1st July-8th August] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [CX - The Imperial Wireless Chain Debate]: [Continued from 12th June] Now that both the War Office Committee on Wireless Telegraphy and Telephony [<=1st May] and the Marconi Select Committee [<=1st May] have finished their deliberations Parliament can begin its broader debate. This begins on 1st July when the First Lord of the Admiralty Winston Churchill [16th June<=1914 (17th June)] is asked to assess the damage done to Britain’s strategic interests by the contractual delays with the Imperial Wireless Chain [<=1st July]. Churchill replies to the effect that "injury has certainly been done", but that it would be unwise to go into details in a public forum such as Parliament (Hansard, 54:1661-1663). On 4th July the Postmaster-General Herbert Samuel [1912 (11th October)<=1915 (9th November)] complains that the Goldschmidt Company [1910 (12th January)<=1914 (19th June)] has so far declined his department’s requests for evaluation access to their equipment. On 10th July he further explains the interaction between the above-mentioned committees, the workings of the former being typically "of a confidential character" (Hansard, 55:586-590). On 16th July the competing Marconi, Poulsen, and Goldschmidt systems are compared (Hansard, 55:1342-1392). And finally on 8th August the House is formally asked to vote on the Motion that "the Agreement between the Marconi Company [12th June<=1914 (9th December)] and the Postmaster-General, with regard to the establishment of a chain of Imperial Wireless Stations be approved". The debate lasts some four hours, at the end of which the Motion is approved, 221 in favour, 140 against (Hansard, 56:1939-2031) [continues at 14th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1913 [2nd August] René F. Renou [<=1896 (30th May)] resigns as Archbishop of Tours. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1913 [1st September] The Kuomintang Dissolved: After two months of armed confrontation between Sun Yat-Sen’s [1912 (25th August)<=1915 (22nd December)] Kuomintang and the reigning warlord Yuan Shikai [1912 (25th August)<=1915 (22nd December)] the former are driven from their stronghold at Nanjing [map, etc.] and its leaders forced to flee to sanctuary in Japan. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1913 [9th September] The BASF Company [<=1865 (6th April)] successfully brings the Haber-Bosch Process [<=1909] of industrial scale ammonia synthesis on stream at Oppau, Ludwigshafen. The Haber-Bosch Process is noteworthy in the present context because ammonia can be used, in turn, to synthesise nitric acid, the key to nitrating high explosives. Around the same time a second works is built on a 500-acre site at Uplees, on the marshes west of Faversham, Kent [continues at 1916 (2nd April) ...]. [THREAD = THE WW1 FINANCIAL AND ARMAMENTS INDUSTRIES]

1913 [9th October] The Rise of Herbert Hoover [VIII - Burma Again]: (Continued from 6th August 1911) UNDER CONSTRUCTION [sub-thread continues at 3rd August 1914 ...], [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = STOCK MARKET AND FINANCIAL SHARP PRACTICE]

1913 [14th October] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [CXI - The Tuckerton Wireless Station]: [Continued from 1st July] The German HOMAG Company [= Hochfrequenz Maschinen A.G.] opens its new wireless station at Tuckerton, NJ, [map, etc.]. It is fitted with a Goldschmidt Alternator Transmitter [1913 (1st July)<=1914 (19th June)] and at 820 foot its lattice antenna is the second largest tower in the world after the Eiffel
Tower in Paris. This station, too, is noteworthy in the present context as an integral part of the German international command and control network. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

**ASIDE - TUCKERTON TOWER MUSEUM:** The Giffordstown Schoolhouse maintains a small heritage display devoted to the construction, use, and eventual demolition of the Tuckerton Wireless Station.

1913 [16th October] **The Switch from Coal to Oil [XIVLAST - Oil is Adopted (UK)]:** [Continued from 29th September 1910] The fast battleship **HMS Queen Elizabeth** [Wikipedia shipography] is launched at Portsmouth Dockyard. Armed with eight of the new 15" Mark I guns in twin turrets she is the lead ship in of what will be a class of five. She is also exclusively oil-fueled, requiring less than half as many stokers and giving her the edge in speed over the preceding generation of battleships. She will not herself be at the Battle of Jutland [check it out] but her four sisters will be, and their speed sees them allocated to David Beatty's battlecruiser fleet rather than to John Jellicoe's slow battleships. The American battleships **USS Nevada** [Wikipedia shipography] (who will survive Pearl Harbour, D-Day, and Bikini Atoll!! - [YouTube her now]) and **USS Oklahoma** [Wikipedia shipography] (a Pearl Harbour casualty) are likewise oil burners [end of The Switch from Coal to Oil sub-thread]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1913 [18th October] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [CXII - The Type A Triode]:** [Continued from 14th October] The Western Electric Company [<=1882] goes into production with its "Type A" variant of Lee de Forest's [<=1906 (29th January)] triode. It is now more highly evacuated and more physically robust than the earlier designs, lasts longer before failing, and consumes less power. Western Electric will use thousands of these units in repeater stations on its long-distance telephone lines [continues at 9th December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1913 [25th November] **Irish Home Rule [XVIII - The Irish Volunteers]:** [Continued from 13th January] Responding to the formation of the loyalist Ulster Volunteer Force earlier in the year [13th January<=>1914 (20th March)] the Irish nationalists now set up the "Irish Volunteers" [Wikipedia factsheet] a paramilitary force sworn to assist by force the implementation the Home Rule Bill [<=1912 (11th April)]. Their first Chief of Staff is Eoin Macneill [Wikipedia biography] [continues at 1914 (20th March) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1913 [26th November] **Vickers Limited** [1912 (28th December)<=>1914 (4th August)] fly the second prototype of an "Experimental Fighting Biplane" (the first had crashed in February). The only model to be produced in any numbers is the July 1914 **FB5** [Wikipedia factsheet], of which 224 will be produced. [THREAD = WW1 AVIATION]

********** TRIODE AMPLIFICATION IN BRITAIN **********

design for "soft" - that is to say, less than perfectly evacuated - triode. This design will duly go into production as the "Type C" receiver valve and the "Type T" transmitter valve [continues at 1914 (28th March ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1913 [23rd December] Federal Reserve Bank: Nine months into his administration President Woodrow Wilson [check him out] signs into law the Federal Reserve Act, thus giving the green light to the setting up of the Federal Reserve System [check it out].

1913 [26th/31st December] The Tenerife Primate Station [II - Köhler Takes Over]: [Continued from 1912 (17th December)] Eugen Teuber [<=1912 (17th December)] is replaced as Director of the Tenerife Primate Station by the young Gestalt psychologist Wolfgang Köhler [Wikipedia biography]. By 31st December he has started to investigate the problem solving abilities of a chimpanzee named Sultan [Wikipedia biography] [continues at 1914 (12th August) ...]. [THREAD = THE MAKING OF MODERN COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1913 [26th/31st December] The Tenerife Primate Station [II - Köhler Takes Over]: [Continued from 1912 (17th December)] Eugen Teuber [<=1912 (17th December)] is replaced as Director of the Tenerife Primate Station by the young Gestalt psychologist Wolfgang Köhler [Wikipedia biography]. By 31st December he has started to investigate the problem solving abilities of a chimpanzee named Sultan [Wikipedia biography] [continues at 1914 (12th August) ...]. [THREAD = THE MAKING OF MODERN COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1913 [26th/31st December] Federal Reserve Bank: Nine months into his administration President Woodrow Wilson [check him out] signs into law the Federal Reserve Act, thus giving the green light to the setting up of the Federal Reserve System [check it out].

1914 [3rd January] Seeing is Believing [CXIV - The Cinema at War (Pancho Villa Plays Ball)]: [Continued from 1912 (7th September)] America's Mutual Film Corporation [Wikipedia factsheet] signs an agreement with the Mexican revolutionary leader Pancho Villa [Wikipedia biography>=1915 (1st November)], the thrust of which will later be summarised as follows ...

"Under the terms of this extraordinary agreement the Mexican general and one of America's largest film producers set out to produce artistically engineered combat scenes, employing a set of working rules which, so it is said, specified that, whenever possible, battles would be held during daylight hours and at such times as were convenient for the motion picture cameramen" (Fielding, 1972, p112).

[sub-thread continues at 7th March ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** JOFFRE GIVES NOTHING AWAY **********

1914 [7th February] Seeing is Believing [CXIV - The Cinema at War (Pancho Villa Plays Ball)]: [Continued from 1913 (18th April)] Having been working on them for the past 10 months the French General Staff finally issues the detailed plans required to flesh out Joffre's [1913 (18th April)<=5th August] Plan XVII [<=1913 (18th April)]. Doughty (2003 online) summarises the essence of the update as follows ...

"Plan XVII envisaged France's concentrating five armies in the north-east and clearly stated 'the intention of the Commander-in-Chief is to deliver with all forces assembled an attack against the Germans'. Other than this expression of offensive intentions, however, the plan had no clear statement of Joffre's strategy and included only instructions for concentrating the field armies and options for attacks” (p442). [THREAD = WW1 GRAND STRATEGIES]

1914 [7th March] Seeing is Believing [CXV - Early Motion Pictures (The Hearst-Selig News Pictorial)]: [Continued from 3rd January] The American newspaper baron Hearst [<=1898 (7th April)] teams up with the Selig Polyscope Company [<=1909 (25th November)] to produce a newsreel under the banner Hearst-Selig News Pictorial [no convenient factsheet] [end of sub-thread] [WW1 cinematography will appear in the replacement sub-thread Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment, w.e.f. 1st August]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1914 [20th March] Irish Home Rule [XIX - The Curragh Incident]: [Continued from 1913 (25th November)] Given the threat of armed action from the Ulster Volunteer Force [1913 (25th November)<=24th April] to defy the Home Rule Bill [<=1912 (11th April)] the British government instructs the Commander-in-Chief, Ireland, Sir Arthur Paget [Wikipedia biography] to prepare his troops at the Curragh Camp, County Kildare, to confront them. Since this would possibly require loyal Britons to fire upon loyal Britons, Paget's officers resign
en masse rather than comply. The resignations have their desired effect, with everybody from George V [1912 (28th September)<=>1917 (14th July)] downward suddenly on the case. For his part the king insists that he be informed of all troop movements before they happen, and in the end the Government withdraws its instructions. The Ulster Volunteer Force, cash-rich and with no workable British chain of command to stop them doing precisely what they want, goes out and places an order on the black market for a large shipment of rifles [continues at 24th April ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1914 [28th March] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [CXIV - The Laeken, Waunfawr, and Windhoek Wireless Stations]: [Continued from 1913 (9th December)] The Laeken Wireless Station [1910 (12th January)<=>19th August], Brussels, broadcasts "to the amateurs of wireless telegraphy" in the region a concert "dedicated to Her Majesty Queen Elisabeth". It begins with an area from Puccini's opera Tosca. Around the same time the British long-range station at Waunfawr [map, etc.], near Caernarfon, comes on stream, as does the German medium-range station at Windhoek [map, etc.=>1915 (12th May)] in German Southwest Africa [= modern Namibia] [continues at 19th June ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]


1914 [20th April] The Sopwith Aviation Company [<=1912 (4th July)] submits its new Sopwith Schneider/Tabloid1 to this year's Schneider Trophy trials at Monaco. Piloted by Howard Pixton [Wikipedia biography] it wins First Prize at an average speed of 86.83mph. [THREAD = WW1 AVIATION]

1ASIDE: A Sopwith Schneider was a Sopwith Tabloid rigged for use as a seaplane (this being the nature of the Schneider Trophy event).

**********  THE CLASSIC OF BRITISH SOCIALIST THINKING  **********

1914 [23rd April] The Dublin-born socialist Robert Tressell [Wikipedia biography] publishes "The Ragged-Trousered Philanthropists", a meticulous (but fictionalised) exposé of the stupidity (for it is difficult to dress it up as anything else) of the working man (which is why the tale is set in Mugsborough). Working men, indeed, are the philanthropists of the title, and are so-called because, though they have little, they seem strangely eager to give it away. Here are some specimen chapters, the point they are trying to make, and an occasional indicative extract ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title [Theme]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>The Financiers [On the iniquities of household debt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>The Exterminating Machines [On machinery as the cause of unemployment (but not of poverty)]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Hands and Brain [On the difference between employers and employees]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>The Wages of Intelligence [On how employers profit from employees]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"The men work with their hands, and the masters work with their brains. What a dreadful calamity it would be for the world and for mankind if all these brain workers were to go on strike" (p161).

15 | The Undeserving [On the iniquities of noblemen-landlords] |

"'What I was laughing at is this,' said Owen. 'The present system of managing the affairs of the world is so bad and has produced such dreadful results that you are of opinion that the
earth is a hell: and yet you are a Conservative! You wish to preserve the present system - the system which has made the world into a hell!" (p 171).

**RESEARCH ISSUE - WORKING CLASS CONSERVATISM AND "TRADITIONALISM"**; In fact it will be another half century before the sociologists Butler and Stokes (1963) popularise the term "working class conservatism" and Jessop (1974) does likewise with "traditionalism". They are noteworthy in the present context because they are the electorally important *Jingo in the Park* [<=1878 and 1878 (13th March [RESEARCH ISSUE])].

---

20 The Forty Thieves [On why all the members of the Town Council have nice gardens]

********** THIS NEXT IS THE MOST FAMOUS ONE **********

21 The Great Money Trick [On the iniquities of money itself in stealing itself from you]

25 The Oblong [Goes into greater detail on the Great Money Trick]

**[THREAD = THE WW1 WORKING-CLASS SOLDIER]**

**ASIDE**: There have been only three occasions in British history when socialists found themselves in power with a decent enough majority to doing anything really momentous. The first was the Attlee administration of 1945-1950, who introduced the modern welfare state and health service, as well as doing a lot of much-needed nationalisation. The second was the Wilson administration of 1966-1970, who tried with not a lot of success to create a slightly left of centre modern nation without the evils of either the extreme left or unrestrained Capitalism. And the third was the recent Blair/Brown administration of 1997-2010, whose so-called *New Labour* movement thought more of spin-doctors [English euphemism = "liars for hire"] and image-makers than it did of the genuinely oppressed. The movement was particularly skilled (until the Great Crash of 2008 at least) at Tressell's "Great Money Trick", this time in the guise of the CDO - *"Collateralised Debt Obligation"* [Wikipedia factsheet] and the PFI - "Private Finance Initiative" - in order to fill budgetary shortfalls. Sadly when the bubble burst in 2008 [Wikipedia factsheet] it was the people of a much larger Mugsborough [i.e., you and me] who ended up having to foot the bill (and, indeed, still are).

---

1914 [24th-25th April, night of] **Irish Home Rule [XX - The Larne Gun Run]**: [Continued from 20th March] A 250-ton consignment of rifles and ammunition arrives in Larne, County Antrim, destined for the Ulster Volunteer Force [<=20th March] [continues at 25th May ...].

**[THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]**

---

1914 [8th May] Responding to bad press¹ from the Titanic Enquiry the Board of Trade updates its *"Rules for Life Saving Appliances"* to require safety equipment be provided according to passenger head count rather than according to the tonnage of the ship carrying them, as had hitherto been the case. **[THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]**

¹**ASIDE**: See for example the squirming testimony of Sir Walter J. Howell [Wikipedia biography] of the Marine Department of the Board of Trade - full text at http://www.titanicinquiry.org/BOTInq/BOTInq22Howell05.php. Riveting stuff!

---

1914 [22nd May] The First Lord of the Admiralty **Winston Churchill** [1913 (7th June)<=>30th July] places a Bill before Parliament requesting the investment of £2.2 million in the Anglo-Persian Oil Company [1909 (19th April)<=>5th November], with a view to acquiring a 51% controlling stake therein. It will be approved on 10th August. **[THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]**

**ASIDE**: British concerns about the Berlin-Baghdad Railway [1912 (21st December)<=>11th July] now change. Instead of heading for India but with a long way still to go, the new line is now heading for the Royal Navy’s private filling station at Abadan [<=1909 (14th April)] and is nearly there! See further discussions in *Hansard* 27th July, 65:1067.
1914 [25th May] **Irish Home Rule [XXI - Home Rule Approved]**: (Continued from 24th April) The Third Home Rule Bill (<=1912 (11th April)) passes in the House of Commons (continues at 8th July ...). [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1914 [29th May] The **RMS Empress of Ireland** (<=1906 (27th January)) sinks in the St. Lawrence Seaway following a collision with a freighter. 1012 people are lost out of 1477 aboard. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1914 [1st June or hereabouts] **Frederic W. Wile** (1908 (22nd January)<=1917 Intelligence Officer with the American Expeditionary Force) relocates from Berlin to London to service the "Berlin Day by Day" column of the *Daily Mail*, one of the main tools of British newspaper propaganda over the coming years. His "Who's Who in Hunland" (=>1916 (1st January)) will typify his contribution to the war effort. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

********** SPERRY STEALS THE SHOW **********

1914 [18th June] Large crowds gather along the River Seine in Paris to see an airshow. The star attraction is a demonstration in a specially equipped Curtis C-2 flying boat of the latest *Sperry Autopilot* (<=1912) by the inventor himself **Lawrence B. Sperry** [Wikipedia biography] and his French assistant **Emil Cachin** [no convenient biography]. The aircraft makes three passes. On the first pass Sperry makes great show of waving "Look no hands" from the cockpit. On the second he does the same while Curtin climbs out onto the wing and the *Metal Mike* automatically counterbalances the shift in weight. On the third both pilots climb out onto a wing leaving the aircraft to fly itself and the audience spellbound. The era of automated control has truly arrived! [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETICS, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE CONTROL]

1914 [19th June] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [CXV - The Eilvese-Tuckerton Greetings]**: (Continued from 28th March) The *Eilvese* (1911 (?7th November)<=4th August) and *Tuckerton* (<=1913 (14th October)) wireless stations -both equipped with *Goldschmidt Alternator Transmitters* (<=1913 (14th October)) - exchange high-level diplomatic greetings across the North Atlantic between **Kaiser Wilhelm II** (1908 (28th October)<=5th July) and the U.S. President **Woodrow Wilson** [Wikipedia biography]. Around the same time after three years under construction the German long-range *Kamina Wireless Station* (1906 (1st April)<=24th August) in Togoland is completed as a relay hub for the shorter range stations at Windhoeck to the south and Dar-es-Salaam to the east [continues at 2nd August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

1914 [20th June] **SS Bismarck** [Wikipedia shipography] as **RMS Majestic** from 1922; scrapped 1940-1943 is launched at **Blohm und Voss** (<=1913 (13th April), Hamburg, for service with the **Hamburg-America Line** (<=1913 (13th April)). At 56,551 gross register tons she is the largest ship ever built. However WW1 prevents her from being finished and she will eventually be handed over to **White Star Line** (<=1911 (31st May)) as war reparations. She will sail from Southampton on her maiden voyage to New York City on 11th May 1922. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1914 [24th June] **Peter I of Serbia** (1903 (11th June)<=1921 (16th August)) appoints his son **Alexander [of Serbia, Croatia, and Slovenia]** (1921 [I of Jugoslavia]) as Regent, and steps back into semi-retirement. Alexander, of course, is less than a week away from his first international crisis. He is also noteworthy in the present context as the winner of the first full land battle of WW1 two weeks after that, inflicting a major defeat on the Austro-Hungarian Army at the Battle of Cer (=>15th August). [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** THE FINAL CRISIS BEGINS **********
1914 [28th June] The July Crisis [I - The Assassination of Franz Ferdinand]: A Serbian revolutionary group popularly known as the "Black Hand Gang" [Wikipedia factsheet] assassinates the visiting heir to the Austro-Hungarian throne Archduke Franz Ferdinand of Austria [1909 (16th July)<=] and his wife. The gunman Gavrilo Princip [Wikipedia biography] and a number of associates are soon arrested. The Russian Ambassador to Belgrade Nicholas Hartwig [Wikipedia biography] is observed liaising closely with the new Alexander [of Serbia, Croatia, and Slovenia]1921 [I of Yugoslavia]1929 [24th June<=>23rd July] at this time [continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR] [THREAD = WW1 ROMANTIC NATIONALISM]

1914 [29th June-1st July] The July Crisis [II - Austria Sees Its Chance]: [Continued from preceding entry] The Austro-Hungarian Chief of General Staff Conrad von Hötzendorf [1906 (18th November<=>7th July] and Foreign Minister Count Leopold Berchtold [Wikipedia biography] hold discussions as to possible responses to the assassination. Hötzendorf argues for mobilisation against Serbia, whose nationalism has been an active thorn in Austria's flesh for the last decade [<=1903 (11th June)]. Berchthold wants to wait until the outcome of the criminal proceedings because he needs to know whether Germany will support such a mobilisation under the terms of the Triple Alliance [<=1892 (17th August)]. He therefore summonses Alexander von Hoyos [Wikipedia biography] and sends him to Berlin bearing a letter asking this very question signed by 83-year-old Emperor Archduke Franz Josef [1849 (7th March)<=>25th July] [continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

1914 [29th June-1st July] The July Crisis [III - Italy Looks Doubtful]: [Continued from preceding entry] Italy tells Germany that because she considers Austro-Hungary to be the aggressors in the Serbian confrontation it will void any involvement on her part under the terms of the Triple Alliance [<=1892 (17th August)]. Whatever happens next is going to involve German speakers and just German speakers [continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1914 [5th-6th July] The July Crisis [IV - The Germans Give Carte Blanche]: [Continued from preceding entry] Alexander von Hoyos [29th June<=>7th July] arrives in Berlin and delivers his Emperor's message to Kaiser Wilhelm II [19th June<=>30th July] personally. The following day the German Foreign Secretary Arthur Zimmermann [Wikipedia biography] and Bethmann-Hollweg [1909 (16th July)<=>29th July] meet with both von Hoyos and the Austro-Hungarian Ambassador in Berlin László Szögyény-Marich II [Wikipedia biography] and reassure them that Germany will back them in whatever their Emperor sees fit [continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

1914 [7th July] The July Crisis [V - The Imperial Council Meets]: [Continued from preceding entry] Alexander von Hoyos [<=5th July] arrives back in Vienna and delivers the German "blank cheque" to Count Leopold Berchtold [29th June<=>10th July], who proceeds to hold a succession of meetings of the Imperial Council. Led by Conrad von Hötzendorf [29th June<=>1st December] they slowly draw up a 10-point Ultimatum to slap on the Serbs [continues at 23rd July ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

1914 [8th July] Irish Home Rule [XXI - The Partition Amendment]: [Continued from 25th May] An Amendment to the Home Rule Bill [<=25th May] is suggested in the House of Lords, exempting an initially unstated number of (later six) Ulster counties from inclusion in its provisions. This means that the Protestants in the north of Ireland are going to get to keep their part of that land whilst the Catholics in the south finally get
The Russian Ambassador to Belgrade Nicholas Hartwig [28th June] suddenly dies from an apparent heart attack. The Serbs claim that the Austrians poisoned him. His duties seem to have been taken over in the short term by the Russian Chargé d'Affaires M(?????) Strandtman [no convenient biography]. Around the same time Count Leopold Berchtold [7th July] confides in the German Ambassador in Vienna Count Heinrich von Tschirschky [Wikipedia biography] that the Ultimatum which is presently exercising his Imperial Council is, of course, intended to be unsignable [continues at 13th July ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

The latest 250 kilometre section of track opens. The next section, however, towards Nusaybin, will be delayed by the war. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

As we shall be learning in due course Moss Side Hospital did for shellshocked other ranks what Craiglockhart [=1915] did for shellshocked officers, but in far greater numbers and to far less subsequent literary trumpeting.

The British detectives who have been interrogating the detainees conclude that the Serbian government does not seem to have been involved with the Black Hand Gang assassination plot. Nevertheless, on 15th July, the British Ambassador to Austria, Sir Maurice de Bunsen [check him out] dines with senior Vienna diplomat Graf Heinrich von Lützow, and is informed that the Austro-Hungarians are intent on making an example of Serbia "for alleged complicity in the conspiracy which led to the assassination of the Archduke", even if this might technically bring Russia into a greater war as ally of Serbia, Germany as an ally of Austria-Hungary, France as an ally of Russia, and then Britain as an ally of France [which is much what happened - Ed.]. The following day (16th) de Bunsen cables his report to Foreign Secretary Sir Edward Grey, who, to cut a long story short, effectively takes no notice. As to why this might well, in retrospect, have been conspiracy rather than cock-up, see Gerry Docherty and Jim Macgregor's 2013 book "Hidden History: The Secret Origins of the First World War" [Amazon] [sub-thread continues at 20th July ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

The crowning technical glory of the Newport Docks system, the Great Sea Lock, is formally opened for traffic. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]
ports. Around this time the latest DEBg [<=1911 (?7th February)] statistics indicate that around 400 German merchant ships have been equipped with wireless rooms [continues at 23rd July, but see also the Nauen transmission of 2nd August ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

1914 [23rd July] The July Crisis [IX - The Hötzendorf Ultimatum]: [Continued from 20th July] The Austro-Hungarian Ultimatum [full text online] is handed to the Serbian Ambassador at 1800hr. Compliance with all 10 points is required, and a deadline of 25th July stated. That evening Regent Alexander [of Serbia, Croatia, and Slovenia]1921 [I of Yugoslavia]1929 [28th June<=15th August] visits the Russian Embassy in Belgrade and forewarns them that the Austrian terms are too unreasonable1 to agree to [continues at 25th July ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

1 ASIDE: Churchill agrees, describing the Ultimatum as an "insolent document".

1914 [25th July] The July Crisis [X - Serbia Refuses to Sign]: [Continued from 23rd July] The Serbs reply to the Austro-Hungarian Ultimatum [<=23rd July] to the effect that they will agree to only eight of the 10 conditions. Russia now begins mobilisation along Austria-Hungary’s eastern border. Archduke Franz Josef of Austria-Hungary [29th June<=8th August] formally signs the 72-hour mobilisation order for the Imperial armed forces [continues at 26th July ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

1914 [26th July] The July Crisis [XI - The French Mobilise]: [Continued from 25th July] All leave is cancelled as the French Army starts to assemble its reservists [continues at 28th July ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

1914 [26th July] Irish Home Rule [XXII - The Howth Gun Run]: [Continued from 8th July] A consignment of a thousand rifles and ammunition arrives in Howth, on Dublin Bay, destined for the Irish Volunteers [1913 (25th November)<=16th August] [continues at 30th July ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

************ WW1 BEGINS ************
************ WW1 BEGINS ************
************ WW1 BEGINS ************
************ AUSTRIA-HUNGARY AND SERBIA ************
************ WW1 BEGINS ************
************ WW1 BEGINS ************
************ WW1 BEGINS ************

1914 [Tuesday 28th July: 1100hr] The July Crisis [XII - Time's Up]: [Continued from 26th July] The Austrians duly formally declare a state of war with Serbia [continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1914 [Wednesday 29th July] The July Crisis [XIII - Sir John French Gets Re-Hired]: [Continued from preceding entry] Sir John French [1st Earl of Ypres]1922 [6th April<=5th August] is formally appointed Commander-in-Chief of the British Expeditionary Force. In Belgrade, meanwhile, the first Austrian shells are beginning to fall, and in Belgium the army is taking up its posts in and around the Brialmont forts at Liège and Namur [<=1888 (28th July), noting especially the attached ASIDE] [continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

Lichnowsky [Wikipedia biography] suggesting a last-minute summit conference. It finally dawns on Bethmann-Hollweg that the Austrian war they have been encouraging for a month is going to cost a lot of German lives. He forwards Grey’s offer to Count Leopold Berchtold [<=10th July] in Vienna [continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

1ASIDE: The Schlieffen Plan had, of course, been a well-kept military secret, and up until now no non-German has been aware of any particular threat to Belgium. The French, indeed, presently have their eyes firmly fixed eastward on the stolen provinces of Alsace and Lorraine.

1914 [Thursday 30th July] The July Crisis [XV - Battle Stations]: [Continued from preceding entry] The Royal Navy is formally brought to war readiness. Around the same time Herbert H. Asquith [1st Earl of Oxford and Asquith]1925 [1912 (11th April)<=next entry] describes Winston Churchill [<=22nd May] as already having put his "war-paint" on [continues at next entry but one ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

1914 [Thursday 30th July] Irish Home Rule [XXIII - Home Rule to be Suspended]: [Continued from 26th July] Herbert H. Asquith [1st Earl of Oxford and Asquith]1925 [preceding entry<=6th August] announces (a) that the Amendment to the Home Rule Bill [<=8th July] will not be going forward for a second reading, and (b) that the Home Rule Bill itself will be assented and then immediately suspended should war come [continues at 3rd August ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1914 [Thursday 30th July] The July Crisis [XVI - The Kaiser Points the Finger]: [Continued from preceding entry but one] Nicholas II of Russia [1904 (8th February)<=1917 (24th October)] authorises general Russian mobilisation. Kaiser Wilhelm II [5th July<=19th August] receives a note to the effect that Russia will not cancel its mobilisation and irritably confides in his journal that this has all been pre-conspired by the French, the British, and the Russians together [continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

1914 [Friday 31st July] The July Crisis [XVII - Another Ultimatum and the First Mobilisation in the West]: [Continued from preceding entry] Germany presents Russia with a 12-hour Ultimatum to cancel her mobilisation. Then at 1900hr Belgium issues the order for full mobilisation1 [continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

1ASIDE: This early Belgian mobilisation is noteworthy to the extent that the resulting high state of preparedness helped (along with some dubious decision-making on von Moltke's [1906<=1914 (5th August)] part) to delay the German advance when eventually it came, thus presaging the eventual failure of the Schlieffen manoeuvre.

1914 [Saturday 1st August] The July Crisis [XVIII - Germany Mobilises both Brawn and Brain]: [Continued from preceding entry] Having had no response to her Ultimatum [<=31st July] Germany declares war on Russia and begins her own mobilisation. The pre-planned and pre-packaged orders send advance units across the border into Luxembourg, from where they can veer north to threaten the Belgian strongpoint at Namur or South toward the French strongpoint at Verdun. The Belgians, meanwhile, have their 3rd Division digging in around Liège, their 4th Division digging in around Namur, and the remainder of their army strung out between Namur and Leuven/Louvain just east of Brussels. Around the same time German hospital and university staff are switched from peacetime to wartime duties. Amongst the civilian neurologists who will learn much about the workings of the brain from wartime head injuries are Kurt Goldstein [Wikipedia biography], Karl Kleist [see Companion Resource], and Walther Poppelreuter [see Companion Resource (scroll to 1917)]. Similarly at the Berliner Psychologische Institut [<=1900 (20th...
December], Carl Stumpf [<=1900 (20th December)], Erich Moritz von Hornbostel [<=1900 (20th December)], Hans Rupp [<=1900 (20th December)], Max Wertheimer [Wikipedia biography], and Erich Waetzman [see ASIDE below], will all shortly be supporting "Frontexperimenterne" [="front/field experiments"] in acoustics² at the Kummersdorf Artillery Proving Ground [Wikipedia factsheet] (Hoffmann, 1994 online). Similarly again at the Kaiser Wilhelm Gesellschaft [<=1911 (11th January)] Wilhelm Connstein [no convenient biography] will be charged with industrialising Carl A. Neuberg's [<=1911 (11th January)] fermentation of glycerine from sugar and searching for other strategically useful fermentation processes.

[THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

1 ASIDE: Stumpf (1930) will later explain that "as a representative of psychology […] I took part in the national organisation of this work”.

2 ASIDE - SOUND AT WAR: There are two distinct sciences of sound, and both are surprisingly complicated. The first science - acoustics - concerns the physics of sound, that is to say, the nature of the air vibrations involved, these being both tiny and transient. The second science - audiology - concerns the physiology, psychology, and mental philosophy of sound, that is to say, everything from the ability to locate a faint rustling in three-dimensional space to appreciating the sublime beauty of an operatic aria. Encke (2006) will later explain the link between the two sciences of sound and the needs of war by taking the example of Erich Waetzman …

"Some audible murmurs, throbbings, and wooshings are, of course, not fundamentally pathological experiences, deriving as they do from particular bodily systems (as when you can hear your own heart beating when all is quiet). The Breslau acoustic physicist Erich Waetzman [Wikipedia biography>1916 (30th June)] names this class of naturally occurring subjective experiences 'Körperschall' [= bodily sound] and will in due course note that they are of the same nature as the 'Erdschall' [= earth sound] available to those listening in to enemy noises in the tunnelling. The problems of which bodily sound or which earth sound to record are fundamentally the same,’ he wrote in 1927 in a summative article on the Geophone, and deserve to be given 'somewhat greater attention' [(Waetzmann, 1927) ...]. Waetzman was conscripted as an infantryman in 1914 but promoted to Field Telegraphist a little later. In 1917 he transferred to the Artillery Evaluation Commission in Berlin …” (op. cit., p126; bold emphasis added; translated by the present author).

We note also the professional concern voiced by the 21st century physicist Arne Schirrmacher [Academic homepage] that German WW1 chemists have received more than their fair share of historians’ attention. He emphasises the work done by (amongst others) the physicists Max Born [Wikipedia biography], Max Wien [<=1908 (23rd June)], and Rudolf Ladenburg [Wikipedia biography], and (after no little actual fighting) the mathematician Richard Courant [Wikipedia biography] (Schirrmacher, 2014 online).


1914 [1st August] Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [I - News Makers and Breakers]: [New sub-thread, but continuing in part from Seeing is Believing [<=7th March]] Horrified by the prospect of a major war a few miles to the south the Dutch political cartoonist Louis Raemaekers [Wikipedia biography>16th August] has "De Menschheid na 20 Eeuwen Christendom" [= "Humankind after 20 Centuries of Christianity", but conventionally "Christendom after 20 Centuries"] published in the Amsterdam Telegraaf. In it he shows with compelling simplicity [see commentary and image] the scourging of Innocence by War.

ASIDE: Because Holland was, and would remain, a neutral country in WW1 Raemaekers and his editor were merely passing spontaneous critical comment on the German preparations for war. It will not be long, however, before he is in the front line of the Allied propaganda war [=>16th August].
At the British War Office, meanwhile, MI7 [<=1902 (31st May [ASIDE])] are also getting ready for the fray. Their story - subject to extreme operational secrecy, of course - will remain largely untold, but the success of their measures is reflected in the following ...

"World War I was inadequately recorded from beginning to end by the civilian newsreel industry - not because of any lack of zeal but because of the many obstacles which were purposely created by military and civil authorities. Long before the United States entered the conflict, cameramen found it almost impossible to gain access to front-line areas or even to film scenes of wartime preparation on the home front" (Fielding, 1972, p115).

1914 [Sunday 2nd August] **The July Crisis [XIX - "Necessity"]:** [Continued from preceding entry] With their occupation of Luxembourg now complete the Germans now demand free passage through Belgium toward France. It is unfortunate, the Reichstag is told, but nevertheless a "Necessity of War". At much the same time the Nauen Wireless Station [<=1911 (?th November)] broadcasts the cryptic message "A SON IS BORN", a pre-arranged code instructing all German merchant ships to make for the nearest friendly port [continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

1914 [Sunday 2nd August] **The July Crisis [XX - The Odeonsplatz Demonstration]:** [Continued from preceding entry] Hearing the news that their government has declared war on Russia the people of Munich stage an impromptu open-air demonstration of spontaneous support in the Odeonsplatz. A young Adolf Hitler [no wiki needed] will later be identified caught up in the celebrations [for the image just browse <1914 odeonsplatz hitler>; note however, that the image is now commonly regarded as having been tampered with in the early Nazi era] [continues at 3rd August ...]. [THREAD = THE DUTY TO KILL] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

**RESEARCH ISSUE - WHY IS WAR SO INTOXICATING?:** The Munich celebration is repeated dozens of times in the major cities of Europe. Hitler later remembered the occasion well and confessed to having been "overpowered by stormy enthusiasm". On the other hand, the British mathematician/philosopher/peace activist Bertrand A. W. Russell [3rd Earl Russell] [Wikipedia biography] was taken aback by the observation "that average men and women were delighted at the prospect of war". Science has yet to identify precisely which brain mechanisms are involved in momentous decisions and states of mind such as these, especially those where intellect and emotion are so closely intertwined. The University of Warwick researcher Pierre Purseigle [University homepage] has recently dubbed WW1 war-fever as "the tragedy of consent" (Purseigle, 2013 online).

1914 [Sunday 2nd August] **Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [CXVI - The Chelmsford Intercepts]:** [Continued from 19th June] Based at the Chelmsford, Essex, headquarters of the Marconi Company [<=1913 (2nd August)] the wireless engineers Maurice Wright [no convenient biography] and Round [1913 (9th December)<=>1916 (31st May)] start intercepting German navy wireless communications and sending transcripts to the Admiralty for decoding [continues in Part 10 at 5th September, and also under the header "WW1 Codebreaking" ...]. [THREAD = WW1 ESPIONAGE AND INTELLIGENCE]

1914 [Sunday 2nd August] With war looming, and in a fit of patriotic fervour, a young Siegfried Sassoon [Wikipedia biography] enlists in the Sussex Imperial Yeomanry [Wikipedia factsheet]. It will not take long for the realities of war to convert Sassoon from one of the war's bravest participants into one of its bitterest opponents. [THREAD = WW1 INDIVIDUAL HISTORIES]

1914 [Monday 3rd August] **The Rise of Herbert Hoover [IX - Emergency Repatriation Service]:** [Continued from 9th October 1913] By sheer good fortune Hoover is an influential neutral American in London during a war emergency. This leads to him being asked
by the U.S. Embassy to help it service a surge of stranded American citizens and refugees. Together with friends at hand Hoover immediately forms the American Citizens’ Relief Committee, and sets up shop 6th August in the ballroom of the Savoy Hotel, London. Much the same happens in about-to-be-occupied Brussels, Belgium, where the work is taken on by an electrical engineer named Dannie N. Heineman [Wikipedia biography] and the U.S. Ambassador to Belgium, Brand Whitlock [Wikipedia biography]. Together Whitlock and Heineman set up a Brussels-based equivalent of Hoover's London-based American Citizens’ Relief Committee under the name American Relief Committee [sub-thread continues at 1st September 1914 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = STOCK MARKET AND FINANCIAL PRACTICE AND SHARP PRACTICE]


1914 [Monday 3rd August: 1815hr] The July Crisis [XXI - First Blood]: [Continued from 2nd August] Germany declares war on France. At sea the British registered SS San Wilfredo [no convenient shipography] is sunk by a mine off Cuxhaven, Germany [continues at 4th August ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

1914 [Tuesday 4th August: various times of day] 54 German merchant and passenger ships offer themselves for internment in American ports, ostensibly to avoid the imminent Royal Naval blockade of Germany but also to flood the American waterfront districts with actual and potential German spies and - when necessary - saboteurs. [THREAD = WW1 ESPIONAGE AND INTELLIGENCE]

1914 [Tuesday 4th August: 0700-1130hr] The July Crisis [XXII - The Germans Have Their Phones Cut Off]: [Continued from 3rd August] In accordance with pre-arranged operational plans [<=1912 (1st June)] the British CS [= Cableship Alert] [previously Lady Carmichael; possible shipography at http://atlantic-cable.com/Cableships/Alert(1)/index.htm] moves out into the English Channel, grapples up the German trans-Atlantic telephone cables, and takes a hacksaw to them. This forces all German diplomatic, civil, and military communications through the Nauen [<=1911 (?5th November)] and Eltvese [<=19th June] long-range wireless stations, or, on a pass-it-on basis, via such shorter range ship-to-ship systems as might from time to time be available. Early the next morning the police¹ raided the Caledonian Road barbershop premises of Karl G. Ernst [no convenient biography], and arrest him for running a German intelligence network in Britain [continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

¹ASIDE: When MI5 was formed during the 1910 reorganisation of British military intelligence [<=1910 (10th January)] its agents were not given powers of arrest nor resourced for bringing suspects to trial. They therefore drew on the resources of Scotland Yard's Criminal Investigation Department (CID) (presently headed by Sir Basil Home Thomson [Wikipedia biography]) for this aspect of intelligence case management. [THREAD = WW1 ESPIONAGE AND INTELLIGENCE]

1914 [Tuesday 4th August: 0700-1130hr] The July Crisis [XXIII - Belgium Invaded]: [Continued from preceding entry] Germany sends her Army across the border into Belgium. At the northern end of this border, tracing their line of supply back to the city of Aachen, three major elements of Otto von Emmich’s [Wikipedia biography] Army of the Meuse (itself part of Karl von Bülow’S [henceforth just von Bülow] [Wikipedia biography]) Second Army) advance due west hugging the (neutral) Dutch border en route for the Meuse River. These three units are (from north to south) the 2nd Cavalry Corps (HKK²)

[THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]
commanded by Otto von Garnier [Wikipedia biography] and the 34th and 27th Infantry Brigades. Most of these troops are earmarked for the northern sector of the long-pre-planned assault on the ring of Brialmont forts around the Belgian city of Liège [<=1888 (28th July), noting especially the attached ASIDE], but HKK2 and 27th Brigade's 7th JR¹ are heading for the town of Visé [map, etc.] in order to secure the Meuse bridge there against demolition. They make poor time, however, due to roadblocks set up by the local gendarmerie and irregulars². The west bank is defended by the 2/12 RL¹, a battalion of 3rd Division regulars sent north from their concentration at Liège 20 miles to the south-west [continues generally as The July Crisis at next entry but one, or militarily as The Belgian Campaign at next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

¹ASIDE: HKK2 = Heereskavalleriekorps 2; JR = Jäger Regiment (Jäger [Wikipedia factsheet; pronounce as “Yay-ger”) regiments were [and still are] the German army’s highly professional light infantry, skilled in rapid manoeuvre (often, as in this campaign, by bicycle) and open order skirmishing). 2/12 RL = 2ème Bataillon du 12ème Régiment de Ligne (Régiment de Ligne being the standard Belgian infantry unit descriptor).

²ASIDE - THE PROBLEM OF "FRANCE-TIREURS": It seems that the Belgians were keeping their regulars safely on the western bank of the Meuse (because they would soon be needed to defend Liège) and deliberately deploying irregulars in the path of the German advance. These irregulars might be anything from armed farmers to formally enlisted Garde Civique (= “Home Guard”) not properly in uniform. Their involvement is noteworthy in the present context because irregulars are not protected by the Hague Conventions [=1899 (18th May)]. 7JR, for example, report summarily executing two irregulars caught felling trees for roadblocks (Zuber, 2014, p68). Such incidents - murder in the cold light of the Law, but “all’s fair” in the heat of battle - will soon be mercilessly exploited for propaganda purposes by the British and French press as the “Rape of Belgium” [=25th August].

RESEARCH ISSUE - SO HOW MANY CIVILIAN CASUALTIES IS IT WISE TO ALLOW IN AN INVASION?: None, because for every person killed in an atrocity (or merely perceived to have been unjustly killed) a dozen others will join the cause against you. We shall be returning to this issue at various points in Part 10.

********** FIRST WESTERN FRONT CASUALTIES **********
********** FIRST WESTERN FRONT CASUALTIES **********
********** FIRST WESTERN FRONT CASUALTIES **********

1914 [Tuesday 4th August: 0830hr for all day] The Belgian Campaign [1 - The Battle at Visé]: [Continued from preceding entry] This small but historically significant series of skirmishes is fought between the units identified above and (initially) five Belgian gendarmes on frontier patrol at the village of Gemmenich [map, etc.]. Two of these - Auguste Bouko [no convenient biography] and Jean-Pierre Thill [no convenient biography] are killed in a rather one-sided fire-fight with a forward patrol from HKK2, thereby becoming Belgium's first WW1 casualties. HKK2 and 7th JR to their left then push on towards Visé meeting light but repeated ambush fire. Around Visé they take fire from the 2/12 RL under Charles Collyns [no convenient biography] on the opposite (western) bank. The strategic significance of Visé’s two bridges¹ is that they are the only major Meuse crossing between Liège and the Dutch border, and have already been dynamited by Belgian military engineers¹. This, together with the sustained hit-and-run action by the irregulars, results in repeated on-the-spot civilian executions. Finally, when the regulars of the 2/12 RL decide to fall back on Liège the town is taken and the Germans exact more calculated punitive reprisals upon the town and its remaining inhabitants². Much the same happens at nightfall at nearby Wassage [map, etc.] after Belgian irregulars attack the bivouacs of the 34th Brigade’s 9th JR [continues at 4th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

¹ASIDE: The Meuse had long since been canalised for commerce purposes and at Visé both the Meuse proper and the Albert Canal run north-south, that is to say, squarely across the
road from Aachen to Brussels. The east-west main road [now the N618] therefore has to cross both waterways, the river firstly, and then the canal. The Schlieffen Plan demanded that both bridges be taken quickly and in one piece. Visé itself is located almost entirely on the east bank of the river, effectively commanding the approaches to the first (longer) of the two bridges. Some accounts have the demolition taking place at 0400hr. German High Command can hardly have been surprised at this setback because they had learned on 30th July that both the Visé bridges and the Liège railway network - both critical to the success of the Schlieffen Plan - had been prepared for demolition (Zuber, 2014).

\[\text{ASIDE: The events of 4th August 1914, both the lawful and the glorious and the unlawful and the shameful [and it is unlikely that we shall ever be finally able to tell the one from the other], were duly commemorated in Visé on 4th August 2014 - see website.}\]

1914 [Tuesday 4th August] **The July Crisis [XXIV - Jellicoe and Kitchener Promoted]**: [Continued from preceding entry but one] John R. Jellicoe [Viscount Jellicoe]\[1918 \] [1908 (16th October)<=1916 (31st May)] is promoted to admiral and put in charge of the Grand Fleet. Lord Kitchener [1901 (7th August)<=5th August] is asked whether he would like to be Secretary of State for War and, when he nods, is invited to attend a meeting of the War Council the next day. In the interests of national unity the British and Irish political presences at Westminster all agree to suspend confrontational politics for the duration [continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

\[\text{ASIDE: This phrase from Asquith's personal correspondence.}\]

1914 [Tuesday 4th August: 1400hr] **The July Crisis [XXV - Another Ultimatum]**: [Continued from preceding entry] Britain sends a telegraphed Ultimatum to Berlin giving them until midnight (their time) to withdraw from Belgium [continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = THE DESCENT INTO WAR]

\[\text{ASIDE: The events of 4th August 1914, both the lawful and the glorious and the unlawful and the shameful [and it is unlikely that we shall ever be finally able to tell the one from the other], were duly commemorated in Visé on 4th August 2014 - see website.}\]

1914 [Tuesday 4th August: 2300hr-2320hr] **The July Crisis [XXVI - The World at War]**: [Continued from preceding entry] Telegrams are sent to all military units notifying them Britain is at war, and the Royal Navy starts operating on a combat-ready basis. Some of the things which now also have to happen are not quite so obvious, including ...

**IN BRITAIN**

Vickers Limited [=1913 (26th November)] now have to suspend royalty payments to the Krupp Company [=1913] for its licence to use their patented Universal Fuse technology. Gruesomely they have to keep count of how many they are making, nonetheless, because they will pay up what they owe retrospectively in 1926.

The government appropriate all assets of German companies such as the Siemens Company's electrical engineering facilities at Woolwich [1908 (23rd June)<=1915 (6th May)] and place them in the hands of the Public Trustee.

The 1st King's Dragoon Guards hurriedly suspend the appointment of their honorary Colonel-in-Chief, a certain Archduke Franz Josef of Austria-Hungary [=25th July].

British shipping lines put their best cutlery and crockery and ornaments and hangings into storage, to preserve them from submarines (all) and light-fingered soldiers (troopships).

Many amateur wireless operators re-tune their receivers to German wavelengths.

The Recruiting Service tops up inkwells and typewriter ribbons and unfolds trestle tables in village halls, libraries, or other community centres.

Tentmakers such as J. Rands and Jeckell, Ipswich, and Union Jack manufacturers such as Piggott Brothers, London, look forward to solid trading.
The kennel club starts re-pedigreeing *German Shepherds* as *Alsatians* (only reversed in 1977).

The **Creed Teleprinter Company** [<=1912] gets an emergency order for a teleprinter link between London and Southampton to help administer the B.E.F.’s imminent transit to France.

**IN GERMANY**

The **Nauen Wireless Station** [<=2nd August] is taken under the control of the German Admiralty.

The **APK** [<=1913 (?7th October)] continues to ignore Leo Löwenstein’s [1913 (?7th October)<=6th August] sound-ranging patent because they believe they have a war of manoeuvre in the offing, in which systems such as this will play no part. By October, however, as the trench war brings immobility and concealment to the battlefield, they will have become far more sympathetic to new technology.

**IN CANADA**

The Barriefield Military Camp is established at Kingston, Ontario.

**[THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]**

1ASIDE: The U.S. will pursue much the same sort of hate campaign in 2003 when they rename *French Fries* as *Freedom Fries* [Wikipedia history] because the French had dared to sing from the wrong hymnsheet.

**1914** [Tuesday 4th August: 2400hr] **German Naval Expansion [XIX - The Final Tally]:** [Continued from 1912 (21st May)] After 20 years of competition Germany enters the war with 14 Dreadnoughts and four Battlecruisers ready for action, the British 20 and eight. When the High Seas Fleet fails to achieve the desired historically decisive victory Alfred von Tirpitz [1900 (20th June)]<=1916 (31st May)] suddenly decides, rather ungraciously, that he should have pursued submarine warfare all along. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

**1914** [Tuesday 4th August: 2400hr] **Computerised Naval Fire Control [XVI - Progress to Date]:** [Continued from 1912 (??7th September)] After 14 years of hectic technological development the Royal Navy enters the war with its few experimental **Mark IV Argo Clocks** [<=1912 (?7th September)] and the first service issue of the **Dreyer Mark III Fire Control Tables** [<=1912 (?7th September)]. Accuracy at long range under helm is still desperately difficult to deliver in practice [continues at 27th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETIC, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE CONTROL] [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

********** Sorry, but this file's gotten too big to handle **********
Part 11 - Deception as a Profession, 1919 to date